



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

APPLETONS'

SCHOOL and COLLEGE TEXT-BOOKS

Latin, Greek, Syriac, Hebrew.

LATIN.

Arnold, T. K. First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar. By SPENCER. 12mo.

— — Latin Prose Composition. 12mo.

— — Cornelius Nepos. With Notes. 12mo.

Beza. Latin Testament. 12mo.

Butler, Noble, and Sturgus, Minard. Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline, with Notes and Vocabulary. Revised edition. 12mo.

Cæsar. See HARKNESS and SPENCER.

Cicero. See HARKNESS, E. A. JOHNSON, LINCOLN, and THACHER.

Cornelius Nepos. See ARNOLD and LINDSAY.

Crosby, W. H. Quintus Curtius Rufus. Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated, with English Notes. 12mo.

Frieze, Henry S. The Tenth and Twelfth Books of Quintilian. With Notes. 12mo.

— — Vergil's Aeneid. With Notes, etc. 12mo.

— — Vergil's Aeneid. With Notes and Dictionary. New edition. 12mo.

— — The Complete Works of Vergil. With Notes and Dictionary. 12mo.

— — A Vergilian Dictionary, embracing all the Words in the Eclogues, Georgics, and Aeneid. 12mo.

— — The Georgics, Bucolics, and the First Six Books of the Aeneid of Vergil. With Notes and a Vergilian Dictionary. 12mo.

Harkness, Albert. Series of Latin Text-Books. 12mo:

An Introductory Latin Book, intended as an Elementary Drill-Book on the Inflections and Principles of the Language.

A Latin Grammar, for Schools and Colleges.

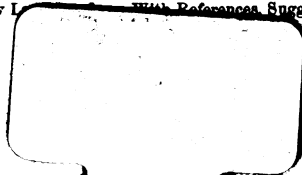
A Latin Grammar, for Schools and Colleges. Revised edition. 1881.

The Elements of Latin Grammar, for Schools.

A Latin Reader. Intended as a companion to the author's Latin Grammar.

A Latin Reader. With Exercises.

A New Latin Grammar, References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary.



Walter B. Jacobs

STANDARD CLASSICAL TEXT-BOOKS.

Harkness, Albert. Series of Latin Text-Books. 12mo:

A Practical Introduction to Latin Composition, For Schools and Colleges.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. With Notes, Dictionary, etc.

Preparatory Course in Latin Prose Authors, comprising Four Books of Cæsar's Gallic War, Sallust's Catiline, and Eight Orations of Cicero. With Notes, Illustrations, a Map of Gaul, and a Special Dictionary.

Sallust's Catiline. With Notes and a Special Dictionary.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes, etc.

The same, with Notes and Dictionary.

This series has received the unqualified commendation of many of the most eminent classical professors and teachers in our country, and is already in use in every State of the Union, and, indeed, in nearly all our leading classical institutions of every grade, both of school and college.

Horace. See LINCOLN.

Johnson, E. A. Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes. 12mo.

Latin Speaker. See SEWALL.

Lincoln, John L. Horace. With Notes, etc. 12mo.

— — — Livy. With Notes, Map, etc. 12mo.

Lindsay, T. B. Corv'us Nepos. With Notes, Vocabulary, Index, and Exercises. Illustrated. 12mo.

Livy. See LINCOLN.

Quintilian. See FRIEZE.

Quintus Curtius Rufus. See CROSBY, W. H.

Sallust. See BUTLER and STURGEON, and HARKNESS.

Sewall, Frank. Latin Speaker. Easy Dialogues, and other Selections for Memorizing and Declaiming in the Latin Language. 12mo.

Spencer, J. A. Cæsar's Commentaries. With Notes, etc. 12mo.

Tacitus. See TYLER.

Thacher, Thomas A. Cicero's de Officiis. Three Books, with Notes and Conspectus. 12mo.

Tyler, W. S. Germania and Agricola of Tacitus. With Notes, etc. 12mo.

— — — Histories of Tacitus. With Notes. 12mo.

Vergil. See FRIEZE.

GREEK.

Anabasis. See BOISE and OWEN.

Antigone. See SMEAD.

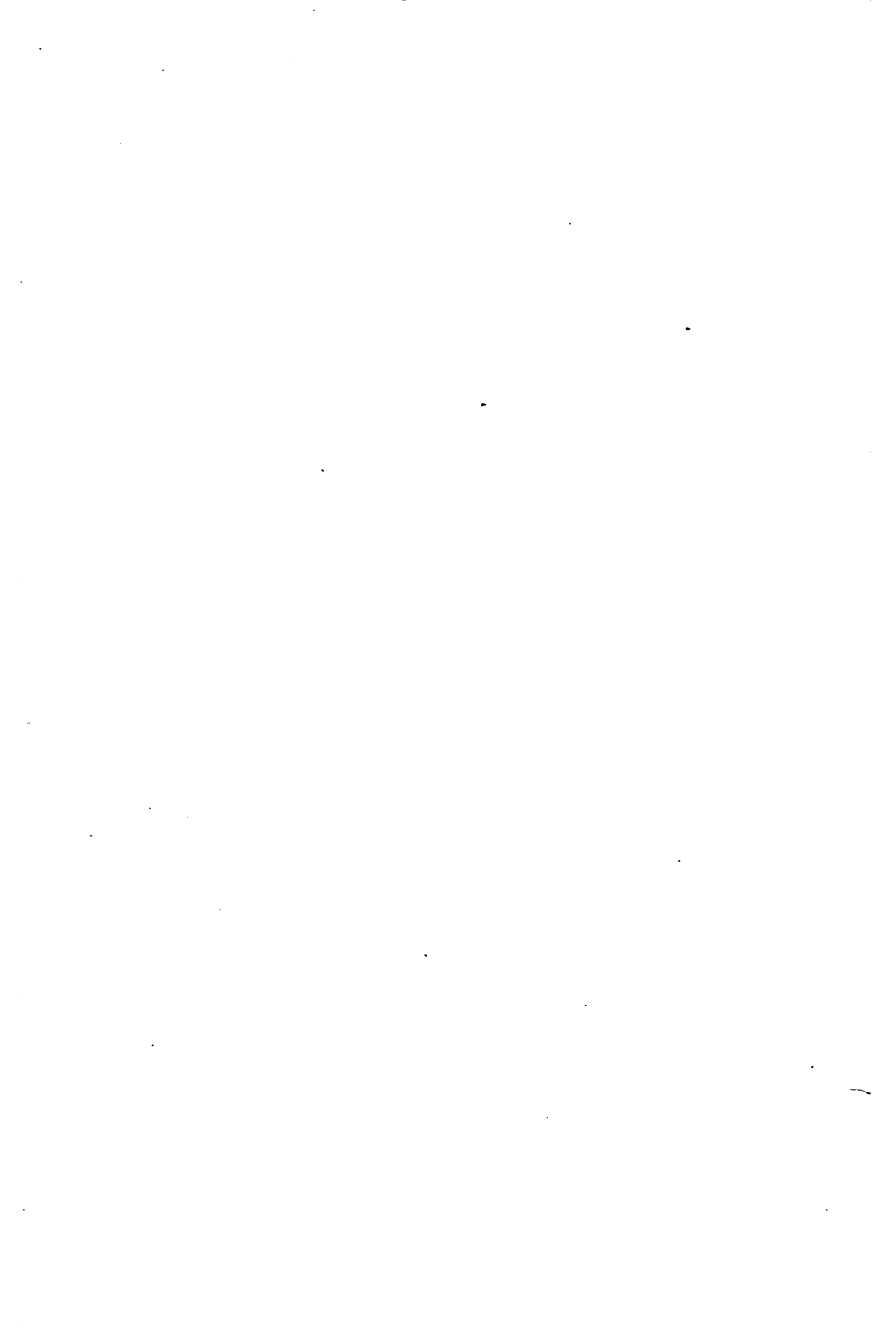
Arnold, T. K. First Greek Book. Edited by SPENCER. 12mo.

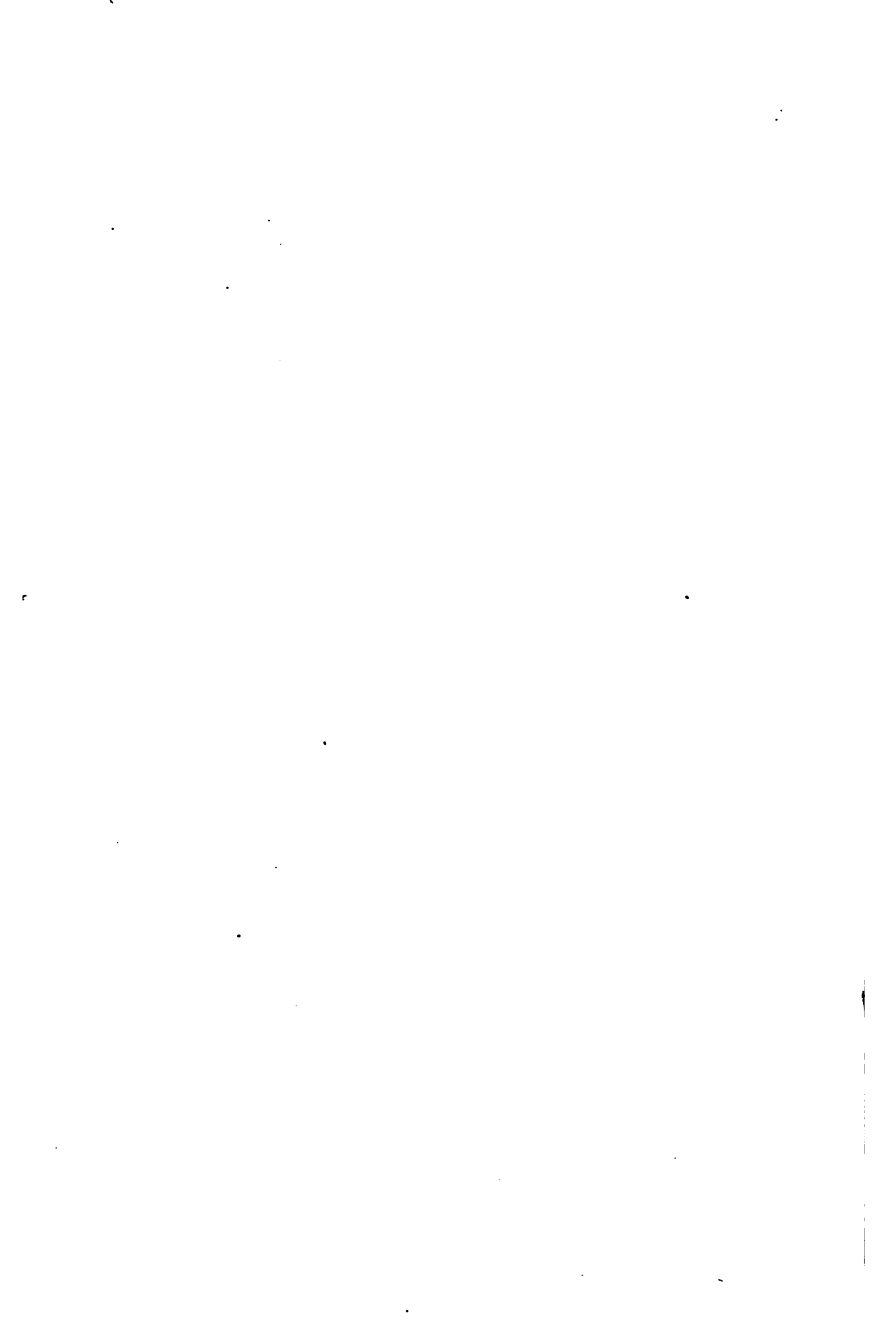
— — — Greek Prose Composition. By SPENCER. 12mo.

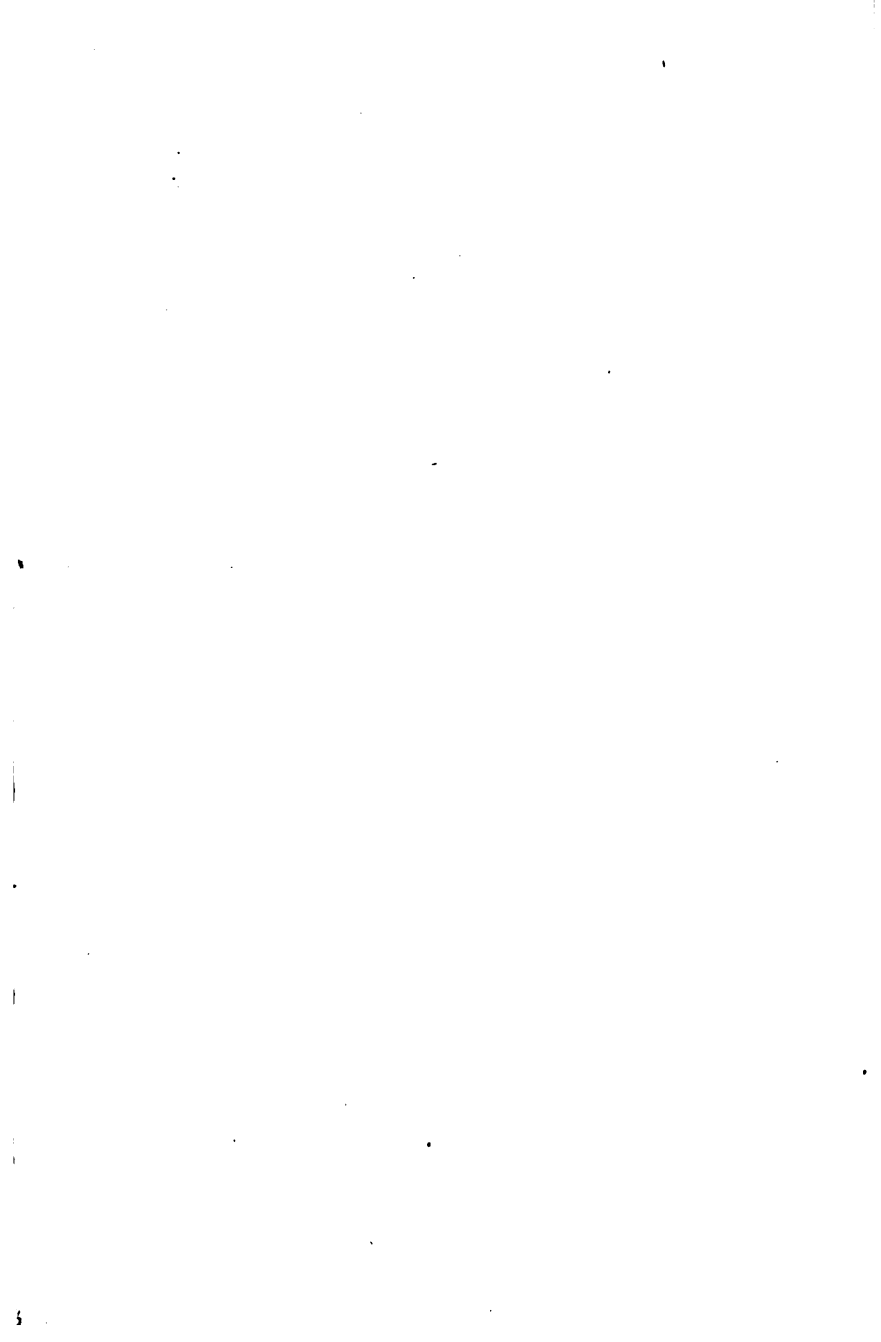
— — — Second Greek Prose Composition. By SPENCER. 12mo.

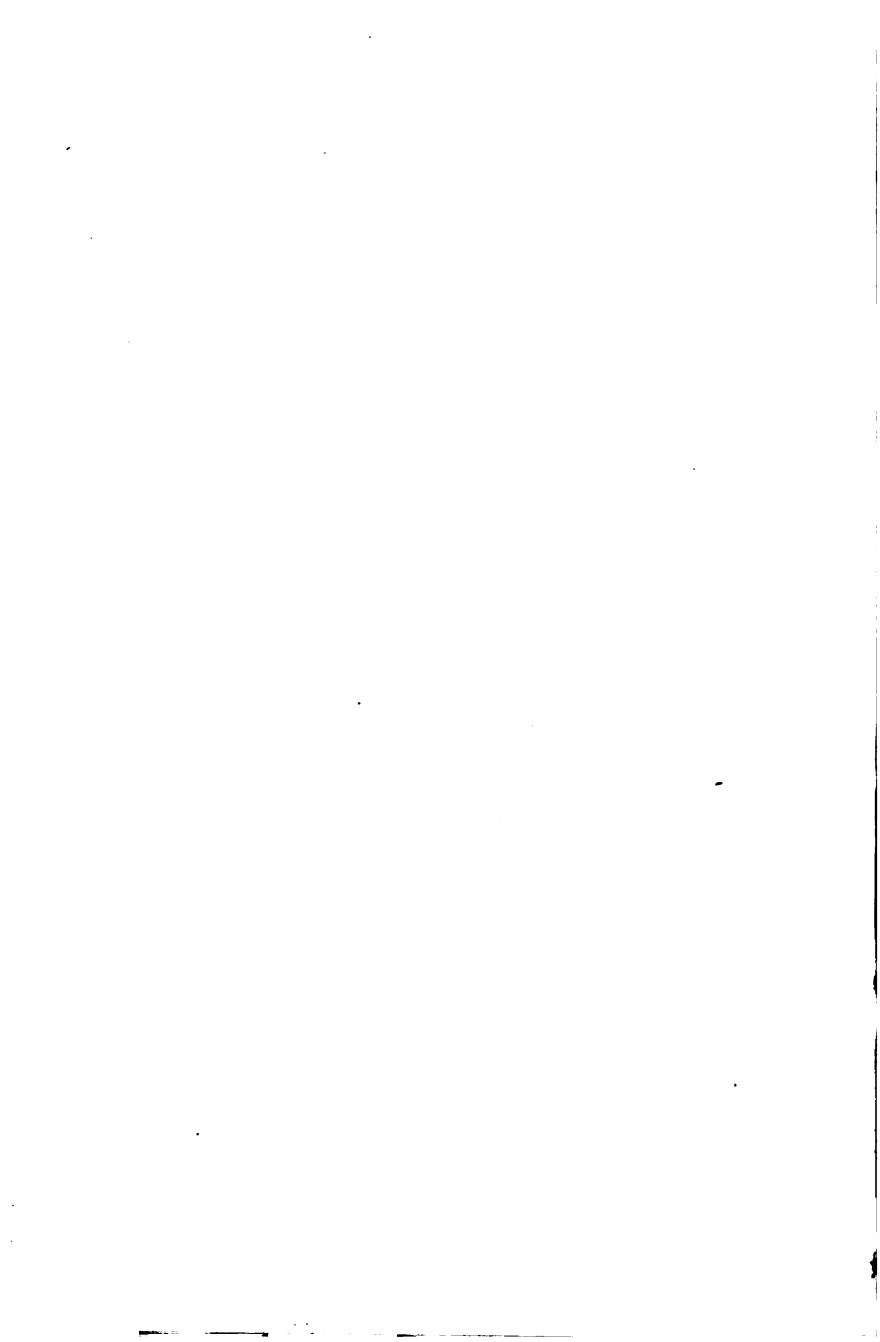


3 2044 097 057 830









A
COMPLETE LATIN COURSE

FOR THE
FIRST YEAR,

COMPRISING
AN OUTLINE OF LATIN GRAMMAR, AND A SERIES OF
PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES IN READING AND
WRITING LATIN, WITH FREQUENT
PRACTICE IN READING
AT SIGHT.

BY
ALBERT HARKNESS, PH.D., LL.D.,
PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
1, 3, AND 5 BOND STREET.
1885.

EducT 918.85.447

✓



Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1883, by

ALBERT HARKNESS,

In the Office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington.

P R E F A C E.

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil a complete course for his first year in the study of Latin. It conducts the beginner through the common forms and inflections of the language, introduces him to the leading principles of its syntax, and aims to prepare him to enter with success upon the consecutive study of Caesar or of any of the less difficult Latin authors. It comprises an Outline of Latin Grammar, Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, eighteen pages of Connected Discourse from Caesar, Directions for Reading at Sight, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes, a Latin-English and an English-Latin Vocabulary.

The Paradigms and Rules are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Thus the great objection to many First Latin Books, that they fill the memory of the pupil with forms of statement that must be laid aside as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume.

The *Latin Exercises* are taken chiefly from Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. They are made so strictly progressive, that the learner will find it perfectly easy, in the latter part of the volume, to make the transition from classified sentences to connected discourse. The

English Exercises are modelled after the Latin, and involve the same constructions and the same vocabulary.

The *Exercises in Reading at Sight* consist of easy passages of connected discourse from Caesar's Commentaries. They are so arranged that all the words and constructions involved in any given exercise are introduced and used in previous lessons. The pupil, therefore, who has learned all the vocabularies, and has been faithful in his other work, will find little difficulty in reading at sight in accordance with the directions given him. The important point is not that he should translate any given passage absolutely at sight, but that he should master it without help from any source whatever. The exercises are intended to encourage independent work, to promote self-reliance in study, and to give facility in reading and appreciating Latin.

The *Suggestions to the Learner* are intended not only to point out to the beginner the process by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence, but also to aid him in expressing that meaning in idiomatic English. Experience has abundantly shown the need of such directions. The beginner's first efforts to solve the problem presented by a Latin sentence are too often little better than a series of unsuccessful conjectures, while his first translations are purely mechanical renderings, with little regard either to the thought of his author or to the proprieties of his mother-tongue.

I am happy in this connection to acknowledge my obligations to my esteemed friend, Mr. Edward H. Cutler, the accomplished Head-Master of the Newton High School. His accurate scholarship and large professional experience have contributed greatly to the value of every part of the work. The vocabularies are all from his hand.

The work which appears entire in this volume is also published without the *Grammatical Outline*, under the title: *Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, with*

Frequent Practice in Reading at Sight, intended as a Companion Book to the Author's Latin Grammar.

Teachers who use the author's Latin Series in connection with the Standard Edition¹ of his Latin Grammar, may now choose for their classes during the first year of their Latin studies any one of the following courses :—

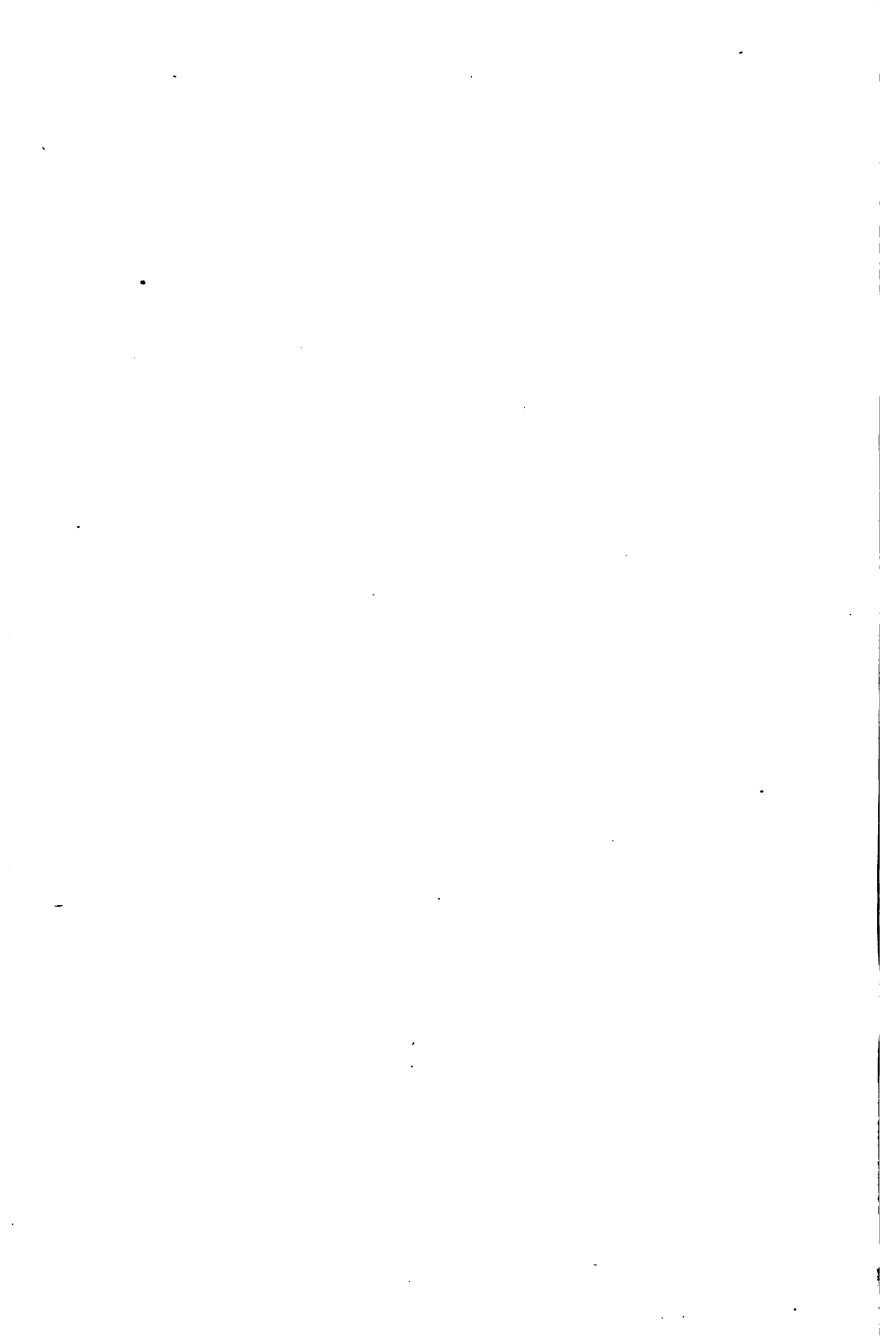
1. *The Complete Latin Course for the First Year.*
2. *The Grammar, and the Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin.*
3. *The Grammar, and the New Latin Reader.*

Each of these courses will be found to furnish an adequate preparation for the reading of any of the less difficult Latin authors. In making the selection, teachers will have an opportunity to gratify their individual preferences, and to consult the special needs of their schools.

¹ Those who retain the earlier edition of the Grammar will find the *Introductory Latin Book* and the *Latin Reader* adapted to it. The editions of Latin Authors may be had with references to either edition of the Grammar, at the option of the instructor.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, PROVIDENCE, R.I.,

July, 1883.



CONTENTS.

	PAGE
LESSON I. Alphabet	1
II. Pronunciation	4
III. Quantity.— Accentuation	11
IV. Parts of Speech.— Nouns	13
V. Cases	15
VI., VII. First Declension	16
VIII. Sentences.— Verbs	19
IX. Certain Forms of the First Conjugation	22
X. Subject Nominative.— Agreement of Verbs	23
XI. Direct Object	26
XII., XIII. Certain Forms of the Second Conjugation.— Appositives.— Genitive with Nouns	28
XIV., XV. Second Declension	31
XVI. Adjectives.— First and Second Declensions	35
XVII. Agreement of Adjectives.— Certain Forms of <i>Sum</i>	38
XVIII.,—XXIV. Third Declension	43
Dative with Verbs	47
Predicate Nouns	51
XXV. Gender in Third Declension.— Cases with Prepositions	56
XXVI. Certain Forms of the Third Conjugation.— Use of Adverbs	60
XXVII., XXVIII. Certain Forms of the Fourth Conjugation.— Perfect Tense.— Ablative of Means	62
XXIX., XXX. Adjectives of the Third Declension	66
Comparison of Adjectives	70
XXXI. Ablative with Comparatives	71
XXXII. Fourth Declension.— Fifth Declension.— Time	74

LESSON XXXIII.	Numerals. — Accusative of Time and Space.	77
XXXIV. — XXXVI.	Pronouns	81
	Questions — Answers	87
XXXVII.	Agreement of Pronouns	88
XXXVIII.	Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Active, and Present Imperative Active, in Conju- gations I. and II., and in <i>Sum</i> . — Use of Indicative	91
XXXIX.	Subjunctive of Desire, Command. — Impera- tive	94
XL., XLI.	Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Active, and Present Imperative Active, in Conju- gations III. and IV. — Sequence of Tenses. — Purpose	97
XLII.	Result	102
XLIII.	Moods in Indirect Clauses	106
XLIV.	Present Infinitive Active. — Use of Infini- tive. — Certain Forms of <i>Possum</i>	109
XLV.	Directions for Reading at Sight. — Exercise in Reading at Sight.	112
XLVI., XLVII.	<i>Sum</i>	115
	Dative with Adjectives	118
XLVIII. — L.	First Conjugation. — Indicative Active	120
LI., LII.	First Conjugation. — Active Voice	123
	Two Accusatives — Same Person	126
LIII. — LV.	First Conjugation. — Indicative Passive. — Separation, Source, Cause	128
LVI., LVII.	First Conjugation. — Subjunctive Passive. — Supine in <i>um</i>	133
LVIII.	First Conjugation. — Passive Voice. — Accusa- tive and Infinitive. — Subject of Infinitive	135
LIX.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	140
LX.	Second Conjugation. — Indicative Active	141
LXI. — LXIII.	Second Conjugation. — Active Voice	143
	Place in Which	147
LXIV., LXV.	Second Conjugation. — Indicative Passive. — Use of Vocative	151
LXVI. — LXVIII.	Second Conjugation. — Passive Voice	153

LESSON LXIX.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	160
LXX.	Third Conjugation. — Indicative Active . .	161
LXXI., LXXII.	Third Conjugation. — Active Voice	163
LXXIII. — LXXV.	Third Conjugation. — Passive Voice	169
LXXVI	Exercise in Reading at Sight	176
LXXVII.	Fourth Conjugation. — Indicative Active . .	177
LXXVIII., LXXIX.	Fourth Conjugation. — Active Voice	179
	Ablative of Specification	183
LXXX. — LXXXII.	Fourth Conjugation. — Passive Voice	185
	Ablative of Difference	188
	Ablative Absolute	190
LXXXIII.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	193
LXXXIV.	Third Conjugation. — Verbs in <i>iō</i> . — Active Voice. — Supine in <i>ū</i>	194
LXXXV.	Third Conjugation. — Verbs in <i>iō</i> . — Passive Voice. — Conditional Sentences	196
LXXXVI.	Concessive Clauses	202
LXXXVII.	Deponent Verbs. — Ablative in Special Con- structions	205
LXXXVIII.	Indirect Discourse	209
LXXXIX.	Periphrastic Conjugations. — Exercise in Reading at Sight.	214
XC. — XCV.	Irregular Verbs. — <i>Possum</i>	215
	<i>Ferō</i>	216
	<i>Volō</i> . — <i>Nōlō</i> . — <i>Mālō</i> . — Two Accusatives — Person and Thing	220
	<i>Fiō</i> . — <i>Eō</i> . — Accusative of Limit. — Place from Which	224
XCVI., XCVII.	Impersonal Verbs. — Two Datives — To which and For which	229
	Accusative and Genitive.	232
XCVIII.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	235
XCIX. — CI.	Gerunds, Gerundives, and Participles	236
	CII. Accusative of Specification. — Accusative in Exclamations	243
	CIII. Dative with Nouns and Adverbs	246
	CIV. Genitive with Adjectives. — Predicate Geni- tive. — Genitive with Special Verbs	249

LESSON CV.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	253
CVI., CVII.	Ablative of Accompaniment.—Ablative of Price,	254
CVIII., CIX.	Potential Subjunctive	259
CX.	Conditional Clauses with <i>dum</i> , etc.	264
CXI.	Causal Clauses. — Exercise in Reading at Sight	267
CXII.	Temporal Clauses. — <i>Postquam</i> , etc. — <i>Dum</i> , etc.	269
CXIII.	Temporal Clauses. — <i>Antequam</i> and <i>Priusquam</i> . — <i>Cum</i>	273
CXIV. — CXVI.	Reviews	276
	Exercise in Reading at Sight	280
	Narratives from Caesar. — The Helvetii	282
	Invasion of Britain	293
	Suggestions on Exercises in Latin Composition	300
	Suggestions to the Learner	301
	Latin-English Vocabulary	313
	English-Latin Vocabulary	347
	Appendix.—General Rules of Syntax	363
	Table of Articles from the Grammar	375

FIRST YEAR'S LATIN COURSE.

LESSON I.

LATIN ALPHABET.

1. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. LATIN GRAMMAR treats of the principles of the Latin language.

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. Letters are divided according to the position of the vocal organs at the time of utterance into two general classes, vowels and consonants,¹ and these classes are again divided into various subdivisions, as seen in the following

CLASSIFICATION OF LETTERS.

I. VOWELS.

1. OPEN VOWEL ²	.	.	.	.	.	.	a	
2. MEDIAL VOWELS	.	.	.	.	.	.	e	o
3. CLOSE VOWELS ³	i	y	u

¹ If the vocal organs are sufficiently open to allow an uninterrupted flow of vocal sound, a vowel is produced, otherwise a consonant; but the least open vowels are scarcely distinguishable from the most open consonants.

² In pronouncing the open vowel *a* as in *father*, the vocal organs are fully open. By gradually contracting them at one point and another we produce in succession the medial vowels, the close vowels, the semivowels, the nasals, the aspirate, the fricatives, and finally the mutes, in pronouncing which the closure of the vocal organs becomes complete.

³ *E* is a medial vowel between the open *a* and the close *i*; *o* a medial

II. CONSONANTS.¹

		GUTTURALS.	DENTALS.	LABIALS.
1. SEMIVOWELS, <i>sonant</i> ²	. . .	i or j = y		v = w
2. NASALS, <i>sonant</i>	. . .	n ³	n	m
3. ASPIRATE, <i>surd</i> ²	. . .	h		
4. FRICATIVES, comprising:				
1. <i>Liquids, sonant</i>	. . .		l, r	
2. <i>Spirants, surd</i>	. . .		s	f
5. MUTES, comprising:				
1. <i>Sonant mutes</i>	. . .	g	d	b
2. <i>Surd mutes</i>	. . .	c, k, q	t	p

NOTE. — *X* = *cs*, and *z* = *ds*, are double consonants, formed by the union of a mute with the spirant *s*.

4. Diphthongs are formed by the union of two vowels in one syllable.

NOTE. — The most common diphthongs are *ae*, *oe*, *au*, and *eu*. *Ei*, *oi*, and *ui* are rare.

PHONETIC CHANGES.

22. Vowels are often weakened, *i.e.*, are often changed to weaker vowels.

The order of the vowels, from the strongest to the weakest, is as follows:

vowel between the open *a* and the close *u*; *y* was introduced from the Greek.

¹ Observe that the consonants are divided:

I. According to the ORGANS chiefly employed in their production, into

1. Gutturals — *throat letters*, also called Palatals.

2. Dentals — *teeth letters*, also called Linguals.

3. Labials — *lip letters*.

II. According to the MANNER in which they are uttered, into

1. Sonants, or *voiced letters*.

2. Surds, or *voiceless letters*.

² The distinction between a *sonant* and a *surd* will be appreciated by observing the difference between the sonant *b* and its corresponding surd *p* in such words as *bad*, *pad*. *B* is vocalized, *p* is not.

³ With the sound of *n* in *concord*, *linger*. It occurs before gutturals: *congruenter*, suitably.

a,	o,	u,	e,	i ¹
Thus a is changed to	o . . .	u . . .	e . . .	i
	o to	u . . .	e . . .	i
		u to	e . . .	i
			e to	i ²

Carmen,³ *carmenis*, *carminis*, a song, of a song; *factō*, *cōn-faciō*, *cōn-ficiō*, I make, I accomplish; *factus*, *in-factus*, *in-fectus*, made, not made; *teneō*, *con-teneō*, *con-tineō*, I hold, I contain; *tuba*, *tuba-cen*, *tubi-cen*, a flute, a flute-player.

30. **Ā Guttural + c, g, q, (qu) or h,**—before **s** generally unites with it and forms **ṣ**:

Ducs, dux, leader; pācs, pāx, peace; rēgs, rēcs, rēx, king; lēgs, lēcs, lēx, law: coquši, cociši, cozi, I have cooked; trahši, traciši, trazi, I have drawn.

31. **S** is generally changed to **x** when it stands between two vowels :

Flōēs, flōrēs, flowers; *jūsa, jūra*, rights; *mēnsāsum, mēnsārum*, of tables; *agrōsum, agrōrum*, of fields; *esam, eram*, I was; *esāmus, erāmus*, we were.

33. **PARTIAL ASSIMILATION.**—A consonant is often partially⁴ assimilated by a following consonant. Thus before the surd **s** or **t**, a sonant **b** or **g** is generally changed to its corresponding surd, **p** or **c**:

Scribsi, scripsi, I have written; *scribtus, scriptus*, written; *regsi, recsi, rexī* (30), I have ruled; *regtus, rectus*, ruled.

¹ The change from *a* through *o* to *u* is usually arrested at *u*, while *a* is often changed directly through *e* to *i* without passing through *o* or *u*. Thus the open *a* is changed either to the close *u* through the medial *o*, as seen on the right side of the following vowel-triangle, or to the close *i* through the medial *e*, as seen on the left side:

Open vowel a
Medial vowels e o
Close vowels i u

* But *u*, *e*, and *i* differ so slightly in strength that they appear at times to be simply interchanged.

* Here, *e* in *carmen* becomes *i* in *carminis*, *a* in *faciō* becomes *i* in *cōficiō*, etc.

⁴ That is, it is adapted or accommodated to it, but does not become the same letter.

LESSON II.

PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.¹2. *Lesson from the Grammar for those who adopt the Roman Method of Pronunciation.*²

5. VOWELS. — The vowel sounds are the following: —

LONG.		SHORT.	
ā like ä in father:	ā'-rīs. ³	a like a in Cuba: ⁶	a'-met.
ē " e " prey; ⁴	ē'-dī.	e " e " net:	re'-get.
ī " i " machine: ⁴	ī'-rī.	i " i " cigar:	vi'-det.
ō " o " old:	ō'-rās.	o " o " obey:	mo'-net.
ū " u " rule: ⁴	ū'-nō.	u " u " full:	su'-mus.

1. A short vowel in a long syllable is pronounced short: *sunt*,⁶ u as in *sum*, *su'-mus*. But see 16, note 2.

3. I preceded by an accented a, e, o, or y, and followed by another vowel, is a semivowel with the sound of y in *yet* (7): *A-chā-ia* (*A-kā'-yā*).

4. U in *qu*, and generally in *gu* and *su* before a vowel, has the sound of w: *quī* (*kwē*), *lin'-gua* (*lin'-gwā*), *suā'-sit* (*swā'-sit*).

¹ In this country three distinct methods are recognized in the pronunciation of Latin. They are generally known as the *Roman*, the *English*, and the *Continental Methods*. The pupil will, of course, study only the method adopted in the school.

² Those who adopt the English Method will now turn to page 6, — *Lesson from the Grammar for those who adopt the English Method of Pronunciation*.

Those who adopt the Continental Method will turn to page 9, — *Lesson from the Grammar for those who adopt the Continental Method of Pronunciation*.

³ The Latin vowels marked with the macron $\bar{}$ are long in quantity, i.e. in the duration of the sound (16); those not marked are short in quantity; see 16, note 3.

⁴ Or ē like ä in *made*, ī like ē in *me*, and ū like oo in *moon*.

⁵ The short vowels can be only imperfectly represented by English equivalents. In theory they have the same sounds as the corresponding long vowels, but occupy only half as much time in utterance.

⁶ Observe the difference between the *length* or *quantity* of the vowel and the *length* or *quantity* of the syllable. Here the vowel u is short, but the syllable *sunt* is long; see 16, I. In syllables long irrespective of the length

6. DIPHTHONGS. — In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound:

ae (for ai) like the English ay (yes): *mēn'-sae*.¹

au like ow in how: *cau'-sa*.

oe (for oi) like oi in coin: *foe'-dus*.²

7. CONSONANTS. — Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English, but the following require special notice:

c like k in king: *cē'-lē*s (kay-lace), *cī'-vī* (kē-wē).

g " g " get: *re'-gunt*, *re'-gis*, *ge'-nus*.

j " y " yet: *jū'-stum* (yoo-stum), *ja'-cet*.

s " s " son: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *A'-si-a*.

t " t " time: *tī'-mor*, *tō'-tus*, *āc'-ti-ō*.

v " w " we: *va'-dum*, *vī'-cī*, *vī'-ti-um*.

8. SYLLABLES. — In dividing words into syllables, make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-re*, *per-suā'-dē*, *mēn'-sae*.³

3. Pronounce the following words according to the Roman Method.⁴

1. Hō'-ra (an hour), hō'-rae (of an hour), hō-rā'-rum (of hours), hō'-rīs (by hours). 2. Glō'-ri-a (glory), glō'-ri-ae (of glory), glō'-riā (with glory). 3. Dō'-num (a gift), dō'-nī (of a gift), dō'-nō (with a gift), dō'-na (gifts), dō-nō'-rum (of gifts), dō'-nīs (with gifts). 4. Cī'-vis (a citizen), cī'-vī

of the vowels contained in them, it is often difficult and sometimes absolutely impossible to determine the *natural quantity* of the vowels; but it is thought advisable to treat vowels as short in all situations where there are not good reasons for believing them to be long.

¹ Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

² *Ei* as in *veil*, *eu* with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, and *oi* = *oe*, occur in a few words: *dein*, *neu'-ter*, *proin*.

³ Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it — one or more — as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-trēs*, *ge'-ne-rī*, *do'-mi-nus*, *nō'-scit*, *si'-stis*, *clau'-stra*, *mēn'-sa*, *bel'-lum*, *tem'-plum*, *ēmp'-tus*. But compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts ends in a consonant: *ab'-es*, *ob'-i'-re*.

⁴ After finishing this exercise those who adopt the *Roman Method*, will omit the *English* and the *Continental Method* and turn to LESSON III.

(for a citizen), cī'-vēs (citizens), cī'-vi-um (of citizens), cī'-vi-bus (for citizens). 5. Mī'-les (a soldier), mī'-li-tis (of a soldier), mī'-li-tī (to a soldier), mī'-li-tēs (soldiers), mī'-li-tum (of soldiers), mī'-li-ti-bus (for soldiers).

2. Lesson from the Grammar for those who adopt the English Method of Pronunciation.

9. VOWELS. — Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds.

10. LONG SOUNDS. — Vowels have their long English sounds — **a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type* — in the following situations: —

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel: —

Se, si, ser'-vi, ser'-vo, cor'-nu, mi'-sy.

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong: —

*De'-us, de-o'-rum, de'-ae, di-e'-i, ni'-hi-lum.*¹

3. In penultimate² syllables before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid: —

Pa'-ter, pa'-tres, ho-no'-ris, A'-thos, O'-thrys.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid: —

Do-lo'-ris, cor'-po-ri, con'-su-lis, a-gric'-o-la.

1. **A** unaccented has the sound of a final in *America*: *men'-sa, a-cu'-tus, a-ma'-mus.*³

11. SHORT SOUNDS. — Vowels have their short English sounds — **a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth* — in the following situations: —

¹ In these rules no account is taken of the aspirate *h*: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel; for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

² Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

³ Some give the same sound to a final in monosyllables: *da, qua*; while others give it the long sound according to 10, 1.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant : —

A'-mat, a'-met, rex'-it, sol, con'-sul, Te'-thys ; except *post, es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res, di'-es, hos, a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *æ*, or any two consonants except a mute followed by a liquid (10, 3 and 4) : —

Rex'-it, bel'-lum, rex'-e'-runt, bel'-lo'-rum.

3. In all accented syllables, not penultimate, before one or more consonants : —

Dom'-i-nus, pat'-ri-bus. But —

1) **A, e, or o** before a single consonant (or a mute and a liquid), followed by *e, i, or y* before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es, a'-cri-a, me'-re-o, do'-ce-o*.

2) **U**, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute and a liquid, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus, sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

12. DIPHTHONGS. — Diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

Ae like *e*: *Cae'-sar, Daed'-a-lus*.¹ | **Au** as in *author*: *au'-rum*.

Oe like *e*: *Oe'-ta, Oed'-i-pus*.¹ | **Eu**² as in *neuter*: *neu'-ter*.

13. CONSONANTS. — The consonants are pronounced in general as in English. Thus : —

I. **C** and **G** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e, t, y, æ*, and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations³: *ce'-do* (*se'-do*), *cf'-vis*, *Cy'-rus, cas'-do, coe'-pi, a'-ge* (*a'-je*), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (*ka'-do*), *co'-go, cum, Ga'-des*.

II. **S, T, and X** are generally pronounced as in the English words *son, time, expect*: *sa'-cer, ti'-mor, rex'-i* (*rek'-si*). But —

1. *S, T, and X* are aspirated before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, — *s* and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, and *x* that of *ksh*: *Al'-si-um* (*Al'-she-um*), *ar'-ti-um* (*ar'-she-um*), *anx'-i-us* (*ank'-she-us*).

¹ The diphthong has the *long sound* in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta*, according to 10, 3, but the *short sound* in *Daed'-a-lus* (*Ded'-a-lus*) and *Oed'-i-pus* (*Ed'-i-pus*), according to 11, 3, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

² *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in *height, coin*: *hei, proin*. *Ui*, as a diphthong, with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cui, hui, huic*.

³ *C* has the sound of *sh* —

1. Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel: *so'-ci-us* (*so'-she-us*);

2. Before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (*ca-du'-she-us*), *Sic'-y-on* (*Sish'-y-on*).

2. *S* is pronounced like *z* —

1) At the end of a word, after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*: *spes*, *præs*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*;

2) In a few words after the analogy of the corresponding English words: *Cae'-sar*, Caesar; *cau'-sa*, cause; *mu'-sa*, muse; *mi'-ser*, miser, miserable, etc.

3. *X* at the beginning of a word has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus*.

14. SYLLABLES. — In dividing words into syllables —

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re*, *per-sua'-de*, *men'-sae*.

2. Distribute the consonants so as to give the proper sound to each vowel and diphthong, as determined by previous rules (10-12): *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *a-gro'-rum*, *au-di'-vi*, *gen'-e-ri*, *dom'-i-nus*.

3. Pronounce the following words according to the English Method.¹

1. Men'-sam (*a table*),² men'sā (*with a table*), men'sae (*tables*),³ men-sa'-rum (*of tables*),⁴ men'-sis (*with tables*). 2. Ho'-ram (*an hour*),⁵ ho'-rae (*of an hour*),⁶ ho'-rae (*hours*), ho-ra'-rum (*of hours*).⁷ 3. Scho'-la (*a school*),⁸ scho'-lae (*schools*), scho-la'-rum (*of schools*). 4. Co-ro'-na (*a crown*),⁹ co-ro'-nae (*crowns*),⁹ co-ro'-nis (*with crowns*). 5. Ci'-vis (*a citizen*),¹⁰ civ'-i-um (*of citizens*), civ'-i-bus (*for citizens*). 6. Car'-men (*a song*),¹¹ car'-mi-nis (*of a song*), car'-mi-ne (*with a song*).¹² 7. Rex (*a king*),¹³ re'-gis (*of a king*),¹⁴ re'-gi (*for a king*), re'-gum (*of kings*).¹⁴ 8. A'-ci-em (*a line of battle*),¹⁵ a'-ci-e (*with a line of battle*), a'-ci-es (*a line of battle*).¹⁶

¹ After completing this exercise those who adopt the English Pronunciation of Latin, omitting the Continental Method, will turn to Lesson III.

² 11, 2; 11, 1.

⁷ 10, 3 and 4; 11, 1.

¹² 11, 3; 10, 3; 10, 1.

³ 11, 2; 12; 10, 1.

⁸ 10, 3; 10, 4, 1).

¹³ 13, II.

⁴ 11, 2; 10, 3; 11, 1.

⁹ 10, 4; 12; 10, 1.

¹⁴ 13, I.; 10, 3; 11, 1.

⁵ 10, 3; 11, 1.

¹⁰ 13, I. and II.; 10, 3;

¹⁵ 11, 3, 1); 13, I., footnote; 11, 1.

⁶ 10, 3; 12; 10, 1.

11, 1.

¹¹ 13, I.; 11, 2; 11, 1.

¹⁶ 13, II., 2.

2. Lesson from the Grammar for those who adopt the Continental Method of Pronunciation.

5. VOWELS. — The vowel sounds are the following: —

LONG.		SHORT.	
ā like ä in father:	ā'-ris. ¹	a like a in Cuba: ²	a'-met.
ē " e " prey: ³	ē'-dī.	e " e " net:	re'-get.
ī " i " machine: ³	ī'-rī.	i " i " cigar:	vi'-det.
ō " o " old:	ō'-rās.	o " o " obey:	mo'-net.
ū " u " rule: ³	ū'-nō.	u " u " full:	su'-mus.

1. A short vowel in a long syllable is pronounced short: *sunt*,⁴ *u* as in *sum*, *su'-mus*. But see 16, note 2.

3. *i* preceded by an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y*, and followed by another vowel, is a semivowel with the sound of *y* in *yet* (7): *A-chā'-ia* (*A-kā'-yā*).

4. *U* in *qu*, and generally in *gu* and *su* before a vowel, has the sound of *w*: *quī* (*kwē*), *lin'-gua* (*līn'-gwā*), *suā'-sit* (*swā'-sit*).

6. DIPHTHONGS. — In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound: —

ae (for *ai*) like the English *ay* (yes): *mēn'-sae*.⁵

au like *ow* in *how*: *cau'-sa*.

oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in *coin*: *foe'-dus*.⁶

13. CONSONANTS. — The consonants are pronounced in general as in English. Thus: —

¹ The Latin vowels marked with the macron $\bar{}$ are *long in quantity*, i.e. in the duration of the sound (16); those not marked are *short in quantity*; see 16, note 3.

² Or \bar{e} like \bar{a} in *made*, \bar{i} like \bar{e} in *me*, and \bar{u} like *oo* in *moon*.

³ The short vowels can be only imperfectly represented by English equivalents. In theory they have the same sounds as the corresponding long vowels, but occupy only half as much time in utterance.

⁴ Observe the difference between the *length* or *quantity* of the vowel and the *length* or *quantity* of the syllable. Here the vowel *u* is short, but the syllable *sunt* is long; see 16, I. In syllables long irrespective of the length of vowels contained in them, it is often difficult and sometimes absolutely impossible to determine the *natural quantity* of the vowels; but it is thought advisable to treat vowels as short in all situations where there are not good reasons for believing them to be long.

⁵ Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

⁶ *Ei* as in *veil*, *eu* with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, and *oi* = *oe*, occur in a few words: *dein*, *neu'-ter*, *proin*.

I. **C** and **G** are soft (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, and *oe*, and hard in other situations:¹ *cē'-dō* (sā'-do), *cī'-vis*, *Cŷ'-rus*, *cae'-dō*, *coe'-pī*, *a'-ge* (ā'-je), *a'-gī*; *ca'-dō* (kā'-do), *cō'-gō*, *cum*, *Gā'-dēs*.

II. **S**, **T**, and **X** are generally pronounced as in the English words *son*, *time*, *expect*: *sa'-cer*, *tī'-mor*, *rēx'-ī* (rāk'-sē). But —

1. *S*, *T*, and *X* are aspirated before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel — *s* and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, and *x* that of *ksh*: *Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um), *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us).

2. *S* is pronounced like *z* —

1) At the end of a word, after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*: *spēs*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mōns*, *pars*;

2) In a few words after the analogy of the corresponding English words: *Cae'-sar*, *Caesar*; *cau'-sa*, *cause*; *mū'-sa*, *muse*; *mi'-ser*, *miser*, *miserable*, etc.

3. *X* at the beginning of a word has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus*.

14. SYLLABLES. — In dividing words into syllables make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-re*, *per-suā'-dē*, *mēn'-sae*.²

3. Pronounce the following words according to the Continental Method.

1. *Hō'-ra* (an hour), *hō'-rae* (of an hour), *hō-rā'-rum* (of hours), *hō'-ris* (by hours). 2. *Glō'-ri-a* (glory), *glō'-ri-ae* (of glory), *glō'-riā* (with glory). 3. *Dō'-num* (a gift), *dō'-nī* (of a gift), *dō'-nō* (with a gift), *dō'-na* (gifts), *dō-nō'-rum* (of gifts), *dō'-nīs* (with gifts). 4. *Cī'-vis* (a citizen), *cī'-vēs* (citizens), *cī'-vi-um* (of citizens), *cī'-vi-bus*

¹ *C* has the sound of *sh* —

1. Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us);

2. Before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *cā-dū'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-ōn* (Siah'-y-on).

² Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it — one or more — as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-trēs*, *ge'-ne-ri*, *do'-mi-nus*, *nō'-scit*. *si'-stis*, *clau'-stra*, *mēn'-sa*, *bel'-lum*, *tem'-plum*, *ēmp'-tus*. But compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts ends in a consonant: *ab'-es*, *ob'-i'-re*.

(for citizens). 5. *Mī'-les* (a soldier), *mī'-li-tis* (of a soldier), *mī'-li-tī* (to a soldier), *mī-li-tēs* (soldiers), *mī'-li-tum* (of soldiers), *mī-li'-ti-bus* (for soldiers).

LESSON III.

QUANTITY. — ACCENTUATION.

4. Lesson from the Grammar.

QUANTITY.

16. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.¹

I. LONG. — A syllable is long in quantity —

1. If it contains a diphthong or a long vowel: *haec, rēs*.²

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, or *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid:³ *dux, rēx, sunt*.⁴

II. SHORT. — A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel, by a diphthong, or by the aspirate *h*: *dī-ēs, vi'-ae, ni'-hil*.⁵

¹ Common, *i.e.* sometimes long and sometimes short.

² See note 3, below.

³ That is, in the order here given, with the mute before the liquid; if the liquid precedes, the syllable is long.

⁴ Observe that the vowel in such syllables may be either long or short. Thus it is long in *rēx*, but short in *dux* and *sunt*.

⁵ By referring to pages 4 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the Roman Method and in the Continental, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 10 and 11, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (18). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus in *rēx* and *sōl*, the vowels are long in quantity; but by 11, 1, they have the short English sounds: while in *ave*, *mare*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 10, 1 and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity, according to

III. COMMON. — A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally¹ short, is followed by a mute and a liquid: *a-grī*.

NOTE 1. — Vowels are also in quantity either long, short, or common; but the quantity of the vowel does not always coincide with the quantity of the syllable.²

NOTE 2. — Vowels are long before *ns* and *nf*, generally also before *gn* and *j*; *cōn'-sul*, *in-fē'-lix*, *rēg'-num*, *hū'-jus*.

NOTE 3. — The signs [˘], ^ˉ are used to mark the quantity of vowels, the first denoting that the vowel over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *common*, i.e. sometimes long and sometimes short: *a-mā'-bē*. All vowels not marked are to be treated as short.³

ACCENTUATION.

17. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *mēn'-sa*.

18. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the *Penult*,⁴ if that is long in quantity;⁵ otherwise on the *Antepenult*:⁶ *ho-nō'-ris*, *cōn'-su-lis*.⁶

3. A secondary or subordinate accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent — on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mo'-nu-ē'-runt*, *mo'-nu-e-rā'-mus*,⁷ *in-stau'-rā-vē'runt*.

18, and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity, according to 10-13.

¹ A vowel is said to be *naturally* short, when it is short in its own nature; i.e. in itself, without reference to its position.

² Thus in long syllables the vowels may be either long or short, as in *rēz*, *duz*, *sunt* (see foot-note 6, p. 4). But in short syllables the vowels are also short.

³ See p. 4, foot-note 6. In many works short vowels are marked with the sign [˘]: *rēgīs*.

⁴ The penult is the last syllable but one; the antepenult, the last but two.

⁵ Thus the quantity of the *syllable*, not of the *vowel*, determines the place of the accent: *regen'-tis*, accented on the penult, because that *syllable* is *long*, though its *vowel* is *short*; see 16, I., 2.

⁶ In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules.

⁷ In the English Method divide thus: *mon'-u-ē'-runt*, *mon-u-e-ra'-mus*.

5. *Accent and pronounce the following words.*¹

1. Corōna (*a crown*),² corōnae (*crowns*), corōnārum (*of crowns*).³ 2. Gemmae (*of a gem*),⁴ gemmā (*with a gem*), gemmārum (*of gems*). 3. Sapientiae (*of wisdom*),⁵ amicitiae (*of friendship*), iustitiae (*of justice*), glōriae (*of glory*).⁶ 4. Sapientiam (*wisdom*), amicitiam (*friendship*), iustitiam (*justice*), glōriam (*glory*). 5. Sapientiā (*with wisdom*), amicitīā (*with friendship*), iustitiā (*with justice*), glōriā (*with glory*).

LESSON IV.

PARTS OF SPEECH.—NOUNS.

6. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

38. IN Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*, viz.: *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicerō*, Cicero; *Rōma*, Rome; *domus*, house.

1. A PROPER NOUN is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicerō*; *Rōma*.

2. A COMMON NOUN is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, man; *equus*, horse.

40. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

¹ According to the method adopted in the school.

² 18; 10, 4, 1).

⁴ 17; 13, I.

⁶ 13, I.; 11, 3, 1).

³ 18, 3.

⁵ 11, 3, 1; 13, II.

I. GENDER.

41. There are three genders:¹ *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

NOTE.—In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

42. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. Masculines:—

1. Names of *Males*; *Cicerō*; *vir*, man; *rēx*, king.
2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Notus*, south wind; *Mārtius*, March.

II. Feminines:—

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.
2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Graecia*, Greece; *Rōma*, Rome; *Dēlos*, Delos; *pirus*, pear-tree.

II. PERSON AND NUMBER.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one; the plural, more than one.

7. *In this exercise give the GENDER and NUMBER of each noun, and tell whether it is COMMON or PROPER.*

1. *Caesar* (*Caesar*), *Alexander* (*Alexander*), *Graecia* (*Greece*).
2. *Mātrēs* (*mothers*), *māter* (*a mother*), *Hispania* (*Spain*).
3. *Pater* (*a father*), *patrēs* (*fathers*), *Rhēnus* (*the river Rhine*).
4. *Puer* (*a boy*), *puerī* (*boys*), *puella* (*a girl*), *puellae* (*girls*).
5. *Sicilia* (*Sicily*), *Sparta* (*the city Sparta*), *mīles* (*a soldier*), *militēs* (*soldiers*).

¹ In English, *gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

LESSON V.

NOUNS. — CASES.

8. Lesson from the Grammar.

45. The Latin has six cases:¹—

NAMES.	ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>with</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> .

1. Oblique Cases. — The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the Oblique Cases.

2. Locative. — The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which*.

9. In this exercise give the GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE of each noun, and tell whether it is COMMON or PROPER.

1. Rēgis (of a king), rēgī (for a king), rēgēs (kings),² rēgum (of kings), rēgibus (for kings). 2. Rēgīna (a queen),² rēgīnae (for the queen), rēgīnis (to queens). 3. Graecia (Greece), Graeciae (for Greece). 4. Cicerōnis (of Cicero), Cicerōnī (for Cicero). 5. Filius (a son), filia (a daughter), filiō (to a son), filiae (to a daughter). 6. Rhēnī (of the river Rhine), Rhodanō (by the river Rhone), Notō (by the south wind), Mārtiō (in March). 7. Filia (the daughter) rēgis (of the king) laudātur (is praised). 8. Fīliam (the daughter) rēgis (of the king) laudant (they

¹ The case of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

² Treat as a *Nominative* any form which cannot be shown from its meaning to be in any other case.

- praise*).¹ 9. Caesar (*Caesar*) militēs (*the soldiers*) laudat (*praises*). 10. Militēs (*the soldiers*) laudantur (*are praised*). 11. Rōmulus (*Romulus*) Rōmam (*Rome*) condidit (*founded*).

LESSON VI.

NOUNS. — FIRST DECLENSION.

10. Lesson from the Grammar.

46. STEM AND SUFFIXES.—The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain suffixes to one common base, called the stem.

1. Accordingly each case-form contains two distinct elements: the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-suffix*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus in *rēg-is*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *rēg*; the relation *of*, by the suffix *is*.

2. Cases Alike. — But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* in *neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).²

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

3. Characteristic. — The last letter of the stem is called the STEM-CHARACTERISTIC, or the STEM-ENDING.

47. FIVE DECLENSIONS.—In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from one another by the *stem-characteristics* or by the *endings* of the *Genitive Singular*, as follows: —

¹ LATIN ORDER: The daughter of the king they praise.

ENGLISH ORDER: They praise the daughter of the king.

² And in some nouns of Greek origin.

	CHARACTERISTICS.	GENITIVE ENDINGS.
DEC. I.	ā	ae
II.	o	i
III.	i or a consonant	is
IV.	u	ūs
V.	ē	ēi

NOTE 2. — The case-suffixes, by which the several cases are formed, appear distinct and unchanged only in nouns with consonant-stems, while in all others they are seen only in combination with the characteristic, i.e. with the final vowel of the stem.

NOTE 3. — The ending produced by the union of the case-suffix with the characteristic vowel may for convenience be called a CASE-ENDING.

FIRST DECLENSION. — A NOUNS.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in

a and ē—*feminine*; ās and ēs—*masculine*.¹

Nouns in a are declined as follows :

EXAMPLE.	SINGULAR.	MEANING.	CASE-ENDING.
Nom. mēnsa,		a table, ²	a
Gen. mēnsae,		of a table,	ae
Dat. mēnsae,		to, for a table,	ae
Acc. mēnsam,		a table,	am
Voc. mēnsa,		O table,	a
Abl. mēnsā,		from, with, by a table,	ā
	PLURAL.		
Nom. mēnsae,		tables,	ae
Gen. mēnsarum,		of tables,	arum
Dat. mēnsis,		to, for tables,	is
Acc. mēnsās,		tables,	ās
Voc. mēnsae,		O tables,	ae
Abl. mēnsis,		from, with, by tables.	is

1. Stem. — In nouns of the first declension, the stem ends in-ā.

2. In the PARADIGM, observe that the stem is *mēnsa*, and that the several cases are distinguished from one another by their case-endings.

¹ That is, nouns of this declension in a and ē are feminine, and those in ās and ēs are masculine.

² *Mēnsa* may be translated a table, table, or the table.

gemma, gemmās. 3. Sapientia, amicitia, iustitia, glōria. 4. Sapientiam, amicitiam, iustitiam, glōriam. 5. Sapientiā, amicitia, iustitiā, glōriā. 6. Schōlārum, hōrārum. 7. Filia rēginae. 8. Sapientia rēginae, sapientiā rēginae. 9. Sapientia laudatur. 10. Amicitia laudatur. 11. Rēgina laudatur. 12. Filia rēginae laudatur. 13. Iustitia rēginae laudatur. 14. Iustitiam laudat. 15. Iustitiam rēginae laudat. 16. Rēginam laudat. 17. Rēginam laudant. 18. Filiam rēginae laudant. 19. Sapientiam rēginae laudant.

13. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of¹ friendship, of friendships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a crown,² of a gem. 11. The crown² of the queen, with the crown of the queen. 12. He praises the queen. 13. He praises justice. 14. They praise justice. 15. Justice is praised. 16. The school is praised. 17. He praises the school. 18. The queen is praised. 19. The wisdom of the queen is praised.

LESSON VIII.

SENTENCES.—VERBS.

14. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

346. A sentence is a combination of words expressing either a single thought or two or more thoughts.

corōnae may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

¹ The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of*, *to*, *by*, *with*, may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word.

² The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a*, *an*, and *the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all.

347. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses a single thought:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made (built) the world. Cic.

348. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses one leading thought with one or more dependent thoughts:

Dōnec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amicōs, so long as you shall be prosperous, you will number many friends. Ovid.

NOTE 1. — In this example two simple sentences — (1) '*you will be prosperous*,' and (2) '*you will number many friends*' — are so united that the first only specifies the time of the second: *You will number many friends (when?), so long as you shall be prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

NOTE 2. — The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself — *multōs numerābis amicōs* — is called the *Principal* or *Independent Clause*; and the part which is dependent upon it — *dōnec eris fēlix* — is called the *Subordinate* or *Dependent Clause*.

349. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sōl ruit et montēs umbrantur, the sun hastens to its setting and the mountains are shaded. Verg.

356. The SIMPLE SENTENCE in its MOST SIMPLE FORM consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied: —

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks;
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject:

*Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies.*¹ Liv.

NOTE. — In Latin, both subject and predicate may be contained or implied in a single word:²

Amās, s thou lovest. Amat, s he loves.

357. The SIMPLE SENTENCE in its MOST EXPANDED FORM consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers: —

¹ Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

² That word must, however, be a verb.

³ Here the ending *s* shows that the subject is of the *second person singular*, THOU — *lovest*, while *t* shows that the subject is of the *third person singular*, HE — *loves*.

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rēx, moritur, *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.*¹ Liv.

192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *legit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:—

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS admit a direct object of the action: *servum verberat*, he beats the slave.²

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.³

194. Verbs have *Voice, Mood, Tense, Number and Person.*

195. There are two voices:

I. The ACTIVE VOICE⁴ represents the subject as ACTING or EXISTING: *pater filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

II. The PASSIVE VOICE represents the subject as ACTED UPON by some other person or thing: *filius ā patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

196. There are three moods: ⁴—

I. The INDICATIVE MOOD either asserts something as a fact or inquires after the fact:

Legit, HE IS READING. *Legitne*, IS HE READING? *Servius rēgnāvit*, *Servius* REIGNED. *Quis ego sum*, *who* AM I?

¹ Here *Cluilius, Albānus rēx*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form: in *his castris moritur*, the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

² Here *servum*, 'the slave,' is the object of the action; *beats* (what?) *the slave*. The object thus completes the meaning of the verb. *He beats* is incomplete in sense, but *the boy runs* is complete, and accordingly does not admit an object.

³ *Voice* shows whether the subject acts (Active Voice), or is acted upon (Passive Voice). Thus, with the Active Voice, '*the father loves his son*,' the subject, *father*, is the one who performs the action, loves, while with the Passive Voice, '*the son is loved by the father*,' the subject, *son*, merely receives the action, is acted upon, is loved.

⁴ *Mood*, or *Mode*, means manner, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several moods.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*.

Amēnus patriam, LET US LOVE our country. *Sint beāti*, MAY THEY BE happy. *Quaerat quispiam*, some one MAY INQUIRE.

III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD expresses a *command* or an *entreaty* :

Jūstitiam cole, PRACTISE justice. *Tū nē cēde malis*, DO not YIELD to misfortunes.

197. There are six tenses :¹

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION : —

1. Present : *amō*, I love, I am loving.
2. Imperfect : *amābam*, I was loving, I loved.
3. Future : *amābō*, I shall love, I will love.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION :

1. Perfect : *amāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect : *amāveram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect : *amāverō*, I shall have loved.

198. Tenses are also distinguished as —

I. PRINCIPAL OR PRIMARY TENSES :

1. Present : *amō*, I love.
2. Present Perfect : *amāvī*, I have loved.
3. Future : *amābō*, I shall love.
4. Future Perfect : *amāverō*, I shall have loved.

II. HISTORICAL OR SECONDARY TENSES :

1. Imperfect : *amābam*, I was loving.
2. Historical Perfect : *amāvī*, I loved.
3. Pluperfect : *amāveram*, I had loved.

199. In *Verbs*, as in *Nouns* (44), there are two numbers, SINGULAR and PLURAL, and three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.

NOTE. — The various verbal forms which have voice, mood, tense number, and person, make up the *finite verb*.

¹ *Tense* means *time*. The tense of a verb shows the *time* of the action.

200. Among verbal forms are included the following verbal nouns and adjectives:

I. The **INFINITIVE** is a verbal noun. It is sometimes best translated by the English *Infinitive*, sometimes by the *verbal noun* in **ING**, and sometimes by the *Indicative*:

Exire ex urbe volō, I wish TO GO out of the city. Gestio scire omnia, I long TO KNOW all things. Haec scire juvat, TO KNOW these things affords pleasure.

II. The **GERUND** gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension,¹ used only in the *genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English verbal noun in **ING**:

Amandi, OF LOVING. Amandi causā, for the sake OF LOVING. Ars vivendi, the art OF LIVING. Ad discendum propensus, inclined TO LEARN, OR TO LEARNING.

III. The **SUPINE** gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension.² It has a form in **um** and a form in **ū**:

Amatum, TO LOVE, FOR LOVING. Amatū, TO BE LOVED, FOR LOVING, IN LOVING. Auxilium postulatum venit, he came TO ASK aid. Difficile dictū est, it is difficult TO TELL.

IV. The **PARTICIPLE** in Latin, as in English, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective. It is sometimes best translated by the English *Participle* or *Infinitive*, and sometimes by a *Clause*:

Amans, LOVING. Amatūrus, ABOUT TO LOVE. Amatus, LOVED. Amandus, DESERVING TO BE LOVED. Platō scribens mortuus est, Plato died WHILE WRITING, OR WHILE HE WAS WRITING.

NOTE. — A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the *Active*, the *Present* and the *Future*, *amans, amatūrus*; and two in the *Passive*, the *Perfect* and the *Gerundive*, *amatus, amandus*.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations.

¹ See 35, 51.

² See 92, 116.

LESSON IX.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

15. In Verbs of the FIRST CONJUGATION, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative mood* has the following—

ENDINGS.		
PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Singular, at,</i>	<i>ābat,</i>	<i>ābit.</i>
<i>Plural, ant,</i>	<i>ābant,</i>	<i>ābunt.¹</i>

PARADIGM.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres. amat, he loves ;²</i>	<i>amant, they love.</i>
<i>Imp. amābat, he was loving ;</i>	<i>amābant, they were loving.</i>
<i>Fut. amābit, he will love ;</i>	<i>amābunt, they will love.</i>

16. In English, the *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons* of verbs are indicated by certain *words* or *signs* ; as,

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>He loves,</i>	<i>he was loving,</i>	<i>he will love.</i>
<i>They love,</i>	<i>they were loving,</i>	<i>they will love.</i>

In Latin, however, no such *signs* are used ; but their place is supplied by the *endings* of the verb. Hence, in translating English into Latin, omit these signs, and express the *tense*, *number*, and *person* of the verb by the *proper endings* :

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
Eng.	<i>He loves,</i>	<i>he was loving,</i>	<i>he will love.</i>
Lat.	<i>Amat,</i>	<i>amābat,</i>	<i>amābit.</i>

¹ These ENDINGS, like CASE-ENDINGS, contain two elements — (1) the stem-characteristic *a*, a part of the stem, and (2) the suffix proper, *t*, *nt*, etc.:

<i>a-t</i>	<i>ā-bat</i>	<i>ā-bit</i>
<i>a-nt</i>	<i>ā-bant</i>	<i>ā-bunt</i>

² The subject of each of these verbs may be, in English, either *he*, *she*, or *it*. Thus *amat* may be rendered *he loves*, *she loves*, or *it loves*. The suffix, *t*, shows the number and person of the subject, but not its gender. We can usually determine from the connection which subject to use.

17. *Vocabulary.*

Accūsāt,	<i>he accuses.</i>
Amāt,	<i>he loves.</i>
Nūntiat,	<i>he announces.</i>
Pūgnāt,	<i>he fights.</i>
Putāt,	<i>he thinks.</i>

18. *Translate into English. Give also the TENSE, NUMBER, and PERSON of each verb.*

1. Laudat,¹ laudant. 2. Laudābit, laudābunt. 3. Laudābat, laudābant. 4. Nūntiant, putant, pūgnant. 5. Pūgnat, pūgnābat, pūgnābit. 6. Nūntiat, nūntiābat, nūntiābunt. 7. Amat, amābunt, amābant. 8. Accūsant, accūsābit.

19. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He² thinks, he was thinking, he will think. 2. They³ will think, they were thinking. 3. He was praising, they were accusing. 4. He praises, they accuse. 5. He will accuse, they will praise. 6. He will praise, they will accuse. 7. They were announcing, he will announce, they announce.

LESSON X.

VERBS. — SUBJECT. — RULES III. AND XXXVI.

20. *Examine carefully the following examples.*

1. Laudat.	<i>He, she, or it praises.³</i>
2. Rēgina laudat.	<i>The queen praises.</i>
3. Laudant.	<i>They praise.</i>
4. Puellae laudant.	<i>The girls praise.</i>

¹ Remember that in the singular, the subject in English may be *he, she, or it*. In these exercises the pupil may use *he* as the subject.

² Observe that the English pronouns *he* and *they* are not to be rendered by separate Latin words, as the Latin verb contains a pronominal subject in itself. Hence 'he thinks,' *putat*; 'they think,' *putant*.

³ Observe (1) that *laudant*, 'they praise,' differs from *laudat*, 'he, she, or it praises,' only in having *nt*, meaning *they*, as its ending, while *laudat*

NOTE 1. — Observe that in these examples the subjects, *rēgina* and *puellae*, are both in the Nominative. This is in accordance with general Latin usage,¹ expressed in the following

RULE III. — Subject Nominative.

368. The subject of a finite verb² is put in the Nominative:³

Servius rēgnāvit, *SERVIVS* reigned. *Liv. Patent portae*, *THE GATES* are open. *Cic. Rēx vicit*, *THE KING* conquered. *Liv. Vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis*, *YOU* introduce tyrants. *Cic.*

NOTE 2. — Observe that in the examples at the head of this lesson the verb is in the singular if the subject is singular, and in the plural if the subject is plural. Thus in the second example, the singular verb, *laudat*, is used, because the subject, *rēgina*, is singular, while in the fourth example the plural verb, *laudant*, is used, because the subject, *puellae*, is plural. This is in accordance with general Latin usage, expressed in the following

RULE XXXVI. — Agreement of Verb with Subject.

460. A finite verb agrees with its subject in NUMBER and PERSON.⁴

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God* made (built) *the world*. *Cic. Ego rēgēs ejēci*, *vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis*, *I* have banished kings, *you* introduce tyrants. *Cic.*

has simply *t*, meaning *he, she, it*; and (2) that though the forms of the verb thus contain a pronoun, yet a substantive may at any time be introduced as subject, and that then the pronoun is not translated. Thus *laudat*, 'he, she, it, praises,' but *puer laudat*, 'the boy praises' (not the boy he praises); *puella laudat*, 'the girl praises'; *laudant*, 'they praise,' but *pueri laudant*, 'the boys praise'; *puellae laudant*, 'the girls praise.'

¹ English usage is the same.

² The finite verb embraces the three moods. See Lesson XXXVIII.

³ Thus the subjects *Servius*, *portae*, *rēx*, and *vōs* are all in the Nominative case. Observe that these words are printed in *italics*, and the corresponding English in SMALL CAPITALS.

⁴ Thus *aedificāvit* is in the third person singular to agree with *deus*, *ejēci* in the first person singular to agree with *ego*, and *intrōdūcītis* in the second person plural to agree with *vōs*.

21. *Directions for Parsing.*

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun —

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline it.¹
3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, etc.
4. Give its Syntax,² and the Rule for it.

22. *Model.*

Rēgina laudat. The queen praises.

Rēgina is a noun (6, 39)³ of the First Declension (10, 48), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (10, 47); STEM, *rēginā* (10, 48, 1). Singular: *rēgina, rēginae, rēginæ, rēginam, rēgina, rēginā*; Plural: *rēginae, rēginārum, rēginis, rēginās, rēginae, rēginis*. It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 6, 42. It is in the Nominative Singular, and is the subject of *laudat*, according to Rule III.: "The subject of a finite verb is put in the Nominative."

23. *Directions for Parsing Verbs.*

In parsing a verb —

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (14, 193), and name the Conjugation to which it belongs.
2. Give the mood, tense, number, and person.
3. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

24. *Models.*

1. *Rēgina laudābat. The queen was praising.*

Laudābat is a transitive verb of the First Conjugation, in the Indicative mood, Imperfect tense, Third person, Singular number, and agrees with its subject *rēgina*, according to Rule XXXVI.: "A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person."

¹ Adjectives should also be compared (86, 162).

² By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the Grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the *Syntax* of *rēgina* under the Model, by stating that it is the subject of *laudat*.

³ In these references the heavy figures (as 6) refer to general articles in this work; the other figures (as 39) to articles therein quoted from the Grammar.

2. Laudant. *They praise.*

Laudant is a transitive verb of the *First* Conjugation, in the *Indicative* mood, *Present* tense, *Third* person, and *Plural* number. The subject is a pronoun of the *Third* person *Plural*, implied in the ending of the verb.¹

LESSON XI.

VERBS. — SUBJECT. — DIRECT OBJECT. — RULE V.

25. *Examine carefully the following examples.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Rēgina laudat. | <i>The queen praises.</i> |
| 2. Rēgina puellās laudat. | <i>The queen praises THE GIRLS.</i> |
| 3. Puellae laudant. | <i>The girls praise.</i> |
| 4. Puellae rēginam laudant. | <i>The girls praise THE QUEEN.</i> |

NOTE 1. — Observe that in the first example above, *rēgina laudat*, “the queen praises,” the thought is not entirely complete, as we are not told *whom* or *what* the queen praises, but that in the second example, *rēgina puellās laudat*, “the queen praises (what?) the girls,” the sense is complete. The noun which thus completes the meaning of a verb is called the *Direct Object*.

NOTE 2. — Observe that *puellās*, the Direct Object in the second example, and *rēginam*, the Direct Object in the fourth example, are both in the *Accusative*. This is in accordance with general Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE V. — Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the *Accusative*.²

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made* (built) **THE WORLD**.³ *Cic. Liberā rem publicam*, *free THE REPUBLIC*. *Cic. Populi Rōmāni salūtem dēfendite*, *defend THE SAFETY of the Roman people*. *Cic.*

¹ See 20, 1, foot-note.

² The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing on which the action is *directly* exerted; as *salūtem*, ‘safety,’ in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i. e. the object produced by it; as, *mundaum*, ‘world,’ in the first example, — *made the world*.

³ In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made*; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus

26. *Model.*

Rēgina puellās laudat. *The queen praises the girls.*

Puellās is a noun (6, 39) of the First Declension (10, 48), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (10, 47); stem, *puellā* (10, 48, 1). Singular: *puella, puellae, puellae, puellam, puella, puellā*. Plural: *puellae, puellārum, puellis, puellās, puellae, puellis*. It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 6, 42. It is in the Accusative Plural, and is the object of *laudat*, according to Rule V.: "The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative."

27. *Vocabulary.*

Artemisia, ae, f.	Artemisia, wife of Mausōlus, King of Caria in Asia Minor.
Dēlectat,	he delights. ¹
Epistula, ae, f.	letter, epistle.
Exspēctat,	he expects, awaits. ¹
Fābula, ae, f.	story, fable.
Poēta, ae, m.	poet.
Puella, ae, f.	girl.
Rēgnat,	he reigns, rules. ¹
Tullia, ae, f.	Tullia, a Roman name.

28. *Translate into English, and parse SUBJECTS and OBJECTS.*

1. Rēgina filiam² amat. 2. Filiās amat.³ 3. Filiās amant.
4. Artemisia rēgnābat. 5. Rēgnābit. 6. Rēgnābunt. 7.

mundum precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *salūtem* precedes *dēfendite*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem publicam* follows *liberā*.

¹ Or 'she or it delights,' etc. Remember that, in rendering the third person singular of a Latin verb into English, when no subject is expressed, we may use *he, she, or it*. For the rendering of a verb which has a substantive as its subject, see 20, 1, foot-note.

² Render *her daughter*. In Latin the possessive pronouns, meaning *his, her, their*, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed if they can be supplied from the context.

³ Render *she loves*, thus making the pronoun refer to *rēgina*. Observe that while here *amat* is rendered *she loves*, it is rendered in the preceding sentence simply *loves*, as it has a subject, *rēgina*, expressed. See 20, 1, foot-note.

Fābula rēginam dēlectat. 8. Fābulae rēginam dēlectant. 9. Fābulae Tulliam dēlectābunt. 10. Fābula Tulliam dēlectābat. 11. Tullia epistulam expēctabat. 12. Puella epistulam expēctat. 13. Puellae epistulās expēctābant. 14. Epistulās expēctābunt. 15. Rēgina glōriam amat. 16. Rēgina corōnam laudat.

29. *Translate into Latin, and parse the LATIN VERBS.*

1. The¹ queen expects a¹ letter.² 2. She³ expects letters. 3. They⁴ expect letters. 4. Tullia was expecting letters. 5. She was expecting a letter. 6. The poet praises the queen. 7. He was praising the queen. 8. Poets praise wisdom. 9. They were praising wisdom. 10. The letter will delight the queen. 11. It³ will delight the queen. 12. The queen loves justice. 13. She praises justice.

LESSON XII.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.— RULES II. AND XVI.

30. In verbs of the SECOND CONJUGATION, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* mood has the following

	ENDINGS.		
	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Singular,</i>	et,	ēbat,	ēbit.
<i>Plural,</i>	ent,	ēbant,	ēbunt. ⁴

¹ Remember that the article *a, an, the* has no equivalent in Latin; see 13, foot-note 3.

² In what case should the Latin word be put? See 25, Rule V.

³ Remember that the pronominal subjects *she, it, they* may be indicated in Latin by the endings of the verb; see 16.

⁴ Observe (1) that these endings all begin with the stem-characteristic *e*, while the corresponding endings in the *First Conjugation* all begin with

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Pres monet, *he advises* ;¹

monent, *they advise.*

Imp. monēbat, *he was advising* ;

monēbant, *they were advising.*

Fut. monēbit, *he will advise* ;

monēbunt, *they will advise.*

31. *Examine the following examples.*

1. *Artemisia régina.*

Artemisia THE QUEEN.

2. *Artemisiae réginae.*

For Artemisia THE QUEEN.

3. *Corōna réginae.*

The crown OF THE QUEEN.

NOTE 1. — A noun or pronoun used to qualify or identify another noun or pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, as *régina* in the first example and *réginae* in the second, is called an appositive. *Régina*, "the queen," is an appositive, showing the rank or office of *Artemisia*, — *Artemisia* THE QUEEN.

NOTE 2. — Observe that in the first example, where *Artemisia* is in the Nominative, the appositive *régina* is also in the Nominative, while in the second example, where *Artemisiae* is in the Dative, the appositive is also in the Dative. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE II. — Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees in CASE with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies :²

Cluilius rēx moritur, Cluilius THE KING *dies.* Liv. *Urbēs Karthāgō atque Numantia, the cities* CARTHAGE and NUMANTIA. Cic. *Saguntum, foederatam civitatem, expugnāvit, he took Saguntum, an allied* TOWN. Liv.³

NOTE 3. — Observe that in the third of the above examples, the genitive *réginae* limits or qualifies *corōna* by showing whose crown is meant, *the crown* OF THE QUEEN. This usage is expressed in the following

the stem-characteristic *a*, and (2) that the suffixes proper are the same in both conjugations, viz.: —

t,
nt,

bat,
bant,

bit,
bunt

¹ Or, *she advises, it advises* ; see 15, foot-note 2.

² For Models for Parsing Nouns, see 22. Different rules are, of course, assigned for different cases and constructions.

³ In these examples observe that the *appositives* are in *italics*, and the corresponding English in SMALL CAPITALS.

RULE XVI. — Genitive with Nouns.

395. Any noun, not an appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

Catōnis oratīōnēs, CATO'S orations. Cic. *Castra hostium*, the camp OF THE ENEMY. Liv. *Mors Hamilcaris*, the death OF HAMILCAR. Liv. *Deūm metus*, the fear of the gods. Liv. *Vir cōsiliī magnī*, a man of great prudence. Caes. *Pars populi*, a part of the people. Cic.

397. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE designates the whole of which a part is taken. It is used —

1. With *pars*, *nēmō*, *nihil*, *talentum*, and with any nouns used partitively:

Equōrum pars, a part OF THE HORSES. Liv. *Nihil novī*, nothing NEW (OF NEW). Cic. *Pecūniae talentum*, a talent of money. Nep.

2. With Numerals used substantively:

Quōrum quattuor, four of whom. Liv. *Ūnus pontium*, one of the bridges. Caes.

3. With Pronouns and Adjectives used substantively, especially with comparatives, superlatives, and neuters:

Quis vestrū, which of you? Cic. *Num quidnam novī*, is there anything new (OF NEW)? Cic. *Gallōrum fortissimī*, the bravest of the Gauls. Caes. *Id temporis*, that (of) time. Cic.

LESSON XIII.**CERTAIN FORMS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.****32. Vocabulary.**

<i>Dēlet</i> ,	<i>he¹ destroys.</i>
<i>Docet</i> ,	<i>he teaches.</i>
<i>Habet</i> ,	<i>he has.</i>
<i>Monet</i> ,	<i>he advises.</i>
<i>Tacet</i> ,	<i>he is silent.</i>
<i>Timet</i> ,	<i>he fears.</i>
<i>Videt</i> ,	<i>he sees.</i>

¹ Remember that the subject in English may be *he*, *she*, or *it*. If, however, a Latin substantive is used with the verb as subject the pronoun is not expressed in English. Thus used *dēlet* means 'destroys'; *docet*, 'teaches,' etc. See 20, 1, foot-note.

33. Translate into English, and parse APPOSITIVES and GENITIVES.

1. Accūsāt, monet. 2. Accūsant, monent. 3. Accūsābunt, monēbunt. 4. Accūsābant, monēbant. 5. Accūsābat, monēbat. 6. Accūsābit, monēbit. 7. Timēbant, timet, timēbunt. 8. Timent, timēbit, timēbat. 9. Habet, docēbat, dēlēbunt. 10. Dēlēbit, habēbant, docent.

11. Poēta filiam¹ docēbat. 12. Filiās docēbit. 13. Poētae filiās docent. 14. Filiās docēbant. 15. Poēta sapientiam habēbat. 16. Sapientiam habēbunt. 17. Artemisia rēgīna² tacēbat. 18. Filia rēgīnae³ tacēbit. 19. Tullia, filia rēgīnae, tacet. 20. Poēta Artemisiām rēgīnam laudābat. 21. Tulliam, filiam rēgīnae, laudant.

34. Translate into Latin, and give the TENSE, NUMBER, and PERSON of the Latin Verbs.

1. He teaches, he advises, he thinks. 2. They were thinking, they were advising, they were teaching. 3. He will teach, he will advise, he will think. 4. They will think, he was thinking, they advise. 5. He is silent, they were silent, he will be silent. 6. They fear Artemisia. 7. They will fear the queen. 8. They fear Artemisia, the queen.⁴ 9. The poet was seeing Artemisia, the queen. 10. The poet sees the crown. 11. He will see the queen. 12. They will see the crown of the queen.⁵ 13. The poet was seeing the crown of Artemisia, the queen.

LESSON XIV.

35. Lesson from the Grammar.

NOUNS. — SECOND DECLENSION.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

er, ir, us, and os —masculine ; um, and on—neuter.

¹ See 28, 1, foot-note.

² See 31, Rule II.

³ See 31, Rule XVI.

⁴ In what case should the Latin word be put? See 31, Rule II., and 25, Rule V.

⁵ See 31, Rule XVI.

Nouns in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *um* are declined as follows:

Servus, slave. *Puer*, boy. *Ager*, field. *Templum*, temple.

SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i> <i>servus</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>templum</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>servi</i>	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>templi</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>servo</i>	<i>puero</i>	<i>agro</i>	<i>templō</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>servum</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>templum</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>serve</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>templum</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>servo</i>	<i>puero</i>	<i>agro</i>	<i>templō</i>

PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> <i>servi</i>	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>templa</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>servorum</i>	<i>puerorum</i>	<i>agrorum</i>	<i>templorum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>servis</i>	<i>pueris</i>	<i>agris</i>	<i>templis</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>servos</i>	<i>pueros</i>	<i>agros</i>	<i>templa</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>servi</i>	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>templa</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>servis</i>	<i>pueris</i>	<i>agris</i>	<i>templis</i>

1. STEM. — In nouns of the second declension, the stem ends in *o*.

2. In the PARADIGMS, observe —

1) That the stems are *servo*, *puero*, *agro*, and *templo*.

2) That the characteristic *o* becomes *u* in the endings *us* and *um*, and *e* in *serve*; that it disappears by contraction in the endings *a*, *i*, and *is* (for *o-a*, *o-i*, and *o-is*), and is dropped in the forms *puer* and *ager*.

3) That the case-endings, including the characteristic *o*,¹ are as follows:—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
MASC.	NEUT.	MASC.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>us</i> ²	<i>um</i>	<i>Nom.</i> <i>i</i>	<i>a</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>i</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>Gen.</i> <i>orum</i>	<i>orum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>Dat.</i> <i>is</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>um</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>Acc.</i> <i>os</i>	<i>a</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>e</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>Voc.</i> <i>i</i>	<i>a</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>Abl.</i> <i>is</i>	<i>is</i>

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. — Like *SERVUS*: *dominus*, master. Like *PUER*: *gener*, son-in-law. Like *AGER*: *magister*, master. Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war.

¹ For the characteristic and for the distinction between *case-endings* and *case-suffixes*, see 10, 47, with notes 2 and 3.

² The endings of the Nominative and Vocative Singular are wanting in nouns in *er*. Thus *puer* is for *puerus*.

5. Nouns in *ius* generally contract *ii* in the Genitive Singular and *ie* in the Vocative Singular into *i* without change of accent: *Claudī* for *Claudīi*, of Claudius, *filī* for *filīi*, of a son; *Mercūri* for *Mercūrii*, Mercury, *filie* for *filie*, son.

8. LOCATIVE. — Names of towns, and a few other words, have a Locative Singular in *i*, denoting the *place in which* (8, 45, 2). *Corinthī*, at Corinth; *humī*, on the ground.

36. Vocabulary.

Ager, agri, m.	field.
Arat,	he ploughs.
Dōnum, i, n.	gift.
Gener, generi, m.	son-in-law.
Liber, libri, m.	book.
Oculus, i, m.	eye.
Puer, pueri, m.	boy.
Servus, i, m.	slave.
Socer, soceri, m.	father-in-law.
Templum, i, n.	temple.
Tyrannus, i, m.	tyrant.

37. Translate into English,¹ and give the GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE of each Noun, and the TENSE, NUMBER, and PERSON of each Verb.

1. Oculus, oculi, oculō, oculum, ocule, oculōrum, oculis, oculōs. 2. Socer, soceri, socerō, socerum, socerōrum, soceris, socerōs. 3. Servi, tyranni. 4. Pueri, generi. 5. Agri, libri. 6. Templi, dōni. 7. Servō, tyrannō. 8. Puerum, generum. 9. Agrōrum, librōrum. 10. Tempia, dōna. 11. Servum, servōs. 12. Dōnō, dōnis.

13. Filia tyranni tacēbat. 14. Filiae tyranni tacent. 15. Servus agrum arat. 16. Servi agrum arābunt. 17. Servi rēginae agrōs arābant. 18. Rēgina servōs laudābit.

¹ It is important that the pupil should early learn to recognize Latin words by their *sounds* as well as by their *forms*. Many teachers, therefore, frequently read the Latin to their classes, and require them to translate with closed books.

38. *Translate into Latin, and give the GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE of each Latin Noun.*

1. The slave, the slaves. 2. For the slave, for the slaves.
3. Of the slave, of the slaves. 4. Of the father-in-law, of the son-in-law. 5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-law. 6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law. 7. The gift, the gifts. 8. With the gift, with the gifts.

9. The story delights the boy. 10. Stories delight boys.
11. The stories will delight the boys. 12. The boy was expecting a letter. 13. The boys were expecting letters. 14. The queen praises her daughter. 15. The queen will praise the daughter of the tyrant.

LESSON XV.

SECOND DECLENSION.

39. Vocabulary.

Agricola, ae, m.	husbandman, farmer.
Fortūna, ae, f.	fortune.
Pisistratus, i, m.	Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.
Terret,	he terrifies, frightens.
Verbum, i, n.	word.

40. *Translate into English, and parse SUBJECTS and OBJECTS.*

1. Dōnō, epistulā. 2. Dōnī, epistulae. 3. Dōnīs, epistulis. 4. Dōna fortūnae. 5. Dōnīs fortūnae. 6. Epistulā tyrannī. 7. Epistulis tyrannī. 8. Verba Pisistratī tyrannī.

9. Verba tyrannī rēginam terrēbant. 10. Servus puerum terret. 11. Servi puerōs terrēbunt. 12. Verba servī puerum terrent. 13. Socer tyrannī tacēbat. }

14. Puerī servōs rēgināe timent. 15. Puer librum habet. 16. Puer librōs habēbit. 17. Puerī librōs habēbunt. 18. Rēgina tyrannum timēbat. 19. Tyrannum timēbit. 20. Pisistratum timēbant. 21. Pisistratum tyrannum timēbant.

22. *Servus rēginae tacēbat.* 23. *Servi rēginae tacēbunt.*
 24. *Agricola agrum arat.* 25. *Agricola agrōs arābit.* 26.
Agricolae agrōs arābant.

41. *Translate into Latin, and parse the LATIN VERBS.*

1. The tyrant, the crown. 2. The tyrants, the crowns.
 3. Of the tyrant, of the crown. 4. Of the tyrants, of the
 crowns. 5. To the tyrant, to the crown. 6. To the crown
 of the tyrant. 7. For Pisistratus the tyrant.¹ 8. With the
 crown of Pisistratus the tyrant.¹ 9. With the words of the
 queen. 10. For the daughter of the queen. 11. The slave was
 ploughing the field. 12. The slaves are ploughing the field.

13. The slaves will plough the fields. 14. The son-in-law
 has the letter. 15. He will have the letters. 16. The
 tyrant will see the letter. } 17. He will see the letter of the
 queen. 18. The tyrant will see the letters of the queen.
 19. The queen praises the boy. 20. She will praise the boys.
 21. The boy fears the slave. 22. The boy will fear the
 slaves.

LESSON XVI.

ADJECTIVES.—FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

42. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

146. The Adjective is the part of speech which is used to
 qualify nouns : *bonus*, good ; *māgnus*, great.

NOTE.—The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the
 gender of the noun which it qualifies : *bonus puer*, a good boy ; *bona puella*,
 a good girl ; *bonum templum*, a good temple. Thus in the Nominative
 Singular, *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine
 nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and
 partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the
 third declension.

¹ In what case should the Latin word for *tyrant* be put? See 13,
 Rule II.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS : A AND O STEMS.

148. *Bonus, good.*¹

SINGULAR.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i> boni	bonae	boni
<i>Dat.</i> bono	bonae	bono
<i>Acc.</i> bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Voc.</i> bone	bona	bonum
<i>Abl.</i> bono	bona	bono
FLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> boni	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i> bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
<i>Dat.</i> bonis	bonis	bonis
<i>Acc.</i> bonos	bonas	bona
<i>Voc.</i> boni	bonae	bona
<i>Abl.</i> bonis	bonis	bonis

*Servus Bonus, a good slave.*²

SINGULAR.	
<i>Nom.</i> servus bonus,	<i>a good slave.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> servi boni,	<i>of a good slave.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> servo bono,	<i>for a good slave.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> servum bonum,	<i>a good slave.</i>
<i>Voc.</i> serve bone,	<i>O good slave.</i>
<i>Abl.</i> servo bono,	<i>from a good slave.</i>
FLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i> servi boni,	<i>good slaves.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> servorum bonorum,	<i>of good slaves.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> servis bonis,	<i>for good slaves.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> servos bonos,	<i>good slaves.</i>
<i>Voc.</i> servi boni,	<i>O good slaves.</i>
<i>Abl.</i> servis bonis,	<i>from good slaves.</i>

¹ *Bonus* is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II., (35, 51,) in the Fem. like *mensa* of Decl. I., (10, 48), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II., (35, 51). The stems are *bono* in the Masc. and Neut., and *boni* in the Fem.

² In English the adjective usually precedes its noun, but in Latin it sometimes precedes and sometimes follows, though when not *emphatic* it more frequently follows.

149. *Liber, free.*¹

MASC.	SINGULAR.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> liber	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i> liberī	liberac	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i> liberō	liberae	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i> liberum	libera	libera	liberum
<i>Voc.</i> liber	libera	libera	liberum
<i>Abl.</i> liberō	liberā	liberā	liberō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> liberī	liberac	libera	libera
<i>Gen.</i> liberōrum	liberārum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i> liberīs	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i> liberōs	liberīs	liberīs	libera
<i>Voc.</i> liberī	liberac	libera	libera
<i>Abl.</i> liberīs	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

150. *Aeger, sick.*²

MASC.	SINGULAR.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> aeger	aeger	aegra	aegrum
<i>Gen.</i> aegrī	aegrac	aegrae	aegrī
<i>Dat.</i> aegrō	aegrae	aegrae	aegrō
<i>Acc.</i> aegrum	aegra	aegra	aegrum
<i>Voc.</i> aeger	aegra	aegra	aegrum
<i>Abl.</i> aegrō	aegrā	aegrā	aegrō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> aegrī	aegrac	aegra	aegra
<i>Gen.</i> aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
<i>Dat.</i> aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
<i>Acc.</i> aegrōs	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegra
<i>Voc.</i> aegrī	aegrac	aegra	aegra
<i>Abl.</i> aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

151. IRREGULARITIES. — Nine adjectives have in the singular *ius* in the Genitive and *ī* in the Dative, and are declined as follows:

¹ LIBER is declined in the Masculine like *puer* (35, 51), and in the Feminine and Neuter like *bonus*.

² AEGER is declined in the Masculine like *ager* (35, 51), and in the Feminine and Neuter like *bonus*.

Solut, alone.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
sōlus	sōla	sōlum	sōli	sōlae	sōla
sōlius	sōlius	sōlius	sōlōrum	sōlārum	sōlōrum
sōli	sōli	sōli	sōlis	sōlis	sōlis
sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	sōlōs	sōlās	sōla
sōle	sōla	sōlum	sōli	sōlae	sōla
sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	sōlis	sōlis	sōlis

1. These nine adjectives are: *altus*, *a*, *ud*, another; *nūllus*, *a*, *um*, no one; *sōlus*, alone; *tōtus*, whole; *ūllus*, any; *ūnus*,¹ one; *alter*, *-tera*, *-terum*, the other; *uter*, *-tra*, *-trum*, which (of two); *neuter*, *-tra*, *trum*, neither.

LESSON XVII.

ADJECTIVES.—FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

RULE XXXIV.

43. Examine the following examples.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Servus bonus. | <i>A good slave.</i> |
| 2. Servi boni. | <i>Of a good slave.</i> |
| 3. Servi boni. | <i>For good slaves.</i> |
| 4. Vērae amicitiae. ² | <i>True friendships.</i> |
| 5. Templum pulchrum. | <i>A beautiful temple.</i> |

NOTE.—In these examples, observe that the adjectives are all in the same *Gender*, *Number*, and *Case* as their nouns. Thus *bonus* is in the Masculine Singular Nominative; *vērae* in the Feminine Plural Nominative; *pulchrum* in the Neuter Singular Nominative. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An adjective agrees with its noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortūna caeca est, *fortune is blind*.³ Cic. Vērae amicitiae, *true friendships*. Cic. Magister optimus, *the best teacher*. Cic.

¹ See declension, §7, 175.

² See page 36, foot-note 2.

³ Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna*. It is declined like *BONUS*: *caecus*, *caeca*, *caecum*.

44. *Model for parsing ADJECTIVES.*Vērae amicitiae. *True friendships.*

Vērae is an adjective (42, 146) of the First and Second Declensions (42, 147): STEM, vērā (42, 148, foot-note). Singular: N. vērus, vēra, vērum; G. vēri, vērae, vēri; D. vērō, vērae, vērō; A. vērum, vēram, vērum; V. vēre, vēra, vērum; A. vērō, vērā, vērō. Plural: N. vēri, vērae, vēra; G. vērōrum, vērārum, vērōrum; D. vēris, vēris, vēris; A. vērōs, vērās, vēra; V. vēri, vērae, vēra; A. vēris, vēris, vēris. It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiae*, according to Rule XXXIV.: "An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE."

45. *Certain Forms of the Verb Sum, I am.*

SINGULAR.

Pres. est, he, she, or it is;

Imp. erat, he, she, or it was;

Fut. erit, he, she, or it will be;

PLURAL.

sumt, they are.

erant, they were.

erunt, they will be.

46. *Vocabulary.*

Amicus, i, m.	friend.
Anulus, i, m.	ring.
Aureus, a, um, ¹	golden, gold.
Beātus, a, um,	happy, blessed.
Bonus, a, um,	good.
Ēgregius, a, um,	distinguished.
Est,	he is.
Exemplum, i, n.	example.
Fidus, a, um,	faithful.
Grātus, a, um,	acceptable, pleasing.
Māgnus, a, um,	great, large.
Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,	beautiful.
Sunt,	they are.
Vērus, a, um,	true.
Victōria, ae, f.	victory.
Vita, ae, f.	life.

¹ The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus*, 42, 148.

47. *Translate into English.*

1. Servus bonus.¹ 2. Servi boni. 3. Servo bono. 4. Servorum bonorum. 5. Servis bonis. 6. Rēgina bona. 7. Rēginae bonae. 8. Rēginā bonā. 9. Rēginārum bonarum. 10. Rēginis bonis. 11. Exempli boni. 12. Exempla bona. 13. Ager pulcher; puella pulchra; dōnum pulchrum.

14. Agri pulchri; puellae pulchrae; dōna pulchra. 15. Aureus ānulus; aurei ānuli. 16. Māgna glōria; beāta vita; ēgregia victōria. 17. Corōna aurea. 18. Corōna aurea est. 19. Corōnae sunt aureae.² 20. Rēgina corōnam laudat. 21. Rēgina bona corōnam auream laudat. 22. Puella pulchra rēginam bonam amat. 23. Puellae bonae rēginam pulchram amant. 24. Servus fidus est. 25. Servi sunt fidi.

48. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A true³ friend. 2. The true³ friends. 3. For a true friend. 4. For true friends. 5. Of the true friend. 6. Of true friends. 7. True glory. 8. With true glory. 9. Of true glory. 10. An acceptable word. 11. Acceptable words. 12. With acceptable words. 13. Of acceptable words. 14. A beautiful book. 15. The beautiful books. 16. With a beautiful book. 17. Of beautiful books.

18. The beautiful queen.⁴ 19. The queen is beautiful. 20. They praise the good queen. 21. The girls are good. 22. The good girls love the beautiful queen. 23. The beautiful queen loves the good girls. 24. The book is beautiful.

¹ On the position of the adjective in Latin, see page 38, foot-note 2. *Bonus* agrees with *servus*, according to Rule XXXIV.

² While in general the verb in Latin occupies the last place in the sentence, *est* and *sunt* often stand between the subject and the predicate adjective, as in this sentence. Some freedom of arrangement is, however, allowed. Thus *Corōnae sunt aureae* might be *corōnae aureae sunt*, and *corōna aurea est*, above, might be *corōna est aurea*.

³ Put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIV.

⁴ In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises.

25. The books are beautiful. 26. Friends are faithful. 27. The queen loves faithful friends.

LESSON XVIII.

THIRD DECLENSION — CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

49. Lesson from the Grammar.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, ō, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, and x.

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I**.

CLASS I. — CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL: B OR P.

Princeps, m.,¹ a leader, chief.

		SINGULAR.	CASE-SUFFIXES.
Nom.	princeps,	a leader,	s
Gen.	principis,	of a leader,	is
Dat.	principi,	to, for a leader,	i
Acc.	principem,	a leader,	em
Voc.	princeps,	O leader,	s
Abl.	principe,	from, with, by a leader,	e
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	principes,	leaders,	ēs
Gen.	principum,	of leaders,	um
Dat.	principibus,	to, for leaders,	ibus
Acc.	principes,	leaders,	ēs
Voc.	principes,	O leaders,	ēs
Abl.	principibus,	from, with, by leaders.	ibus

1. STEM AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In this Paradigm observe —

1) That the stem is *princep*, modified before an additional syllable to *princip*; see 1, 22, and 49, 57, 2.

¹ See 11, foot-note 3.

- 2) That the case-suffixes appear distinct and separate from the stem¹; see 10, 46, 1, and 10, 47, note 2.

2. VARIABLE VOWEL. — In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short *e* or *i* generally takes the form of *e* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular, and that of *i* in all the other cases. Thus *princeps*, *principis*, and *jūdex*, *jūdicis* (53, 59), alike have *e* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular and *i* in all the other cases, though in *princeps* the original form of the radical vowel is *e*, and in *jūdex*, *i*. For a similar change in the vowel of the stem, see *miles*, *militis* (49, 58), and *carmen*, *carminis* (58, 60). See also *opus*, *operis* (58, 61).

58. STEMS ENDING IN A DENTAL: D OR T.

Lapis, *m.*, *stone*.

Aetās, *f.*, *age*.

Miles, *m.*, *soldier*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i> lapis	aetās	miles
<i>Gen.</i> lapidis	aetātis	militis
<i>Dat.</i> lapidi	aetātī	militī
<i>Acc.</i> lapidem	aetātem	militem
<i>Voc.</i> lapis	aetās	miles
<i>Abl.</i> lapide	aetāte	milite

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> lapides	aetātēs	militēs
<i>Gen.</i> lapidum	aetātum	militem
<i>Dat.</i> lapidibus	aetātibus	militibus
<i>Acc.</i> lapides	aetātēs	militēs
<i>Voc.</i> lapides	aetātēs	militēs
<i>Abl.</i> lapidibus	aetātibus	militibus

Nepōs, *m.*, *grandson*. Virtūs, *f.*, *virtue*. Caput, *n.*, *head*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i> nepōs	virtūs	caput
<i>Gen.</i> nepōtis	virtūtis	capitis
<i>Dat.</i> nepōtī	virtūtī	capitī
<i>Acc.</i> nepōtem	virtūtem	caput
<i>Voc.</i> nepōs	virtūs	caput
<i>Abl.</i> nepōte	virtūte	capite

¹ Thus, *princeps*, *principis*, etc. In the first and second declensions, on the contrary, the suffix can not be separated from the final vowel of the stem in such forms as *mēnsis*, *pueri*, *agris*, etc.

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capita</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>nepōtūm</i>	<i>virtūtūm</i>	<i>capitūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>nepōtibus</i>	<i>virtūtibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capita</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capita</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>nepōtibus</i>	<i>virtūtibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In these Paradigms observe —

1) That the stems are *lapid*, *aetāt*, *milit*, *nepōt*, *virtūt*, and *caput*.

2) That *miles* has the variable vowel, *e*, *i*, and *caput*, *u*, *i*.

3) That the dental *d* or *t* is dropped before *s*: *lapis* for *lapids*, *aetās* for *aetāts*, *miles* for *mīlets*, *virtūs* for *virtūts*.

4) That the case-suffixes, except in the *neuter*, *caput* (10, 46), are the same as those given above; see 49, 57.

5) That the *neuter*, *caput*, has no case-suffix in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular, *a* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and the suffixes of masculine and feminine nouns in the other cases.

LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I.

50. Vocabulary.

<i>Caput, capitis, n.</i>	<i>head.</i>
<i>Comes, comitis, m. and f.</i>	<i>companion.</i>
<i>Hospes, hospitius, m.</i>	<i>guest, host.</i>
<i>Lapis, lapidis, m.</i>	<i>stone.</i>
<i>Miles, militis, m.</i>	<i>soldier.</i>
<i>Nepōs, nepōtis, m.</i>	<i>grandson.</i>
<i>Princeps, principis, m.</i>	<i>leader, chief, chieftain.</i>
<i>Virtūs, virtutis, f.</i>	<i>virtue, valor, bravery.</i>

51. Translate into English.

1. *Principis, principum.* 2. *Principem, principēs.* 3. *Miles, militēs.* 4. *Militī, militibus.* 5. *Caput, capita.* 6. *Capite, capitibus.* 7. *Lapis, lapidēs.* 8. *Lapidis, lapidum.* 9. *Lapide, lapidibus.* 10. *Nepōtis, nepōtēs, nepōtibus.* 11. *Virtutis, virtūte, virtūtēs, virtūtibus.*

12. Virtūs militum. 13. Virtūte militum. 14. Virtūtem militum timet. 15. Tyrannus virtūtem militum timēbat. 16. Rēgīna virtūtem militum laudat. 17. Filia rēgīnae militēs laudābit. 18. Militēs filiam rēgīnae laudant. 19. Pisistratum tyrannum accūsāt. 20. Pisistratum tyrannum accūsābant. 21. Miles dōnum pulchrum videt. 22. Militēs dōna pulchra vident. 23. Tyrannus prīncipēs timēbat.

52. Translate into Latin.

1. The chief, the chiefs. 2. For the chiefs, for the chief. 3. Of the chief, of the guests. 4. Of the chiefs, of the guest. 5. For the soldier, for the guest, for the companions. 6. To the soldiers, to the guests, to the companion. 7. The guest of the queen. 8. For the guest of the queen. 9. For the guests of the queen. 10. For Tullia, the queen.

11. The companions of Tullia, the queen. 12. For the companions of Tullia, the queen. 13. They accuse Tullia, the queen. 14. They were accusing the companions of Tullia, the queen. 15. They fear the tyrant. 16. They will fear the grandson of the tyrant. 17. The friends of the queen praise the chief. 18. The friend of the queen was praising the good chiefs.

LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I. — RULE XII.

53. Lesson from the Grammar.

59. STEMS ENDING IN A GUTTURAL: C OR G.

Rēx, M., king.	Jūdex, M. & F., judge.	Rādix, F., root.	Dux, M. & F., leader.
SINGULAR.			
Nom. rēx	jūdex	rādix	dux
Gen. rēgis	jūdicis	rādicis	ducis
Dat. rēgī	jūdicī	rādicī	ducī
Acc. rēgem	jūdicem	rādicem	ducem
Voc. rēx	jūdex	rādix	dux
Abl. rēge	jūdice	rādice	duce

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> rēgēs	jūdicēs	rādicēs	ducēs
<i>Gen.</i> rēgūm	jūdicūm	rādicūm	ducūm
<i>Dat.</i> rēgibus	jūdicibus	rādicibus	ducibus
<i>Acc.</i> rēgēs	jūdicēs	rādicēs	ducēs
<i>Voc.</i> rēgēs	jūdicēs	rādicēs	ducēs
<i>Ab.</i> rēgibus	jūdicibus	rādicibus	ducibus

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In the Paradigms observe —

1) That the stems are *rēj*, *jūdic*, *rādic*, and *duc*; *jūdic* with the variable vowel, *i*, *e*; see 49, 57, 2.

2) That the case-suffixes are those given in 48, 57.

3) That *s* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular unites with *c* or *g* of the stem, and forms *x*; see 1, 30.

54. Examine the following examples.

1. *Imperiō pāret.* *He is obedient TO (obeys) AUTHORITY.*
2. *Hōc mihi placet.* *This is pleasing TO (pleases) ME.*
3. *Nōbis vita data est.* *Life has been given TO US.*
4. *Lēgēs civitatī scripsit.* *He wrote laws FOR THE STATE.*

NOTE.—In these examples *imperiō*, ‘to authority,’ *mihi*, ‘to me,’ *nōbis*, ‘to us,’ and *civitātī*, ‘for the state,’ are examples of what is called the *Indirect Object*. The first is the *Indirect Object* of *pāret*, the second of *placet*, the third of *data est*, and the fourth of *scripsit*. If the verb is transitive (14, 193), as in the last example, an *Accusative* of the *Direct Object* (25, 371) may be used in addition to the *Indirect Object*. Observe that in these examples the *Indirect Objects* are all in the *Dative Case*. This is in accordance with the following

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The *INDIRECT OBJECT* of an action is put in the *Dative*. It is used —

I. With *INTRANSITIVE* and *PASSIVE* Verbs :

*Serviunt populō, they are devoted TO THE PEOPLE.*¹ *Cic. Imperiō pārebant, they were obedient TO (obeyed) AUTHORITY. Caes. Tempori*

¹ *Populō*, ‘to the people,’ is in the *Dative*, and is the *Indirect Object* of *serviunt*, ‘they serve’ or ‘are devoted;’ *plēbi*, ‘to the common people,’ is the *Indirect Object* of the transitive verb *dedit*, ‘he gave,’ which also takes the *Direct Object* *agrās*, ‘fields,’ ‘lands.’

cēdit, he yields to the time. Cic. *Labōri student, they devote themselves to labor.* Caes. *Mundus deō pāret, the world obeys God.* Cic. *Nōbis vita data est, life has been granted to us.* Cic.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the DIRECT OBJECT :

Agrōs plēbī¹ dedit, he gave lands to the common people. Cic. *Tibī grātiās agō, I give thanks to you.* Cic. *Pōns iter hostibus dedit, the bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. *Lēgēs civitātibus suis scripsērunt, they prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I. — EXERCISES.

55. Vocabulary.

Dīvinus, a, um,	divine.
Dōnat,	he presents.
Humānus, a, um,	human.
Iniquus, a, um,	unjust.
Jūdex, jūdiciis, m. and f.	judge. [Central Italy.
Latinus, i, m.	Latinus, King of the Laurentians in
Lāvinia, ae, f.	Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus.
Lēx, lēgis, f.	law.
Nātūra, ae, f.	nature.
Pāret,	he obeys.
Placet,	he pleases.
Rēx, rēgis, m.	king.
Superbus, a, um,	proud.

56. Translate into English.

1. Corōna, corōnae, rēx, rēgis. 2. Rēgīnae, rēgīnārum, jūdiciis, jūdicum. 3. Rēgis bonī, rēgēs superbī. 4. Virtūs rēgis bonī. 5. Virtūte rēgis bonī. 6. Nepōs rēgis superbī. 7. Bonus rēgis nepōs. 8. Lēx dīvīna, lēgēs humānae. 9. Lēx nātūrae, lēge nātūrae. 10. Rēx lēgibus² pāret. 11. Rēx bonus lēgibus pārebat. 12. Rēgēs bonī lēgibus dīvīnis pārebunt.

¹ See foot-note, page 47.

² In what case? See 54, Rule XII.

13. Lēx divīna rēgī bonō placet. 14. Lēgēs bonae jūdicī placent. 15. Jūdex bonus rēgem superbū timet. 16. Rēgem superbū timēbit. 17. Rēgēs superbōs timēbunt. 18. Rēgīna jūdicem bonū laudābat. 19. Jūdex rēgem bonū laudābit. 20. Rēgīna bona jūdicem inīquū timēbat. 21. Jūdex puerō librum dōnat. 22. Fīlia rēgīnae puellīs librōs dōnābit.

57. Translate into Latin.

1. The daughter of the king. 2. For the daughter of the king. 3. For the daughters of the good king. 4. For the good daughter of the king. 5. The poet praises the king.¹ 6. The good poet was praising the daughter of the king. 7. The poets praise Lavinia, the daughter of Latinus, the king. 8. They were praising the virtues of the good king. 9. The queen was praising the bravery of the soldier. 10. The poets will praise the bravery of the soldiers. 11. The soldiers will obey the laws.¹ 12. The king will present a golden crown¹ to the queen.¹

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I.

58. Lesson from the Grammar.

60. STEMS ENDING IN L, M, N, OR R.

	Sōl, m., <i>sun.</i>	Cōsul, m., <i>consul.</i>	Passer, m., <i>sparrow.</i>	Pater, m., <i>father.</i>
	SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	sōl	cōsul	passer	pater
<i>Gen.</i>	sōlis	cōsulis	passeris	patris
<i>Dat.</i>	sōli	cōsuli	passeri	patri
<i>Acc.</i>	sōlem	cōsulem	passerem	patrem
<i>Voc.</i>	sōl	cōsul	passer	pater
<i>Abl.</i>	sōle	cōsule	passere	patre

¹ In what case will you put the Latin word for *king*? 25, Rule V.; the Latin words for *laws*, *crown*, *to the queen*? 54, 348, I. and II.

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>sölēs</i> ¹	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>passerēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>cōsulum</i>	<i>passerum</i>	<i>patrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sölibus</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>passeribus</i>	<i>patribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sölēs</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>passerēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>sölēs</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>passerēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>sölibus</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>passeribus</i>	<i>patribus</i>

Pāstor, m.,
shepherd.

Leō, m.,
lion.

Virgō, f.,
maiden.

Carmen, n.,
song.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pāstor</i>	<i>leō</i>	<i>virgō</i>	<i>carmen</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pāstoris</i>	<i>leōnis</i>	<i>virginis</i>	<i>carminis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pāstorī</i>	<i>leōnī</i>	<i>virginī</i>	<i>carminī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pāstorem</i>	<i>leōnem</i>	<i>virginem</i>	<i>carmen</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>pāstor</i>	<i>leō</i>	<i>virgō</i>	<i>carmen</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pāstore</i>	<i>leōne</i>	<i>virgine</i>	<i>carmine</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pāstorēs</i>	<i>leōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>carmina</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pāstorum</i>	<i>leōnum</i>	<i>virginum</i>	<i>carminum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pāstoribus</i>	<i>leōnibus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>	<i>carminibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pāstorēs</i>	<i>leōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>carmina</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>pāstorēs</i>	<i>leōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>carmina</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pāstoribus</i>	<i>leōnibus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>	<i>carminibus</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In the Paradigms observe —

- 1) The stems are *söl*, *cōsul*, *passer*, *patr*, *pāstör*, *leōn*, *virgon*, *carmen*.
- 2) *Virgō* (virgon) has the variable vowel, *o*, *i*, and *carmen*, *e*, *i*.
- 3) In the Nominative and Vocative Singular *s*, the case-suffix, is omitted, the stem *pāstör* shortens *o*, while *leōn* and *virgon* drop *n*.

61. STEMS ENDING IN S.

Flōs, m.,
flower.

Jūs, n.,
right.

Opus, n.,
work.

Corpus, n.,
body.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>flōs</i>	<i>jūs</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>corpus</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>flōris</i>	<i>jūris</i>	<i>operis</i>	<i>cōrporis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>flōrī</i>	<i>jūrī</i>	<i>operī</i>	<i>corporī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>flōrem</i>	<i>jūs</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>corpus</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>flōs</i>	<i>jūs</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>corpus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>flōre</i>	<i>jūre</i>	<i>opere</i>	<i>corpore</i>

¹ Many monosyllables want the Genitive Plural.

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>flōrēs</i>	<i>jūra</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>corpora</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>flōrum</i>	<i>jūrum</i>	<i>operum</i>	<i>corporum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>flōribus</i>	<i>jūribus</i>	<i>operibus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>flōrēs</i>	<i>jūra</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>corpora</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>flōrēs</i>	<i>jūra</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>corpora</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>flōribus</i>	<i>jūribus</i>	<i>operibus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In the Paradigms observe —

1) That the stems are *flōs*, *jūs*, *opos*, and *corpos*.

2) That *opus* has the variable vowel, *e*, *u*, and *corpus*, *o*, *u*.

3) That *s* of the stem becomes *r* between two vowels: *flōs*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*).

4) That the Nominative and Vocative Singular omit the case-suffix; see 58, 60, 1, 3).

LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — RULE I. — EXERCISES.

59. *Examine the following examples.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Servius <i>rēx</i> . | <i>Servius</i> THE KING. |
| 2. Servius <i>rēx</i> erat. | <i>Servius</i> was KING. |
| 3. Artemisia, Mausōli <i>uxor</i> . | <i>Artemisia</i> , THE WIFE of <i>Mausolus</i> . |
| 4. Artemisia Mausōli <i>uxor</i> erat. | <i>Artemisia</i> was THE WIFE of <i>Mausolus</i> . |

NOTE 1. — In the first example *rēx* is an Appositive; see 31, Rule II. In the second example, however, *rēx* is predicated or affirmed of *Servius*, — *Servius* was king, — and is called a Predicate Noun. *Rēx erat* is the Predicate of the sentence of which *Servius* is the subject. In the third example *uxor* is an Appositive, while in the fourth it is a Predicate Noun, predicated of *Artemisia*.

NOTE 2. — In the second and fourth examples observe that *rēx* and *uxor* are in the same case as the nouns of which they are predicated, *i.e.* in the Nominative. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.¹

362. A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in CASE.

¹ For a Model for Parsing Nouns, see 22.

*Brūtus custōs*¹ *libertātis* fuit, *Brutus* was the GUARDIAN of liberty.
 Liv. *Servius rēx* est *dēclārātus*, *Servius* was declared KING. Liv.
Orestem sē esse dixit, he said that he was ORESTES. Cic.

60. Vocabulary.

Bellum, i, n.	war.
Brūtus, i, m.	Brutus, a Roman name.
Cāria, ae, f.	Caria, a country in Asia Minor.
Catō, ōnis, m.	Cato, a Roman name.
Causa, ae, f.	cause.
Cicerō, ōnis, m.	Cicero, a Roman orator and states-
Exsul, ulis, m. and f.	exile. [man.
Frāter, frātris, m.	brother.
Herodotus, i, m.	Herodotus, a Greek historian.
Historia, ae, f.	history.
Imperātor, ōris, m.	general, commander.
Libertās, ātis, f.	liberty, freedom.
Mausōlus, i, m.	Mausolus, King of Caria.
Numa, ae, m.	Numa, second of the legendary kings
Ōrātor, ōris, m.	orator. [of Rome.
Uxor, ōris, f.	wife.
Victor, ōris, m.	conqueror.
Vindex, vindicis, m. and f.	defender.

61. Translate into English.

1. Rēgis, mīlitis. 2. Rēgēs, mīlitēs. 3. Rēgibus, mīliti-
 bus. 4. Jūdicis, jūdicum, jūdicibus. 5. Leō, leōnis, leōnēs.
 6. Virgō, virginis, virginēs. 7. Cicerō cōsul, Cicerōnī
 cōsulī. 8. Cicerō cōsul erat. 9. Vindex libertātis.² 10.
 Brūtus, vindex libertātis. 11. Brūtus est vindex³ libertātis.
 12. Virtūs rēgis, virtūtēs rēgum. 13. Belli causa, bellī

¹ In these examples *custōs*, *rēx*, and *Orestem* are all predicate nouns, and agree in case respectively with *Brūtus*, *Servius*, and *sē*.

² *Libertātis* is in the Genitive, depending upon *vindex*, according to 31, Rule XVI. The Genitive generally follows its noun, as in this instance, but sometimes, especially when emphatic, it precedes, as in *belli causa* below.

³ *Vindex* in 10 is an Appositive, according to 31, Rule II., but in 11 it is a Predicate Noun, according to 59, Rule I.

causās. 14. Tullia, rēgis filia.¹ 15. Herodotus, pater historiae. 16. Catō, māgnus imperātor. 17. Catō māgnus imperātor erat.

18. Jūstitia, rēgīna virtūtum. 19. Jūstitia est rēgīna virtūtum. 20. Artemisia rēgis² uxor erat. 21. Artemisia Mausōli, Cariae rēgis,³ uxor erat. 22. Virtūs est comes sapientiae. 23. Virtūtēs sunt comitēs sapientiae. 24. Jūdex virtūtem rēgis laudat. 25. Virtūtēs rēgis bonī laudābat. 26. Poētae virtūtēs Numae, rēgis bonī, laudābunt. 27. Rēx bonus⁴ est. 28. Pater jūdicis rēgem bonum laudābit. 29. Tulliam, rēgis filiam,⁵ accusābant.

62. Translate into Latin.

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles. 3. Of shepherds, of orators. 4. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 5. Father, brother. 6. To the father, to the brother. 7. Of the kings, of the laws. 8. For the conqueror, of the conqueror. 9. The brother of the conqueror.

10. The soldiers fear the king. 11. Latinus was the king.⁶ 12. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 13. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus, the king.⁷ 14. The daughter of the king was praising the faithful slave. 15. The orator will praise the wisdom of the judge. 16. Cicero, the orator, praises the bravery of the conqueror. 17. Cicero, the consul, praises the bravery of the soldiers. 18. The judge praises the wisdom of Cicero, the consul.

¹ *Filia* governs *rēgis*, according to Rule XVI., but is itself in apposition with *Tullia*, according to Rule II. The *appositive* generally follows its noun.

² Remember that the Genitive sometimes precedes the governing word, especially when it is emphatic.

³ What is the construction of *rēgis*? See 31, Rule II.

⁴ See 43, Rule XXXIV.

⁵ Explain the case of *filiam*. See 31 and 25, Rules II. and V.

⁶ A Predicate Noun. See 59, Rule I.

⁷ In what case will you put the Latin word? See 31, Rule II.

LESSON XXIV.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS II. — I STEMS.

63. Lesson from the Grammar.

CLASS II. — I STEMS.

62. STEMS ENDING IN I.—*Nouns in is and es*, not increasing in the Genitive.¹

Tussis, F., Turris, F., Ignis, M., Hostis, M. & F., Nūbēs, F.,
cough. tower. fire. enemy. cloud.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	tussis	turris	ignis	hostis	nūbēs
<i>Gen.</i>	tussis	turris	ignis	hostis	nūbis
<i>Dat.</i>	tussi	turri	igni	hosti	nūbi
<i>Acc.</i>	tussim	turrim, em	ignem	hostem	nūbem
<i>Voc.</i>	tussis	turris	ignis	hostis	nūbēs
<i>Abl.</i>	tussi	turri, e	igni, e	hoste	nūbe

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs
<i>Gen.</i>	tussium	turrium	ignium	hostium	nūbium
<i>Dat.</i>	tussibus	turribus	ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus
<i>Acc.</i>	tussēs, is	turrēs, is	ignēs, is	hostēs, is	nūbēs, is
<i>Voc.</i>	tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs
<i>Abl.</i>	tussibus	turribus	ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus

I. PARADIGMS. — Observe —

1. That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, *igni*, *hosti*, and *nūbi*.
2. That the case-endings, including the characteristic *i*, which disappears in certain cases, are as follows:—

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	is, ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	is
<i>Dat.</i>	i
<i>Acc.</i>	im, em
<i>Voc.</i>	is
<i>Abl.</i>	i, e

PLURAL.

ēs
ium
ibus
ēs, is
ēs
ibus

¹ That is, having as many syllables in the Nominative Singular as in the Genitive Singular.

63. STEMS ENDING IN **I**.—*Neuters in e, al, and ar.*Mare, *sea*. Animal, *animal*. Calcar, *spur*.

SINGULAR.			CASE-ENDINGS.
Nom. mare	animal	calcar	e— ¹
Gen. maris	animālīs	calcārīs	is
Dat. marī	animālī	calcārī	i
Acc. mare	animal	calcar	e—
Voc. mare	animal	calcar	e—
Abl. marī	animālī	calcārī	i
PLURAL.			
Nom. maria	animālīa	calcārīa	ia
Gen. marium	animālīum	calcārīum	ium
Dat. maribus	animālībūs	calcārībūs	ibus
Acc. maria	animālīa	calcārīa	ia
Voc. maria	animālīa	calcārīa	ia
Abl. maribus	animālībūs	calcārībūs	ibus

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe—

1) That the stem-ending **i** is changed to **e** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of *mare*, and dropped in the same cases of *animal* (for *animāle*) and *calcar* (for *calcāre*).

2) That the case-endings include the characteristic **i**.

64. STEMS ENDING IN **I**.—*Nouns in s and x generally preceded by a consonant.*

	Cliēns, M. & F., <i>client.</i>	Urbs, F., <i>city.</i>	Arx, F., <i>citadel.</i>	Mūs, ² M., <i>mouse.</i>
SINGULAR.				
Nom.	cliēns	urb̄s	arx	mūs
Gen.	cliētīs ³	urbis	arcis	mūris
Dat.	cliētī	urbī	arcī	mūrī
Acc.	cliētēm	urbem	arcem	mūrem
Voc.	cliēns	urb̄s	arx	mūs
Abl.	cliētē	urbe	arce	mūre

¹ The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

² *Cliēns* is for *clientis*, *urb̄s* for *urbis*, *arx* for *arcis*, and *mūs* for *musis*. *Mūs*, originally an *s*-stem, Greek *μῦς*, became an *i*-stem in Latin by assuming *i*.

³ The vowel *e* is here short before *nt*, but long before *ns*; see 4, 15, note 2. Indeed, it seems probable that *nt* and *nd* shorten a preceding vowel, as *ns* lengthens it.

PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	mūrēs
<i>Gen.</i> clientium	urbium	arcium	mūrium
<i>Dat.</i> clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	mūribus
<i>Acc.</i> clientēs, is	urbēs, is	arcēs, is	mūrēs, is
<i>Voc.</i> clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	mūrēs
<i>Abl.</i> clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	mūribus

I. PARADIGMS. — Observe —

- 1) That the stems are *clienti*, *urbi*, *arci*, and *mūri*.
- 2) That these nouns are declined in the singular precisely like consonant-stems, and in the plural precisely like all other masculine and feminine *i*-stems.

65. SUMMARY OF **I**-STEMS. — To **I**-stems belong —

1. All nouns in **is** and **ēs** which do not increase in the Genitive; see 63, 62.
2. Neuters in **e**, **al** (for *ālis*), and **ar** (for *āris*); see 63, 63.
3. Many nouns in **s** and **x** — especially (1) nouns in **ns** and **rs**, and (2) monosyllables in **s** and **x** preceded by a consonant; see 63, 64.

66, 4. LOCATIVE. — Many names of towns have a Locative Singular in **i** or **e** denoting the place in which (8, 45, 2). *Karthāginī* or *Karthāgine*, at Carthage, *Tīburi* or *Tibure*, at Tibur.

LESSON XXV.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION. — RULE XXXIII. — EXERCISES.

64. Lesson from the Grammar.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. Nouns in the third declension ending in

ō, or, **ōs**, **er**, and in **ēs** and **es**

increasing in the Genitive,¹ are masculine: *sermō*, discourse; *dolor*, pain; *mōs*, custom; *agger*, mound; *pēs*, Genitive *pedis*, foot.

¹ That is, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

105. Nouns of the third declension ending in

ās, as, is, ys, x, in ēs

not increasing in the Genitive, and in **s** preceded by a consonant, are feminine: *aetās*, age; *nāvis*, ship; *chlamys*, cloak; *pāx*, peace; *nūbēs*, cloud; *urbis*, city.

111. Nouns of the third declension ending in

a, e, ī, y, c, l, n, t, ār, ar, ur, ūs, and us

are neuter: ¹ *poēma*, poem; *mare*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *animal*, animal; *carmen*, song; *caput*, head; *corpus*, body.

65. Examine the following examples.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Apud concilium. | In the presence of THE COUNCIL. |
| 2. Post castra. | Behind THE CAMP. |
| 3. Ab urbe. | From THE CITY. |
| 4. Prō castris. | Before THE CAMP. |

NOTE. — Observe that in the first and second of these examples, the nouns after the prepositions *apud* and *post* are in the Accusative, and that in the third and fourth the nouns after *ab* and *prō* are in the Ablative. This general usage is expressed in the following

RULE XXXIII. — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions.²

¹ Nouns whose gender is determined by Signification (G, 42) may be exceptions to these rules for gender as determined by Endings.

² The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relation of objects to each other: *apud iudicem dixit*, 'he spoke in the presence of the judge'; *prō castris*, 'before the camp.' Here *apud* and *prō* are prepositions. In the Vocabulary, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. No special Model for parsing Nouns with Prepositions is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different rules are, of course, assigned for different cases, and even for different uses of the same case. In parsing Nouns with Prepositions give Rule XXXIII.

Ad amicum scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate-house.* Liv. In Italiā,¹ *in Italy.* Nep. Prō castris, *before the camp.* Caes.

66. Vocabulary.

Aedificat,	he builds.
Ante, prep. w. acc.	before.
Apud, prep. w. acc.	in the presence of, among, in ; of an author, in the works of.
Caesar, aris, m.	Caesar, the celebrated Roman statesman and general.
Civis, civis, m.	citizen.
Civitas, atis, f.	state.
Contrā, prep. w. acc.	against, contrary to.
Habitat,	he resides, lives, dwells.
Hostis, is, m. and f.	enemy.
In, prep. w. acc. and abl.	into, in.
Lūx, lūcis, f.	light.
Multus, a, um,	much, many.
Nāvis, is, f.	ship.
Oppūgnat,	he assaults, attacks.
Patria, ae, f.	native country.
Prō, prep. w. abl.	for, before.
Pūgnat,	he fights.
Rōmulus, i, m.	Romulus, the legendary founder
Superat,	he conquers. [of Rome.]

67. Translate into English.

1. Hostem, hostēs, hostibus. 2. Turrim, turrium, turribus. 3. Leōnēs, virgīnēs. 4. Clientēs Cicerōnis. 5. Pater Cicerōnis cōsulis. 6. Ante lūcem.² 7. Contrā nātūram. 8. Contrā lēgēs nātūrae. 9. Ante Rōmulum. 10. Apud Herodotum sunt fābulae. 11. Apud Herodotum, patrem historiae, sunt multae fābulae. 12. Militēs prō patriā pūgnābant. 13.

¹ Here the Ablative *Italiā* is used with *in*, though, in the second example, the Accusative *cūriam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the Accusative when it means *into*, and that it is used with the Ablative when it means *in*.

² The Accusative *lūcem* is here used with the preposition *ante*, according to Rule XXXIII., 432.

Militēs prō libertāte pūgnant. 14. Cīvis bonus lēgibus patriae pāret.

15. Cōsul in urbe habitābat. 16. Hostēs urbem oppūgnābant. 17. Rēx urbēs multās oppūgnābit. 18. Caesar hostēs superābat. 19. Cōsul virtūtem hostium timēbat. 20. Militēs cōsulibus pārēbunt. 21. Caesar turrim oppūgnābat. 22. Rēx turrēs oppūgnābit. 23. Hostēs arcem oppūgnābunt. 24. Hostēs nāvēs multās habent. 25. Caesarī pūgnam nūntiant. 26. Cīvēs bonī lēgibus pārent. 27. Cōsulēs virtūtem hostium timent.

68. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizen, to the citizen, for citizens. 2. A king, a law. 3. Of fire, with fire. 4. Of the animal, for the animals. 5. The law of the state. 6. The laws of the state. 7. Contrary to the law.¹ 8. Contrary to the laws of the state. 9. The citizens praise the law. 10. They praise the laws. 11. They praise the laws of the state. 12. The judge will obey the laws. 13. The citizens will obey the laws of the state. 14. The consul was building a large ship.

15. The citizens will build many ships. 16. The king has a good ship. 17. The soldiers were fighting for liberty. 18. The consul will attack the city. 19. He will conquer the enemy. 20. The conqueror is in the city. 21. The father of the king resides in the city. 22. The father of the good queen will reside in the city. 23. Good citizens will fight for their country. 24. The soldiers of the good king were assaulting many cities of the enemy.

¹ See 65, Rule XXXIII. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition. We have already learned that the English prepositions *of*, *to*, *by*, *with*, etc., may generally be rendered into Latin without prepositions by simply using the proper case; but many prepositions, as *before*, *between*, *behind*, *around*, *contrary to*, must be rendered by corresponding prepositions.

LESSON XXVI.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

69. In verbs of the THIRD CONJUGATION, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* mood has the following

	PRESENT.	ENDINGS.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Singular, it</i>			ēbat	et
<i>Plural, unt</i>			ēbant	ent

	SINGULAR.	PARADIGM.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres. regit, he rules ;</i>			regunt, they rule.
<i>Imp. regēbat, he was ruling ;</i>			regēbant, they were ruling.
<i>Fut. reget, he will rule ;</i>			regent, they will rule.

70. Examples. — Adverbs.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Miles pūgnat. | The soldier fights. |
| 2. Miles fortiter pūgnat. | The soldier fights BRAVELY. |
| 3. Miles nōn pūgnat. | The soldier does NOT fight. |

NOTE. — In these examples *fortiter* (bravely), and *nōn* (not) are adverbs modifying *pūgnat*. The use of adverbs is expressed in the following

RULE LXI. — Use of Adverbs.

551. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS :

Sapientēs feliciter¹ vivunt, *the wise live happily*. Cic. Facile dōctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned*. Cic. Haud aliter, *not otherwise*. Verg.

¹ The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Feliciter*, 'happily,' is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, 'live' (*live happily*). *Facile*, 'easily,' 'unquestionably,' is an adverb qualifying the adjective *dōctissimus*, 'the most learned' (*easily*, i.e. *unquestionably* the most learned). *Haud*, 'not,' is an adverb qualifying the adverb *aliter*, 'otherwise' (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

71. *Model for parsing Adverbs.*

Miles fortiter pūgnat. *The soldier fights bravely.*

Fortiter is an adverb qualifying *pūgnat*, according to Rule LXI. :
 "Adverbs qualify *verbs*, *adjectives*, and other *adverbs*.

72. *Vocabulary.*

Ad, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	to.
Breviter, <i>adv.</i>	briefly.
Dē, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	about, concerning, in regard to.
Dicit,	he says, speaks.
Diligenter, <i>adv.</i>	attentively, diligently.
Dūcit,	he leads.
Fēliciter, <i>adv.</i>	happily.
Fortiter, <i>adv.</i>	bravely.
Lēgātus, i, m.	ambassador ; lieutenant.
Legit,	he reads.
Mittit,	he sends.
Modestē, <i>adv.</i>	modestly.
Nōn, <i>adv.</i>	not.
Numerus, i, m.	number.
Ōrātiō, ōnis, f.	oration, speech.
Regit,	he rules.
Saepe, <i>adv.</i>	often.
Scribit,	he writes.
Simpliciter, <i>adv.</i>	simply.
Vērum, i, n.	truth.
Vivit,	he lives.

73. *Translate into English.*

1. Dicit, dicēbant, dicet. 2. Legunt, legēbat, legent. 3. Dicunt, scribunt. 4. Dicēbat, scribēbat. 5. Dicent, scribent. 6. Dūcit, dūcēbat, dūcet. 7. Regunt, regēbat, regent. 8. Cōsul modestē dicēbat. 9. Pueri modestē dicunt. 10. Rēx breviter dicet. 11. Cōsulēs breviter dicunt. 12. Jūdex fēliciter vīvit. 13. Cīvēs fēliciter vīvēbant. 14. Pāstōrēs simpliciter vīvunt.

15. Jūdex librum legēbat. 16. Jūdicēs ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis legēbant. 17. Jūdicēs bonī ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis cōsulis

diligenter legēbant. 18. Epistulās cōsulis diligenter legent
 19. Hostēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 20. Hostēs lēgātōs
 ad rēgem mittent. 21. Militēs fortiter pūgnābant. 22.
 Cōsul amīcōs multōs habēbat. 23. Cōsul māgnūm amīcō-
 rum numerum habēbat.

74. Translate into Latin.

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he
 was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They
 were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will
 rule. 6. The judge will speak the truth. 7. They speak
 the truth. 8. They will speak modestly. 9. Cicero was
 writing to a friend. 10. The boys will write often. 11.
 Cicero was writing about friendship.

12. The king is writing a book. 13. He will write many
 books. 14. The boy is writing about virtue. 15. The boys
 will write about the victory. 16. The king lives happily.
 17. The father of the good queen was living happily. 18.
 He was reading a good book. 19. The boys will read good
 books. 20. Caesar sends an ambassador to the enemy. 21.
 The king will send ambassadors to the enemy.

LESSON XXVII.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. —
 PERFECT TENSE.

75. In verbs of the FOURTH CONJUGATION, the THIRD
 PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*,
 and *future* tenses of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Singular, it</i>	iunt	iēbat	iet
<i>Plural,</i>	iunt	iēbant	ient

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres. audit, he hears ;</i>	<i>audient, they hear.</i>
<i>Imp. audiebant, he was hearing ;</i>	<i>audiebant, they were hearing.</i>
<i>Fut. audiet, he will hear ;</i>	<i>audient, they will hear.</i>

76. In verbs of the FOUR CONJUGATIONS, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *perfect* tense of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Conf. I.	avit	āverunt
Conf. II.	uit	uērunt
Conf. III.	sit	sērunt
Conf. IV.	ivit	ivērunt

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I. amāvit, he has loved ; ¹	amāvērunt, they have loved. ¹
II. monuit, he has advised ;	monuērunt, they have advised.
III. rēxit, he has ruled ;	rēxērunt, they have ruled.
IV. audivit, he has heard ;	audivērunt, they have heard.

77. In the verb *Sum*, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *perfect* tense of the *indicative* mood has the following forms :

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
fuī, he has been, he was ;	fuērunt, they have been, they were.

78. Examples. — Ablative.

1. *Virtute regnum tenuit.* He obtained the kingdom BY MERIT.
2. *Oppidum vallō munivit.* He fortified the town BY MEANS OF A RAMPART.

NOTE. — Observe in these examples that *virtute*, 'by merit,' and *vallō*, 'by means of a rampart,' are both in the *Ablative*. This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

¹ Or he loved, they loved, etc.

RULE XXV.—Ablative of Means.

420. INSTRUMENT and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative:

Cornibus tauri sē tūtantur, bulls defend themselves WITH THEIR HORNS. Cic. Glōriā dūcitur, he is led BY GLORY. Cic. Sol omnia lūce collustrat, the sun illumines all things with its light. Cic. Lacte vivunt, they live upon milk. Caes. Tellūs sancīa vomeribus, the earth turned (wounded) with the ploughshare. Ovid.

LESSON XXVIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION AND PERFECT TENSE. —
EXERCISES.

79. Vocabulary.

Altus, a, um,	high.
Artē, adv.	closely, soundly.
Castra, ōrum, n. pl.	camp.
Custōdit, 4, ¹	he guards.
Discipulus, i, m.	learner, pupil.
Dormit, 4,	he sleeps.
Erudit, 4,	he instructs.
Fōssa, ae, f.	ditch, moat.
Fugitivus, i, m.	runaway, deserter. [to France.
Gallia, ae, f.	Gaul, a country nearly corresponding
Helvētīi, ōrum, m. pl.	the Helvetii or Helvetians, a people of
Legiō, ōnis, f.	legion. [Switzerland.
Mūnit, 4,	he fortifies.
Mūrus, i, m.	wall.
Posteā, adv.	afterward.
Pūgna, ae, f.	fight, battle.
Rōmānus, i, m.	Roman.
Sermō, ōnis, m.	discourse, conversation.
Vallum, i, n.	rampart.
Vōx, vōcis, f.	voice.

¹ As the ending of the third person singular of the present indicative is the same in the fourth conjugation as in the third, verbs of the fourth conjugation for the present will be distinguished in the vocabularies by the numeral 4.

80. *Translate into English.*

1. Audiunt, audiēbat, audient, audīvit. 2. Ērudit, ērudīebant, ērudiet, ērudīvērunt. 3. Mūnit, custōdit, custōdient, mūnient. 4. Puerī dormiēbant. 5. Puer artē dormiēbat. 6. Pāstōrēs artē dormiunt. 7. Militēs artē dormīvērunt. 8. Militēs arcem mūniēbant. 9. Caesar castra mūnīvit. 10. Legiōnēs castra mūniēbant. 11. Hostēs fortiter pūgnāvērunt. 12. Hostēs urbem oppūgnāvērunt. 13. Jūdex bonus tyrannum timuit. 14. Cīvēs Pisistratum tyrannum timuērunt.

15. Hostēs urbem mūrō mūniēbant. 16. Cōsul urbem mūrō altō mūnīvit. 17. Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāvērunt. 18. Militēs castra fōssā mūniēbant. 19. Caesar castra vallō mūnīvit. 20. Fugitivī hostibus pūgnam nūntiāvērunt. 21. Rōmānī postea hostēs superāvērunt. 22. Caesar in Galliā fuit. 23. Hostēs nāvēs multās habuērunt. 24. Cicerō cōsul epistulās multās scrīpsit. 25. Cōsul vōcēs militum audīvit. 26. Puerī sermōnem dē amicitīā audient.

81. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He hears, he guards. 2. They hear, they guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. They have slept, they have heard. 7. The boys heard the oration. 8. The pupils heard the conversation. 9. They did not hear the oration. 10. The citizens are fortifying the city. 11. They will guard the beautiful city. 12. The soldiers will guard the city. 13. They will guard the temple.

14. The shepherd was sleeping soundly. 15. The shepherds will sleep soundly. 16. Caesar heard the voice of the soldier. 17. Caesar hears the voices of the soldiers. 18. The soldier heard the voice of Caesar. 19. They heard the conversation in regard to the consul. 20. Caesar was fortifying the camp with a rampart. 21. The soldiers will fortify the camp with a moat.

LESSON XXIX.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

82. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes :

I. Those which have in the Nominative Singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in *i*, and are declined as follows :

<i>Ācer, sharp.</i> ¹			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācer</i> ²	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
PLURAL.			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrēs, īs</i>	<i>ācrēs, īs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

¹ *Ācer* is declined like *ignis* in the Masc. and Fem., and like *mare* (63, 63) in the Neut., except in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. Masc., and in the Abl. Sing.

² These forms in *er* are like those in *er* of Decl. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and in developing final *r* into *er*: *ācer* for *ācris*, stem *ācrī*.

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows :

*Tristis, sad.*¹

*Tristior, sadder.*¹

SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
M. AND F.	NEUT.		M. AND F.	NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i> tristis	triste		tristior	tristius	
<i>Gen.</i> tristis	tristis		tristiōris	tristiōris	
<i>Dat.</i> tristī	tristī		tristiōrī	tristiōrī	
<i>Acc.</i> tristem	triste		tristiōrem	tristius	
<i>Voc.</i> tristis	triste		tristior	tristius	
<i>Abl.</i> tristī	tristī		tristiōre (ī) ²	tristiōre (ī)	
PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> tristēs	tristia		tristiōrēs	tristiōra	
<i>Gen.</i> tristium	tristium		tristiōrum	tristiōrum	
<i>Dat.</i> tristibus	tristibus		tristiōribus	tristiōribus	
<i>Acc.</i> tristēs, īs	tristia		tristiōrēs (īs)	tristiōra	
<i>Voc.</i> tristēs	tristia		tristiōrēs	tristiōra	
<i>Abl.</i> tristibus	tristibus		tristiōribus	tristiōribus	

83. Vocabulary.

Ācer, ācris, ācre,	sharp, severe.
Aetās, ātis, f.	age.
Cōpia, ae, f.	abundance, supply.
Crūdēlis, e,	cruel.
Fertilis, e,	fertile.
Fortis, e,	brave.
Gallus, ī, m.	Gaul.
Germānus, ī, m.	German.
Incolit,	he inhabits.
Inūtilis, e,	useless.
Nāvālis, e,	naval.
Occupat,	he seizes, takes possession of.
Omnis, e,	all.
Pābulum, ī, n.	fodder.
Per, prep. w. acc.	through, on account of, by means
Post, prep. with acc.	after. [of, by, during, for.
Singulāris, e,	remarkable, singular.
Timor, ōris, m.	fear.
Ūtilis, e,	useful.

¹ *Tristis* and *triste* are declined like *ācris* and *ācre*. *Tristior* is the comparative of *tristis*.

² Enclosed endings are rare.

84. *Translate into English.*

1. Lēx ācris. 2. Lēgibus ācribus. 3. Hostis crūdēlis. 4. Hostem crūdēlem. 5. Mīles fortis. 6. Virtūs mīlitis¹ fortis. 7. In agrō fertilī, in agrīs fertilibus. 8. Post vītā brevem. 9. Post pūgnās nāvālēs. 10. Singulāris virtūs, singulārī virtūte. 11. Lēx ācris est. 12. Lēgēs ācrēs sunt. 13. Mīles est fortis. 14. Militēs sunt fortēs. 15. Cōsul virtūtem mīlitis fortis laudat. 16. Cōsul est ōrātor.

17. Catō māgnus imperātor est. 18. Timor omnēs mīlītēs occupāvit. 19. Timor omnēs hostēs occupābit. 20. Gallī fortēs sunt. 21. Caesar Gallōs fortēs superāvit. 22. Germānī agrōs fertilēs incolunt. 23. Pābuli cōpia in agrīs fertilibus erat. 24. Lēgēs sunt ūtilēs. 25. Cīvēs boni rēgibus ūtilibus pārent. 26. Jūdicēs per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs erant. 27. Timor omnēs cīvēs occupābit. 28. Agrī Gallōrum fertilēs erant. 29. Mīles verba dūcis fortis audit.

85. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A useful citizen. 2. Of useful citizens. 3. For useful citizens. 4. Brave soldiers, for brave soldiers. 5. The brave leader, brave leaders. 6. The word of the brave leader. 7. By the words of the brave leader. 8. The leaders of the soldiers are brave. 9. The brother of the consul is a brave soldier. 10. The brother of the king was a severe judge. 11. The brother of the orator will be a severe judge.

12. The brave soldiers were guarding the camp. 13. The soldiers will be brave. 14. They will all be brave. 15. Caesar praised the brave soldiers. 16. The soldiers will hear the words of the brave leader. 17. The field is fertile. 18. The fields are fertile. 19. Fear is taking possession of all the citizens. 20. There will be an abundance of fodder in the fields of the Germans.

¹ Genitive according to Rule XVI.

LESSON XXX.

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

86. Lesson from the Grammar.

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or *x*, but sometimes in *l* or *r*.

156. Audāx, *audacious*.¹

Félix, *happy*.¹

		SINGULAR.	
M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> audāx	audāx	fēlix	fēlix
<i>Gen.</i> audācis	audācis	fēlicis	fēlicis
<i>Dat.</i> audācī	audācī	fēlicī	fēlicī
<i>Acc.</i> audācem	audāx	fēlicem	fēlix
<i>Voc.</i> audāx	audāx	fēlix	fēlix
<i>Abl.</i> audācī (e)	audācī (e)	fēlicī (e)	fēlicī (e)
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> audācēs	audācia	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Gen.</i> audācium	audācium	fēlicium	fēlicium
<i>Dat.</i> audācibus	audācibus	fēlicibus	fēlicibus
<i>Acc.</i> audācēs (is)	audācia	fēlicēs (is)	fēlicia
<i>Voc.</i> audācēs	audācia	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Abl.</i> audācibus	audācibus	fēlicibus	fēlicibus

157. Amāns, *loving*.

Prūdēns, *prudent*.

		SINGULAR.	
M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> amāns	amāns	prūdēns	prūdēns
<i>Gen.</i> amantis	amantis ²	prudentis	prudentis ²
<i>Dat.</i> amantī	amantī	prudentī	prudentī
<i>Acc.</i> amantem	amāns	prudentem	prūdēns
<i>Voc.</i> amāns	amāns	prūdēns	prūdēns
<i>Abl.</i> amante (ī)	amante (ī)	prudentī (e)	prudentī (e)

¹ Observe that *i* in the Ablative Singular, and *ia*, *tum*, and *is* in the Plural, are the regular case-endings for *i*-stems. See 63.

² According to Ritschl, Schmitz, and others, the *e* which is long in *prūdēns* before *ns* is short in all other forms of the word, i.e. before *nt*. In the same manner the *a* which is long in *amāns*, is according to Ritschl short in *amantis*, *amantī*, etc.

PLURAL.			
Nom. amantēs	amantia	prudentēs	prudentia
Gen. amantium	amantium	prudentium	prudentium
Dat. amantibus	amantibus	prudentibus	prudentibus
Acc. amantēs (is)	amantia	prudentēs (is)	prudentia
Voc. amantēs	amantia	prudentēs	prudentia
Abl. amantibus	amantibus	prudentibus	prudentibus

NOTE. — The participle *amāns* differs in declension from the adjective *prūdēns* only in the Ablative Singular, where the participle usually has the ending *e*, and the adjective, *i*.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive degree, the Comparative, and the Superlative: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*,¹ high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON, by endings.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON, by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
ior	ior	ius	issimus	issima	issimum

Altus, *altior*, *altissimus*: *high*, *higher*, *highest*.

Levis, *levior*, *levissimus*: *light*, *lighter*, *lightest*.

1. VOWEL STEMS lose their final vowel: *alto*, *altior*, *altissimus*.

¹ Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimus* are declined like *bonus*, 42, 148: *altus*, *a*, *um*; *altī*, *ae*, *i*, etc.; *altissimus*, *a*, *um*; *altissimi*, *ae*, *i*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 82, 154; *altior*, *altius*; *altioris*, etc.

165. The following are compared irregularly :

bonus,	melior,	optimus,	<i>good, better, best.</i>
māgnus,	māior,	māximus,	<i>great, greater, greatest.</i>
parvus,	minor,	minimus,	<i>small, smaller, smallest.</i>

166. POSITIVE WANTING.

citerior,	citimus,	nearer,	prior,	primus,	former,
dēterior,	dēterrimus,	worse,	proplior,	prōximus,	nearer,
interior,	intimus,	inner,	ūterior,	ūltimus,	farther.
ōcior,	ōcissimus,	swifter,			

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs, *magis*, more, and *māximē*, most, to the positive :

Arduus, magis arduus, māximē arduus.

Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.

87. *Model for Parsing* COMPARATIVES and SUPERLATIVES.

Orātor clārior. A more renowned orator.

Clārior is an adjective (42, 146) in the Comparative degree (86, 160, 162), from the positive *clārus*. Positive, *clārus* ; STEM, *clāro* ; Comparative, *clārior* ; Superlative, *clārissimus*. *Clārior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (82, 154). Singular: N. *clārior, clārius* ; G. *clāriōris, clāriōris*, etc.¹ It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātor*, according to 43, Rule XXXIV.²

LESSON XXXI.

THIRD DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES. — COMPARISON. — EXERCISES.

88. *Examples. — Comparison.*

1. *Aurum gravius est quam argentum.* Gold is heavier THAN SILVER.
2. *Aurum argentō gravius est.* Gold is heavier THAN SILVER.

¹ Decline through all the cases of both numbers. ² Give the Rule.

NOTE. — Observe (1) that in the first example, the Latin construction is the same as the English, and that the two nouns compared, *aurum* and *argentum*, are in the same case, i.e. in the Nominative, and (2) that in the second example *quam* is omitted, and that the second noun is put in the *Ablative*. This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

RULE XXIII. — Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without *QUAM* are followed by the Ablative:

*Nihil est amābilius virtūte,*¹ *nothing is more lovely THAN VIRTUE.* Cic. *Quid est melius bonitāte,*¹ *what is better THAN GOODNESS?* Cic. *Scimus sōlem māiōrem esse terrā,*¹ *we know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH *QUAM* are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimātur, *Ireland is considered smaller than BRITAIN.* Caes. *Agrīs quam urbī terribilior,* *more terrible to the country than TO THE CITY.* Liv.

NOTE. — Conjunctions are mere connectives, and are without inflection. *Quam* is a conjunction.

89. Vocabulary.

<i>Aquilēia</i> , ae, f.	<i>Aquileia</i> , a town in north-eastern Italy.
<i>Ariovistus</i> , i, m.	<i>Ariovistus</i> , a German king.
<i>Aurum</i> , i, n.	gold.
<i>Belgae</i> , ārum, m. pl.	the <i>Belgae</i> , or <i>Belgians</i> , a people of
<i>Circum</i> , prep. w. acc.	around, in the vicinity of. [Gaul.
<i>Clārus</i> , a, um,	clear, illustrious.
<i>Cōsillum</i> , li, n.	counsel, plan.
<i>Divitiacus</i> , i, m.	<i>Divitiacus</i> , a chieftain of the Aedui in
<i>Duplex</i> , duplicis,	double. [Gaul.
<i>Fēlix</i> , felīcis,	happy, fortunate.
<i>Hannibal</i> , alis, m.	<i>Hannibal</i> , a Carthaginian general.
<i>Hiemat</i> ,	he winters, passes the winter.
<i>Homō</i> , hominis, m. and f.	man, human being, person.

¹ *Virtūte* = *quam virtūs*; *bonitāte* = *quam bonitās*; *terrā* = *quam terram* (so. esse).

Infēlix, infēlicis,	<i>unhappy, unfortunate.</i>
Labiēnus, i, m.	<i>Labienus, an officer in Caesar's army in</i>
Potēns, potentis,	<i>powerful.</i> [Gaul.
Pretiōsus, a, um,	<i>precious, valuable.</i>
Quam, conj.	<i>than.</i>
Sapiēns, sapientis,	<i>wise.</i>

90. *Translate into English.*

1. Orātor clārus. 2. Orātor clārior.¹ 3. Orātor clāris-
simus. 4. Orātōrēs fuērunt clārī. 5. Orātōrēs clāriōrēs
sunt. 6. Orātōrēs clārissimī erunt. 7. Cōsul fēlix erat.
8. Cōsulēs fēlicēs sunt. 9. Caesar rēgem infēlicem superā-
vit. 10. Caesar Ariovistum rēgem superāvit. 11. Caesar
Ariovistum, infēlicem Germānōrum rēgem, superāvit. 12.
Legiō circum Aquilēiam hiemābit. 13. Hannibal infēlix
erat. 14. Jūdex sapiēns est. 15. Omnēs cīvēs jūdicem
sapientem laudant. 16. Sapientēs hominēs cīvitātem re-
gunt.

17. Caesar Labiēnum laudāvit. 18. Jūdex sapientior erat
quam rēx. 19. Turris altior est quam mūrus. 20. Cōn-
siliū clārius est quam lūx. 21. Cōnsiliū lūce clārius est.
22. Cōnsilia omnia lūce sunt clāriōra. 23. Belgae fortis-
simī sunt. 24. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.
25. Militēs nōn pūgnābunt. 26. Hostēs castra altissimō mūrō
mūnīvērunt.

91. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most
fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A
useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life.
9. The most useful lives. 10. The Gauls were brave. 11.
The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 12. The Gauls
were unfortunate. 13. The Romans conquered the unfor-
tunate Gauls. 14. King Divitiacus was very powerful. He

¹ Declined like *tristior*, 82, 154. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to 43 Rule XXXIV.

was the most powerful of all the chiefs. He was the most powerful of all the Gauls.

15. Virtue is more valuable than gold. 16. Wisdom is more useful than gold. 17. Virtue is better than wisdom. 18. The soldiers are braver than the general. 19. The wall will be double. 20. The enemy will fortify the city with a double wall. 21. The wall was very high. 22. The Gauls were fortifying the city with a very high wall.

LESSON XXXII.

NOUNS. — FOURTH DECLENSION. — FIFTH DECLENSION.

92. Lesson from the Grammar.

FOURTH DECLENSION: U NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

us—*masculine*; **ū**—*neuter*.

They are declined as follows :

Fructus, *fruit*. **Cornū**, *horn*.

		SINGULAR.	CASE-ENDINGS.	
<i>Nom.</i>	fructus	cornū	us	ū
<i>Gen.</i>	fructus	cornū	ūs	ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	fructui, ū¹	cornū	ui, ū¹	ū
<i>Acc.</i>	fructum	cornū	um	ū
<i>Voc.</i>	fructus	cornū	us	ū
<i>Abl.</i>	fructū	cornū	ū	ū
		PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	fructus	cornua	ūs	us
<i>Gen.</i>	fructuum	cornuorum	uum	uum
<i>Dat.</i>	fructibus	cornibus	ibus (ubus)²	ibus (ubus)
<i>Acc.</i>	fructus	cornua	ūs	us
<i>Voc.</i>	fructus	cornua	ūs	us
<i>Abl.</i>	fructibus	cornibus	ibus (ubus)	ibus (ubus)

¹ Thus *ui* is contracted into *ū*: *fructui, fructū*.

² The enclosed endings occur in a few words.

1. The STEM in nouns of the fourth declension ends in *u*: *fructu*, *cornu*.

2. The CASE-ENDINGS here given contain the characteristic *u*, weakened to *i* in *ibus*, but retained in *ubus*; see 1, 22.

FIFTH DECLENSION: **E** NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *ēs*—*feminine*, and are declined as follows:

	<i>Diēs, day.</i> ¹	<i>Rēs, thing.</i>	
	SINGULAR.		CASE-ENDINGS.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēi</i> or <i>diē</i>	<i>rēi</i> or <i>rē</i>	<i>ēi, ē</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēi</i> or <i>diē</i>	<i>rēi</i> or <i>rē</i>	<i>ēi, ē</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>em</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>ē</i>
	PLURAL.		CASE-ENDINGS.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rērum</i>	<i>ērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>ēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>ēbus</i>

1. The STEM of nouns of the fifth declension ends in *ē*: *diē*, *rē*.

2. The CASE-ENDINGS here given contain the characteristic *ē*, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened (1) generally in the ending *ēi* when preceded by a consonant, and (2) regularly in the ending *em*.

93. Examples. — Time.

1. *Urbem hōc tempore mūniunt.* They are AT THIS TIME fortifying the city.

2. *Sextō annō.* IN THE SIXTH YEAR.

NOTE. — Observe that *hōc tempore*, 'at this time,' and *sextō annō* 'in the sixth year' are both in the *Ablative*. This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

¹ By exception, *diēs* is usually masculine in the singular, and always in the plural.

RULE XXXI. — Time.

429. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogēsimo annō est mortuus, he died IN HIS EIGHTIETH YEAR.
Cic. Vēre convēnere, they assembled IN THE SPRING. *Liv. Nātālī diē suō, on his birthday.* *Nep.*

94. Vocabulary.

<i>Aciēs, aciēi, f.</i>	<i>edge, line of battle.</i>
<i>Adventus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>approach, arrival.</i>
<i>Avis, is, f.</i>	<i>bird.</i>
<i>Cantus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>singing.</i>
<i>Comparat,</i>	<i>he prepares, raises.</i>
<i>Cōspēctus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>sight, view.</i>
<i>Exercitus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>army.</i>
<i>Impetus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>attack, charge. [forms the line of battle.</i>
<i>Instruit,</i>	<i>he constructs, draws up; aciem instruit, he</i>
<i>Magistrātus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>magistrate, magistracy.</i>
<i>Manus, ūs, f.¹</i>	<i>hand; in manibus, in hand. [affairs.</i>
<i>Militāris, e,</i>	<i>military; rēs militāris, sing., military</i>
<i>Occāsus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>setting; sōlis occāsus, sunset.</i>
<i>Portus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>port, harbor.</i>
<i>Posterus, a, um,</i>	<i>following, next.</i>
<i>Redūcit,</i>	<i>he leads back.</i>
<i>Spēs, spēi, f.</i>	<i>hope.</i>
<i>Tenet,</i>	<i>he holds.</i>
<i>Ūsus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>use, usage, experience.</i>

95. Translate into English.

1. Sōlis² occāsus. 2. Post sōlis occāsum.³ 3. Caesaris adventū. 4. Ante adventum Caesaris. 5. Impetus hostium. 6. Impetū hostium. 7. In cōspēctū exercitūs. 8. Māgnus in rē militārī ūsus. 9. Labiēnus in exercitū Caesaris fuit. 10. Hannibal exercitum māgnū in Italiā duxit. 11. Caesar exercitūs māgnōs comparāvit. 12. In cōspēctū hostium erat.

¹ Feminine by exception.

² Genitive, according to 31, Rule XVI.

³ Used with *post*, according to 65, Rule XXXIII.

13. Puer cantum avis audiēbat. 14. Puerī cantūs avium audient. 15. Cōsul hostium exercitum nōn timēbat. 16. Cicerō cōsul opus māgnū in manibus habēbat. 17. Hostēs portum tenēbant. 18. Caesar aciem instrūxit. 19. Posterō diē aciem instrūxit. 20. Posterō diē in cōspēctū hostium aciem instrūxit. 21. Postea exercitum in castra reduxit. 22. Ariovistus sōlis occāsū exercitum in castra reduxit. 23. Hostēs adventum Caesaris expēctābant. 24. Timor omnem exercitum occupāvit.

96. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The army, the armies. 2. For the army, for the armies. 3. The arrival of the army. 4. Before the arrival of the army. 5. After the arrival of Cicero the consul. 6. After the setting of the sun. 7. Before the attack of the enemy. 8. In sight of the king. 9. The commander fears the attack of the enemy. 10. The soldiers will fight in sight of the commander. 11. The pupil is writing about the army. 12. The girl hears the singing of the bird.

13. Fear will take possession of the army. 14. Caesar led a large army into Gaul. 15. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, had a large army in Gaul. 16. The consul will hold the harbor. 17. He was awaiting the approach of Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 18. The consul has large experience in military affairs. 19. The soldiers of Ariovistus did not have large experience in military affairs.

LESSON XXXIII.

NUMERALS.

97. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS : ¹ *ūnus*, one ; *duo*, two.

2. ORDINAL NUMBERS : ¹ *primus*, first ; *secundus*, second.

3. DISTRIBUTIVES : ¹ *singulī*, one by one ; *binī*, two by two.

174. PARTIAL TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES :

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. <i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one</i>	<i>primus, first</i>	<i>singulī, one by one</i>
2. <i>duo, duae, duo, two</i>	<i>secundus, second</i>	<i>binī, two by two</i> ²
3. <i>trēs, tria, three</i>	<i>tertius, third</i>	<i>ternī (trini), three by three</i>
4. <i>quattuor, four</i>	<i>quartus, fourth</i>	<i>quaternī, four by four</i>
5. <i>quinque, five</i>	<i>quintus, fifth</i>	<i>quini, five by five</i>
6. <i>sex, six</i>	<i>sextus, sixth</i>	<i>sēni, six by six</i>
7. <i>septem, seven</i>	<i>septimus, seventh</i>	<i>septēni, seven by seven</i>
8. <i>octo, eight</i>	<i>octāvus, eighth</i>	<i>octōni, eight by eight</i>
9. <i>novem, nine</i>	<i>nōnus, ninth</i>	<i>novēni, nine by nine</i>
10. <i>decem, ten</i>	<i>decimus, tenth</i>	<i>dēni, ten by ten</i>

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. *Ūnus, Duo*, and *Trēs* are declined as follows :

Ūnus, one.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnae, ūna</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>	<i>ūnārum, ūnōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnōs</i>	<i>ūnās, ūna</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ūne</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnse, ūna</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>	<i>ūnīs</i>

Duo, two.

	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs, m. and f.</i>	<i>tria, n.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs, m. and f.</i>	<i>tria, n.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i> ³	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duōs, duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs, trīs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

¹ *Cardinals* denote simply the number of objects. *Ordinals* denote the place of an object in a series. *Distributives* denote the number of objects taken at a time.

² Or two each, two apiece.

³ Instead of *duōrum* and *duārum*, *duūm* is sometimes used.

NOTE 1. — The plural of *ūnus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun: *ūnī Ubīī*, the Ubīī alone; but in the sense of *one*, it is used only with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *ūna castra*, one camp; *ūnae litterae*, one letter.

176. The Cardinals from *quattuor*, 'four,' to *centum*, 'one hundred,' are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*; *ducentī*, *ae*, *a*, 'two hundred.'

179. Ordinals are declined like *bonus*, and distributives like the plural of *bonus*.

98. Examples. — Duration of Time.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Caecus <i>annōs</i> multōs fuit. | <i>He was blind many YEARS.</i> |
| 2. Trigintā <i>annōs</i> vixit. | <i>He lived thirty YEARS.</i> |
| 3. Fōssa quīndecim <i>pedēs</i> lāta. | <i>A moat fifteen FEET broad.</i> |

NOTE. — In these examples observe that *annōs*, 'years,' and *pedēs*, 'feet,' are in the *Accusative*. This Latin idiom¹ is expressed in the following

RULE IX. — Accusative of Time and Space.

379. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the *Accusative*:

Rōmulus septem et trigintā rēgnāvit annōs, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven YEARS*. *Liv. Quīque mīlia passuum ambulāre*, *to walk five MILES*. *Cic. Pedēs octōgintā distare*, *to be eighty FEET distant*. *Caes. Nix quattuor pedēs alta*, *snow four FEET deep*. *Liv.*

99. Vocabulary.

<i>Ā</i> , ab, prep. w. abl.	from, by.
<i>Annus</i> , i, m.	year.
<i>Celtae</i> , ārum, m. pl.	Celts, a people of Gaul.
<i>Circiter</i> , adv., and prep. w. acc.	about.
<i>Cōscribit</i> ,	he enrolls.
<i>Cyrus</i> , i, m.	Cyrus, King of Persia.
<i>Dionysius</i> , ii, m.	Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse.
<i>Duodecim</i> , indeclinable,	twelve.

¹ The English uses the *Objective* case in the same way.

Duodēquadrāgintā, indeclinable,	thirty-eight.
Meridlēs, ēī, <i>m.</i> ¹	midday, noon.
Oppidum, ī, <i>n.</i>	town.
Pars, partis, <i>f.</i>	part.
Suessiōnēs, um, <i>m. pl.</i>	Suessiones, a Gallic tribe.
Sustinet,	he sustains, withstands, resists.
Trigintā, indeclinable,	thirty.
Undecimus, a, um,	eleventh.
Usque, <i>adv.</i>	until, even ; usque ad, even to,
Vēr, vēris, <i>n.</i>	spring. [until.
Vicus, ī, <i>m.</i>	village.

100. *Translate into English.*

1. Post adventum vēris. 2. Circiter merīdiem. 3. In cōspēctū imperātōris. 4. Circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra reducet. 5. Belgae ūnam Galliae partem incolunt. 6. Celtae tertiam Galliae partem incolunt. 7. Caesar duās legiōnēs in Italiā cōscribit. 8. Trēs legiōnēs circum Aquilēiam hiēmābant. 9. Duās legiōnēs in Galliā cōscripsit. 10. Legiōnis nōnae milītēs fortiter pūgnāvērunt. 11. Duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, fortiter pūgnābant.

12. Legiōnis decimae milītēs impetum hostium fortiter sustinēbant. 13. Legiōnis octāvae milītēs in cōspēctū imperātōris impetum hostium fortiter sustinuerunt. 14. Legiōnēs sex castra mūniēbant. 15. Milītēs ab hōrā quartā usque ad sōlis occāsum fortiter pūgnāvērunt. 16. Suessiōnēs oppida duodecim habent. 17. Cyrus trigintā annōs rēgnāvit. 18. Dionysius duodēquadrāgintā annōs tyrannus fuit.

101. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The fifth day. 2. After the fifth day. 3. Five days. 4. Eight books. 5. With eight books. 6. The eighth book. 7. Before the eighth book. 8. The bravery of two soldiers. 9. By the bravery of two soldiers. 10. At that time the tenth legion was in Gaul. 11. The soldiers of the

¹ Masculine by exception.

tenth legion were brave. 12. They were the bravest of all. 13. Two legions will guard the camp. 14. Five legions will fortify the camp with a rampart.

15. The soldiers were fortifying one part of the village with a very high wall. 16. The commander was awaiting the arrival of two legions. 17. The two consuls enrolled six legions. 18. The soldiers of two legions did not have large experience in military affairs. 19. The enemy fought bravely for ten hours. 20. They held the harbor for five days.

LESSON XXXIV.

PRONOUNS.

102. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

182. In construction, Pronouns¹ are used either as Substantives : *ego*, I, *tū*, thou ; or as Adjectives : *meus*, my, *tuus*, your.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes :

1. Personal Pronouns : *tū*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns : *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns : *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns : *quī*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns : *quis*, who ?
6. Indefinite Pronouns : *aliquis*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns,² so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are :

¹ But in their signification and use, Pronouns differ widely from ordinary substantives and adjectives, as they never *name* any object, action, or quality, but simply *point out* its relation to the speaker, or to some other person or thing.

² Also called *Substantive Pronouns*, because they are always used *substantively*.

PRONOUNS.

Ego, I.	Tū, thou.	Sui, of himself, etc. ¹
SINGULAR.		
Nom. ego	tū	
Gen. mei	tui	sui ¹
Dat. mihi or mi	tibi	sibi
Acc. mē	tē	sē
Voc.	tū	
Abl. mē	tē	sē
PLURAL.		
Nom. nōs	vōs	
Gen. { nostrūm	vestrūm }	sui
{ nostri	vestri }	
Dat. nōbis	vōbis	sibi
Acc. nōs	vōs	sē
Voc.	vōs	
Abl. nōbis	vōbis	sē

2. Sui, of himself, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

4. REDUPLICATED FORMS. — *Sēsē, tētē, mēmē*, for *sē, tē, mē*.

6. CUM, when used with the *ablative* of a Personal Pronoun, is appended to it: *mēcum, tēcum*.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:²

meus, a, um, *my*; noster, tra, trum, *our*;
tuus, a, um, *thy, your*; vester, tra, trum, *your*;
suus, a, um, *his, hers, its*; suus, a, um, *their*.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are declined as follows:

¹ Of himself, herself, itself. The Nominative is not used.

² Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Vocative Singular Masculine generally *mi*, sometimes *meus*, and in the Genitive Plural sometimes *meūm* instead of *meōrum*.

I. *Hic, this, this one, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	his	his
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc ¹	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	his	his	his

II. *Iste, that, that of yours, that one, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istis	istis	istis
Acc.	istum	istum	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istis	istis	istis

III. *Ille, that, that one, he, is declined like iste.*IV. *Is, he, this, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, ii	eae	ea
Gen.	ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	ei	ei	ei	eīs, iis	eīs, iis	eīs, iis
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iis	eīs, iis	eīs, iis

V. *Ipse, self, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

¹ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

VI. *Idem, the same.*¹

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eīdem</i> <i>iīdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ēīdem</i>	<i>ēīdem</i>	<i>ēīdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eūsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>

LESSON XXXV.

PRONOUNS. — EXERCISES.

103. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Aequitās, ātis, f.</i>	<i>kindness, calmness, fairness.</i>
<i>Commemorat,</i>	<i>he mentions, speaks.</i>
<i>Commemorātiō, ōnis, f.</i>	<i>remembrance, mentioning, mention.</i>
<i>Cum, prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>with.</i>
<i>Diligentia, ae, f.</i>	<i>diligence, carefulness.</i>
<i>Dōctus, a, um,</i>	<i>learned.</i>
<i>Hīc, haec, hōc,</i>	<i>this, this one, the latter, he, she, it.</i>
<i>Humānitās, ātis, f.</i>	<i>culture, refinement.</i>
<i>Ille, illa, illud,</i>	<i>that, that one, the former, he, she, it.</i>
<i>Impedimenta, ōrum, n. pl.</i>	<i>baggage.</i>
<i>Integritās, ātis, f.</i>	<i>integrity, uprightness.</i>
<i>Iste, ista, istud,</i>	<i>that of yours, that, that one, he, she, it.</i>
<i>Longus, a, um,</i>	<i>long.</i>
<i>Portat,</i>	<i>he carries.</i>
<i>Que, conj. enclitic,²</i>	<i>and.</i>
<i>Semper, adv.</i>	<i>always.</i>
<i>Sui,</i>	<i>[of her, of it. of himself, of herself, of itself, of him,</i>

¹ *Idem*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *idem* to *idem*, and *iddem* to *idem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*.

² That is, it is always appended to some other word: *virtūs-que*, 'and virtue.' *Que* connects words that are closely related in thought or use. For conjunctions, see 88, 417, note.

Suus, a, um,

his, her, hers, its, their, theirs, his own, her own, its own, one's own.

Temperantia, ae, f.

temperance, self-control.

Tum, adv.

then.

Vocat,

*he calls, summons, invites.*104. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar Divitiacum ad sē vocāvit. 2. Exercitus noster in Galliā hiemābat. 3. Hostēs suam urbem vallō mūniēbant. 4. Galli hanc urbem vallō fossāque mūniēbant. 5. Militēs omnia impedimenta sēcum portant. 6. Pater tuus epistolam longam ad tē scribet. 7. Amicus tuus trēs epistolās ad mē scripsit. 8. Omnēs bonī vōs semper amābunt.

9. Omnēs tē laudant; omnēs dē tuā humanitāte commemorant; omnēs aequitatem tuam, temperantiam, integritatemque laudant. 10. Mē commemorātiō tuae virtūtis delectāvit. 11. Omnēs bonī omnem ā nobīs diligentiam virtutemque expectant. 12. Sapientēs hominēs illam civitatem regēbant. 13. Dōctī hominēs istam civitatem regunt. 14. Dōctī et sapientēs hominēs hanc civitatem regent. 15. Cicerō suā manū epistolam scripsit.

105. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We, you. 2. You, me, himself. 3. For you, for me, for himself. 4. Against you, against me. 5. My book, your book. 6. My books, your books. 7. This letter, that letter. 8. These letters, those letters. 9. After that victory, after those victories. 10. That legion was wintering in Italy. 11. Those legions will winter in Gaul. 12. The citizens praise you. 13. All the citizens will praise you.

14. Wise men will always praise your wisdom. 15. Good men will praise your virtue. 16. Good men will always praise your virtue and wisdom. 17. Your father wrote this letter with his own hand. 18. He has written to me. 19. The consul had five legions with him. 20. He was then in Italy. 21. The enemy are fortifying their city with a very high wall.

LESSON XXXVI.

PRONOUNS. — RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, INDEFINITE.

106. Lesson from the Grammar.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *quī*, 'who,' so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

1. *Quī* = *quō*, *quā*, 'with which,' 'wherewith,' is a *Locative* or *Ablative* of the relative *quī*.

2. *Cum*, when used with the *Ablative* of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum*.

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. The Interrogative Pronouns *quis* and *quī*, with their compounds, are used in asking questions. They are declined as follows:

I. *Quis, who, which, what?*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

II. *Quī, which, what?* is declined like the *relative quī*.

1. *QUIS* is generally used substantively, and *QUI*, adjectively. The forms *quis* and *quem* are sometimes feminine.

2. *Quī*, how? in what way? is a *Locative* or *Ablative* of the interrogative *quī*.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are *quis* and *quī*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, 'any one,' and *quī*, 'any one,' 'any,' are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *quī*. But —

1. After *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*, the Feminine Singular and Neuter Plural have *quae* or *qua*: *sī quae*, *sī qua*.

2. From *quis* and *quī* are formed —

aliquis, *aliqua*, *aliquid* or *aliquod*, *some*, *some one*.
quidam, *quaedam*, *quiddam* or *quoddam*,¹ *certain*, *certain one*.

351. AN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis loquitur, *who speaks?* Ter. *Quis nōn paupertātem extimēscit*, *who does not fear poverty?* Cic. *Quālis est orātiō*, *what kind of an oration is it?* Cic. *Quot sunt*, *how many are there?* Plaut. *Ubi sunt*, *where are they?* Cic. *Visne fortunam experiri meam*, *do you wish to try my fortune?* Cic. *Nōne nobilitārī volunt*, *do they not wish to be renowned?* Cic. *Num igitur peccāmus*, *are we then at fault?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles: *-ne*, *nōne*, *num*; see examples above.

NOTE 1. — Questions with *-ne* ask for information; *Scrībīne*, 'is he writing?'

NOTE 2. — Questions with *nōne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nōne scrībī*, 'is he not writing?'

NOTE 3. — Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scrībī*, 'is he writing?'

2. The particle *-ne* is always appended to some other word, generally to the emphatic word of the sentence, i.e. to the word upon which the question especially turns; appended to *nōn*, 'not,' it forms *nōne*:

Visne experiri, *do you wish to try?* Cic. *Tūne id veritus es*, *did you fear this?* Cic. *Om̄nisne pecūnia solūta est*, *has ALL the money*

¹ *Quidam* changes *m* to *n* before *d*: *quendam* for *quemdam*.

been paid? Cic. *Unquamne vidisti, have you EVER seen?* Cic. *Nōnne volunt, do they NOT wish?* Cic.

352. ANSWERS.—Instead of replying to a question of fact with a simple particle meaning *yes* or *no*, the Latin usually repeats the verb or some emphatic word, often with *prōrsus*, *vērō*, ‘certainly,’ ‘truly,’ and the like, or if negative, with *nōn*, ‘not.’

Dixitne causam, did he state the cause? *Dixit, he stated it.* Cic. *Possumusne tūti esse, can we be safe?* *Nōn possumus, we can not.* Cic.

353. DOUBLE or DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS offer a *choice* or *alternative*, and generally take one of the following forms:

1. The first clause has *utrum* or *-ne*, and the second an:

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, is that your fault or ours?
Cic. *Rōmamne veniō an hic maneō, do I go to Rome, or do I remain here?* Cic.

2. The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an* or *anne*:

Ēloquar an sileam, shall I utter it, or keep silence? Verg.

LESSON XXXVII.

PRONOUNS. — RULE XXXV. — EXERCISES.

107. Examples. — Agreement.

<i>Rēx quem omnēs laudant.</i>	<i>The king WHOM all praise.</i>
<i>Rēgina quam omnēs laudant.</i>	<i>The queen WHOM all praise.</i>
<i>Ilī quōs omnēs laudant.</i>	<i>Those WHOM all praise.</i>
<i>Ego quī dicō.</i>	<i>I WHO speak.</i>

NOTE. — In these examples the pronoun *quem* refers to *rēx*, called its antecedent, *quam* to its antecedent *rēgina*, *quōs* to its antecedent *ilī*, and *quī* to its antecedent *ego*. Observe that the pronoun in each instance is in the same gender and number¹ as its antecedent. Thus

¹ The case of the pronoun is determined by the construction of the clause in which it stands, and not by the case of its antecedent. Thus in these examples, though the antecedents are all in the Nominative, the pronouns *quem*, *quam*, and *quōs* are all in the Accusative as Direct Objects.

quem is in the *masculine singular*, because *rēx* is in that gender and number; *quam* in the *feminine singular* like *rēgina*; and *quōs* in the *masculine plural* like *īi*. The pronoun has also the same person as its antecedent. Thus *quem*, *quam*, and *quōs* are all in the third person, like their antecedents *rēx*, *rēgina*, and *īi*, while *qui* is in the first person, like its antecedent *ego*. This agreement of pronouns with their antecedents applies not only to relatives, but to all pronouns when used as substantives,¹ and is expressed in the following

RULE XXXV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in **GEN-
DER, NUMBER, and PERSON** :

Animal *quod sanguinem habet*, an animal WHICH has blood. Cic.
Ego, *qui tē cōfirmō*, I WHO encourage you. Cic. Vis est in vir-
tūtibus, *eās excitā*, there is strength in virtues, arouse THEM. Cic.

108. Vocabulary.

Agit,	he leads, drives, does, acts, per- forms, treats, pleads; grātias
Arma, ōrum, n. pl.	arms. [agit, he returns thanks.
Britannia, ae, f.	Britain.
Cis, prep. w. acc.	on this side of.
Cōstanter, adv.	consistently, uniformly.
Cotidiē, adv.	daily.
Dēbet,	he owes; he ought.
Dōctrīna, ae, f.	learning.
Ex, ē, prep. w. abl.	out of, from, of.
Ferē, adv.	almost.
Grātia, ae, f.	gratitude, favor; grātiae, pl.,
Locus, i, m., pl. loca, ōrum, n.	place. [thanks.
Nāvigat,	he navigates, sails.
Platō, ōnis, m.	Plato, a celebrated Greek philoso-
Quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam,	[phcr. a certain, certain one.
Reliquus, a, um,	remaining, the other, the rest of.
Rhēnus, i, m.	the Rhine.
Suprā, adv.	above.
Tempus, oris, n.	time.
Venetī, ōrum, m. pl.	the Veneti, a tribe of western Gaul.

¹ Pronouns when used as adjectives agree like other adjectives, with the nouns to which they belong, according to 43, Rule XXXIV.

109. *Translate into English.*¹

1. Gallī ea loca incolunt. 2. Gallī fortēs sunt. 3. Gallī, quī² ea loca incolunt, fortēs sunt. 4. Germānī, quī cis Rhēnum incolunt, in armīs sunt. 5. Hostēs urbem,³ dē quā² suprā scripsit Caesar, vallō fōssāque mūniēbant. 6. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs erant. 7. Hī cōstanter omnēs idem⁴ nūntiant. 8. Venetī nāvēs habent multās, quibus⁵ in Britanniam nāvigant. 9. Iī quī vōbīs omnia dēbent, vōs semper amābunt. 10. Cīvēs nōbīs grātiās cotidiē agunt.

11. Ille⁶ princeps dōctrīnae, Platō, virtūtem et sapientiam laudat. 12. Iī quī hanc cīvitātem regunt, sapientēs sunt. 13. Quid dixit? Hōc dixit. 14. Num haec dixērunt? Nōn dixērunt. 15. Omnēs ferō Belgae in armīs fuērunt. 16. Cicerō in illō ipsō librō dē amīcitiā scripsit. 17. Quid in hōc librō dē amīcitiā scripsit? 18. Quis nostra cōsilia hostibus nūntiāvit? Quidam⁷ ex cīvibus nostra cōsilia hostibus nūntiāvit.

110. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who was the king? 2. Was not⁷ Romulus king? He was.⁸ 3. Who was the leader of the Romans? Was not

¹ In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 200, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

² For *Gender* and *Number*, see 107, Rule XXXV.

³ In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What *parts of speech* do you find? What *cases*? What *mood*, *tense*, *number*, and *person*?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

⁴ Direct Object of *nūntiant*.

⁵ *Ablative of Means*. See 78, Rule XXV.

⁶ *Ille* is often thus used of what is WELL KNOWN, FAMOUS.

⁷ What *Interrogative* will you use in rendering into Latin? See 106, 351, 1, notes.

⁸ See 106, 352.

Caesar the leader of the Romans? Caesar was the leader of the Romans. 4. Did not Cicero write this book? He wrote it. 5. Did he write the book that¹ the pupils are reading? He did not write it. Caesar, who conquered the Gauls, wrote that book. 6. Cicero, who wrote these books, was at that time a very renowned orator.

7. The enemy, about whom Caesar wrote above, were Gauls. 8. The Belgae, who were at that time in arms, were the bravest of the Gauls. 9. What did Plato praise? Did he not praise learning and wisdom? He always praised virtue. 10. Who has written in regard to friendship? Cicero, the consul, wrote a book in regard to friendship.

LESSON XXXVIII.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE, AND PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE, IN CONJUGATIONS I. AND II., AND IN THE VERB *Sum*. — RULE XXXVII.

111. Lesson from the Grammar.

196. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD² expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*. It is best translated —

1. Sometimes by the English auxiliaries, *let, may, might, should, would* :

Amēmus patriam, LET US LOVE our country. Sint beātī, MAY THEY BE happy. Quaerat quispiam, some one MAY INQUIRE. Hōc nēmō dixerit, no one WOULD SAY this. Ego cēseam, I SHOULD THINK, or I AM INCLINED TO THINK.

2. Sometimes by the English *Indicative*, especially by the Future forms with *shall* and *will* :

Huic cēdāmus, SHALL WE YIELD to this one? Quid diēs ferat incertum est, what a day WILL BRING FORTH is uncertain. Quaesi- vit si licēret, he inquired whether IT WAS LAWFUL.

¹ For the Gender, Number and Case of the Latin Pronoun, see 107, Rule XXXV., and 25, Rule V.

² For the Imperative Mood, see 14, 196, III.

92 INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, IMPERATIVE.

3. Sometimes by the *Imperative*, especially in prohibitions :

Nē trānsieris Hībērum, DO NOT CROSS the *Ebro*.

4. Sometimes by the English *Infinitive* :¹

Contendit ut vincat, he strives TO CONQUER. *Missi sunt qui cōsularent Apollinem*, they were sent TO CONSULT *Apollo*.

112. Examples. — Indicative Mood.

1. *Galli ea loca incolunt.* The Gauls INHABIT those places.

2. *Hostēs urbem mūniēbant.* The enemy WERE FORTIFYING the city.

NOTE. — Observe in these examples that the verbs *incolunt*, 'inhabit,' and *mūniēbant*, 'were fortifying,' relate to *facts*. They are in the *Indicative Mood*, in accordance with the Latin usage,² expressed in the following

RULE XXXVII. — Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made (built) the world. *Cic. Nōnne expulsus est patriā*, was he not banished from his country? *Cic. Hōc fēcī dum licuit*, I did this as long as it was permitted. *Cic.*

113. Certain Forms of the Subjunctive and Imperative.

I. In the Verb *Sum*, *I am*.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PRESENT.	PLURAL.
<i>sim</i> ,	<i>may I be,</i>	<i>simus</i> ,	<i>let us be,</i>
<i>sis</i> ,	<i>mayst thou be,</i>	<i>sitis</i> ,	<i>be ye, may you be,</i>
<i>sit</i> ,	<i>let him be, may he be ;</i>	<i>simt</i> ,	<i>let them be.</i>

¹ Observe, however, that the Infinitive here is not the translation of the Subjunctive alone, but of the Subjunctive with its subject and connective : *ut vincat*, to conquer (lit., that he may conquer) ; *qui cōsularent*, to consult (lit., who should or would consult).

² All the verbs in the preceding Lessons are in the *Indicative Mood*, and are illustrations of this usage.

IMPERFECT.

<i>essem,</i>	<i>I should be,</i>	<i>essēmus,</i>	<i>we should be,</i>
<i>essēs,</i>	<i>thou wouldst be,</i>	<i>essētis,</i>	<i>you would be,</i>
<i>esset,</i>	<i>he would be;</i>	<i>essent,</i>	<i>they would be.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. es,</i>	<i>be thou,</i>	<i>este,</i>	<i>be ye.</i>
------------------	-----------------	--------------	---------------

II. In the First Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT.		PLURAL.	
<i>amem,</i>	<i>may I love,</i>	<i>amēmus,</i>	<i>let us love,</i>		
<i>amēs,</i>	<i>may you love,</i>	<i>amētis,</i>	<i>may you love,</i>		
<i>amet,</i>	<i>let him love;</i>	<i>ament,</i>	<i>let them love.</i>		

IMPERFECT.

<i>amārem,</i>	<i>I should love,</i>	<i>amārēmus,</i>	<i>we should love,</i>
<i>amārēs,</i>	<i>you would love,</i>	<i>amārētis,</i>	<i>you would love,</i>
<i>amāret,</i>	<i>he would love;</i>	<i>amārent,</i>	<i>they would love.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. amā,</i>	<i>love thou;</i>	<i>amāte,</i>	<i>love ye.</i>
-------------------	-------------------	---------------	-----------------

III. In the Second Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I advise, let him advise.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>moneam</i>	<i>moneāmus</i>
<i>moneās</i>	<i>moneātis</i>
<i>moneat</i>	<i>moneant</i>

IMPERFECT.

I should advise, he would advise.

<i>monērem</i>	<i>monērēmus</i>
<i>monērēs</i>	<i>monērētis</i>
<i>monēret</i>	<i>monērent</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. monē,</i>	<i>advise thou;</i>	<i>monēte,</i>	<i>advise ye.</i>
--------------------	---------------------	----------------	-------------------

LESSON XXXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE ACTIVE IN CONJUGATIONS I. AND II., AND IN THE VERB *Sum*. — RULES XXXVIII. AND XL. — EXERCISES.

114. *Examples. — Subjunctive and Imperative.*

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>Amēmus patriam.</i> | LET US LOVE our country. |
| 2. <i>Nē audeant.</i> | LET THEM not DARE. |
| 3. <i>Sint beāti.</i> | MAY THEY BE happy. |
| 4. <i>Iustitiam cole.</i> | PRACTISE justice. |
| 5. <i>Perge, Catilīna.</i> | Go, Catiline. |

NOTE 1. — In the first three of these examples, observe that the verbs *amēmus*, *audeant*, and *sint* all express or imply a desire or wish on the part of the speaker. These verbs are all in the Subjunctive, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XXXVIII. — Subjunctive of Desire, Command.

483. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED :

Valeant civēs, MAY the citizens BE WELL. Cic. *Amēmus patriam*, LET US LOVE our country. Cic. *Ā nōbis dīligātur*, LET HIM BE LOVED by us. Cic. *Scribere nē pigrēre*, DO not NEGLECT to write. Cic.

1. The *Subjunctive of Desire* is often accompanied by *utinam*, and sometimes, especially in the poets, by *ut*, *sī*, *ō sī* :

Utinam cōnāta efficere possim, may I be able to accomplish my endeavors. Cic. *Ut illum dī perdant*, would that the gods would destroy him. Ter.

2. FORCE OF TENSES. — The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it cannot be fulfilled:

Sint beāti, may they be happy. Cic. *Nē trānsieris Hiberum*, do not cross the *Ebro*. Liv. *Utinam pōsem*, *utinam potuissem*, would that I were able, would that I had been able. Cic.

3. NEGATIVES. — With the *Subjunctive of Desire*, the negative is *nē*, rarely *nōn*; with a connective, *nēve*, *neu*, rarely *neque* :

Nē audeant, *let them not dare*. Cic. Nōn recēdāmus, *let us not recede*. Cic. Nēve minor neu sit prōductior, *let it be neither shorter nor longer*. Hor.

NOTE 2. — In the fourth and fifth of the examples at the head of this lesson, observe that the verbs *cole* and *perge* both denote a command. They are in the *Imperative*, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XL. — Imperative.

487. The Imperative is used in COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, and ENTREATIES :

Jūstitiam cole, *practise justice*. Cic. Tū nē cēde malis, *do not yield to misfortunes*. Verg. Si quid in tē peccāvi, ignōsce, *if I have sinned against you, pardon me*. Cic.

1. The PRESENT IMPERATIVE corresponds to the Imperative in English :

Jūstitiam cole, *practise justice*. Cic. Perge, Catilina, *go, Catiline*. Cic.

115. Vocabulary.

Animus, i, m.	mind, heart, soul.
Castellum, i, n.	redoubt.
Casticus, i, m.	Casticus, a chief of the Sequani.
Cōfirmat,	he strengthens, assures, establishes.
Conjūrat,	he conspires.
Ferāx, ācis,	productive, fertile.
Frūmentārius, a, um,	pertaining to grain ; rēs frūmentāria,
Juvat,	he aids, helps, assists. [grain, supplies.
Lātus, a, um,	broad, wide, extensive.
Liber, libera, liberum,	free.
Mēns, mentis, f.	mind, intellect.
Parātus, a, um,	prepared, ready.
Pāx, pācis, f.	peace.
Perturbat,	he disturbs.
Propior, propius,	nearer ; sup. prōximus, a, um, nearest,
Quis, quae, quid or quod,	[next, adjacent. 86, 166.
indef. pron.	one, any one, anything.
Rēgnum, i, n.	kingdom, regal power.
Suspiciō, ōnis, f.	suspicion.
Utinam, interj.	O that !
Vitat,	he avoids, shuns.

116. *Translate into English.*

1. Patriam amēmus. 2. Prō patriā pūgnēmus. 3. In cōspēctū imperātōris fortiter pūgnēmus. 4. Militēs in cōspēctū imperātōris fortiter pūgnent. 5. Militēs fortēs sint; fortēs sīmus. 6. Lēgibus¹ pāreāmus. 7. Cīvēs omnēs lēgibus pāreant. 8. Patriam amāte; lēgibus pārēte. 9. Illam urbem oppūgnāte. 10. Hanc urbem oppūgnēmus. 11. Nē² Helvētiōs juvēmus. 12. Nē quis Helvētiōs juvet. 13. Suspiciōnem vitēmus. 14. Timōris suspiciōnem vitēs. 15. Omnēs suspiciōnēs vitā. 16. In³ reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitēmus. 17. Militēs castellum oppūgnent.

18. Cum his cīvitatibus⁴ amīcitiam cōfirmēmus. 19. Cum prōximis cīvitatibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfirmāte. 20. In hōc locō adventum hostium expēctēmus. 21. Hostēs in hōc locō adventum Caesaris expēctent. 22. Utinam parātus ad⁵ omnia pericula sis.⁶ 23. Utinam militēs omnēs fortēs essent.⁶ 24. Casticus rēgnum in cīvitate suā occupet. 25. Hostium impetum sustineāmus. 26. Utinam timor hostium mentēs animōsque perturbet. 27. Lātōs ferācēsque agrōs possideātis. 28. Rem frūmentāriam comparēmus. 29. Lībera sit Gallia. 30. Nē contrā patriam conjūrēmus.

117. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Let us praise the brave soldiers. 2. May they all fight bravely for themselves and for their country. 3. Let not fear take possession of our army. 4. Let not fear disturb our minds. 5. Let us await the arrival of our army. 6. Let the soldiers obey the commander. 7. Let them not fear the enemy. 8. Let us not fear the enemy. 9. Let us await them in this place.

¹ For *Case*, see 54, Rule XII.

² For the use of *nē* rather than *nōn*, see 114, 483, 3.

³ Literally *into*; render *for*.

⁴ In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *civitatibus*?

⁵ Literally *to*; render *for*. ⁶ For the force of *Tenses*, see 114, 483, 2.

10. Let us aid our friends. 11. Do not aid the enemy.
 12. May all the citizens love their country. 13. May they
 obey all the laws. 14. Let us establish friendship with the
 Romans. 15. Let the Romans establish peace with the
 Gauls. 16. Let not the soldiers conspire against the king.

LESSON XL.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE, AND
 PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE, IN CONJUGATIONS III.
 AND IV.—RULES XLI. AND XLII.

118. *Certain Forms of the Subjunctive and Imperative.*

I. In the Third Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I rule, let him rule.

SINGULAR.

regam

regās

regat

PLURAL.

regāmus

regātis

regant

IMPERFECT.

I should rule, he would rule.

regerem

regerēs

regeret

regerēmus

regerētis

regerent

IMPERATIVE.

Proa rege, rule thou ;

| regite, rule ye.

II. In the Fourth Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I hear, let him hear.

SINGULAR.

audiam

audias

audiat

PLURAL.

audiamus

audiatis

audiant

IMPERFECT.

I should hear, he would hear.

audīrem

audīrēs

audīret

audīrēmus

audīrētis

audīrent

IMPERATIVE.

Prae. audī, hear thou ;

| audīte, hear ye.

119. Examples. — Sequence of Tenses. — Subjunctive of Purpose.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Nititur ut vincat. | He strives TO CONQUER. |
| 2. Nitebatur ut vinceret. | He was striving TO CONQUER. |
| 3. Mittuntur quī (= ut ī) cōn-
sulant Apollinem. | They are sent TO CONSULT (who
may consult) Apollo. |
| 4. Missi sunt quī cōnsulerent
Apollinem. | They were sent TO CONSULT Apollo. |

NOTE 1. — In these examples observe that after a present tense, as *nititur*, *mittuntur*, the verb of the subordinate clause¹ is also *Present*, as *vincat*, *cōnsulant*,² while after a past tense, as *nitebatur*, *missi sunt*, the verb in the subordinate clause is in the *Imperfect*, as *vinceret*, *cōnsulerent*.³ This adjustment of the tense in the subordinate clause to the tense in the Principal clause¹ is in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XLI. — Sequence of Tenses.

491. Principal tenses depend upon principal tenses ;
historical upon historical :³

Nititur ut vincat, he strives to conquer.⁴ Cic. *Nēmō erit quī cēnseat*, there will be no one who will think.⁴ Cic. *Quaesierās nōnne*

¹ For *Principal* and *Subordinate* Clauses, see 14, 348, notes.

² If the verb in the Subordinate Clause denotes *completed* action, it must be in the *Perfect* after a *Present* tense, and in the *Pluperfect* after a *Past* tense. See 492, 2, and 493, 2.

³ For *Principal* and *Historical* Tenses, see 14, 198.

⁴ The *Present Subjunctive* generally denotes *present time* in relation to the principal verb. Accordingly, *vincat* depending upon the *present*, *nititur*, denotes *present time*, while *cēnseat* depending upon the *future*, *erit*, denotes *future time*.

putārem, *you had asked whether I did not think*. Cic. Ut honore dignus essem laborāvi, *I strove to be worthy of honor*. Cic.

492. In accordance with this rule, the Subjunctive dependent upon a principal tense, *present, future, future perfect*, is put —

1. In the PRESENT, to denote *incomplete action* :

Quaeritur cūr dissentiant, *the question is asked, why they disagree*. Cic. Nēmō erit qui censeat, *there will be no one who will think*. Cic.

2. In the PERFECT, to denote *completed action* :

Quaerāmus quae vitia fuerint, *let us inquire what faults there were*. Cic. Rogitabit mē ubi fuerim, *he will ask me where I have been*. Ter.

493. The Subjunctive dependent upon an historical tense, *imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect*, is put —

1. In the IMPERFECT, to denote *incomplete action* :

Timēbam nē evenirent ea, *I was fearing that those things would take place* (i.e. at some future time). Cic. Quaesierās nōne putārem, *you had inquired whether I did not think* (i.e. at that time). Cic.

2. In the PLUPERFECT, to denote *completed action* :

Themistoclēs, cum Graeciam liberasset, expulsus est, *Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece*. Cic.

NOTE 2. — In the examples given above, observe that the verbs in the Subordinate clauses, *vincat, vinceret, cōsulant, cōsulerent*, all express the *purpose* of the leading action. *He strives* (for what purpose?) *that he may conquer or to conquer*. *They are sent* (for what purpose?) *that they may consult Apollo or to consult Apollo*. These verbs are all in the *Subjunctive*, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XLII. — Purpose.

497. The Subjunctive is used to denote PURPOSE:

I. With the relative **quī**, and with relative adverbs, as **ubi, unde**, etc. :

Missi sunt quī (=ut ii) cōsulerent Apollinem, *they were sent to CONSULT Apollo* (who should, or that they should). Nep. Missi sunt delēcti quī Thermopylās occuparent, *picked men were sent to TAKE POSSESSION OF Thermopylae*. Nep. Domum, ubi habitāret, lēgit, *he selected a house where he might dwell* (that he might dwell in it). Cic.

II. With **ut, nē, quō, quōminus**:

Ēnititur ut vincat, *he strives that HE MAY CONQUER.* Cic. Pūnit nē peccētur, *he punishes that crime MAY NOT BE COMMITTED.* Sen. Lēgum idcirco servi sumus, ut liberi esse possimus, *we are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free.* Cic. Medicō dare quō sit studiōsior, *to give to the physician, that (by this means) he may be more attentive.* Cic. Nōn recūsāvit quōminus poenam subiret, *he did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep.

498. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE readily pass into *Object Clauses*,¹ but they still retain the Subjunctive.

Optō ut id audiātis, *I desire (pray) that you may hear this.* Cic. Servis imperat ut filiam dēfendant, *he commands his servants to defend his daughter.* Cic. Contendit ut vincat, *he strives to conquer.* Cic.

LESSON XLI.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE ACTIVE IN CONJUGATIONS III. AND IV. — EXERCISES.

120. Vocabulary.

Addūcit,	he leads to.
Cōgnōscit,	he ascertains.
Colloquium, li, n.	conversation, conference, interview.
Dēdūcit,	he leads forth, conducts.
Equitātus, ūs, m.	cavalry.
Imperat,	he orders.
Implōrat,	he implores.
Intellegit,	he understands.
Mulier, eris, f.	woman.
Nūntius, li, m.	messenger; tidings.
Obses, idis, m. and f.	hostage.
Pedes, itis, m.	foot-soldier; pl. foot-soldiers, infantry.
Pedius, li, m.	Pedius, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.
Populus, i, m.	people.

¹ An Object Clause is one which has become virtually the object of a verb. Thus, in '*optō ut id audiātis*,' the clause *ut id audiātis* has become the object of *optō*, 'I desire.'

Postulat,	<i>he demands.</i>
Reddit,	<i>he gives back, returns.</i>
Remanet,	<i>he remains.</i>
Rogat,	<i>he asks.</i>
Rōmānus, a, um,	<i>Roman.</i>
Trādit,	<i>he gives up, surrenders.</i>

121. *Translate into English.*

1. Militēs timōris suspiciōnem vītent. 2. Militēs ut timōris suspiciōnem vītent¹ in aciē remanent. 3. Ut timōris suspiciōnem vītārent remanēbant. 4. Suam urbem vallō fōssāque mūniant. 5. Hunc locum altissimō² mūrō mūnite. 6. Helvētiī prōximās cīvitātēs rogant ut sē juvent.³ 7. Rogābant ut sē juvārent.³ 8. Noster equitātus hostium impetum sustineat. 9. Caesar equitātum, quī sustinēret⁴ hostium impetum, misit. 10. Haec intellegātis. 11. Haec ut intellegātis, audite Rōmānōs militēs. 12. Cum populō Rōmānō pācem cōfirment.

13. Castra vallō mūnite. 14. Militibus imperāvit ut castra vallō mūnirent.⁵ 15. Lēgātī haec dīcant. 16. Galli lēgātōs mittent quī haec dīcant. 17. Haec cōgnōscite. 18. Gallis imperābat ut haec cōgnōscerent. 19. Mulierēs patrēs suōs implōrābant nē sē Rōmānis trāderent. 20. Caesar nē quem peditem ad colloquium addūcat. 21. Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret.⁶ 22. Caesar postulāvit ut Ariovistus obsidēs redderet. 23. Caesar duās legiōnēs cōscripsit, et Pedium misit quī eas in Galliam dēdūceret.⁷

¹ *Subjunctive of Purpose.* See 119, Rule XLII.

² In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *altissimō*? See 86, 162.

³ Why *juvent* in one case, and *juvārent* in the other? See 119, 492 and 493.

⁴ See Suggestion XXIV., 3.

⁵ *Ut . . . mūnirent*, an *Object Clause*. See 119, 498.

⁶ *Nē . . . addūceret*. See 119, 498.

⁷ For *Mood*, see 119, 497, I.; for *Translation*, see Suggestion XXIV., 3.

122. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Let us fortify this city with a high wall.¹ 2. Fortify your cities with moats and walls. 3. We implore you to fortify² our city with a very high wall. 4. Let us hear the words of the lieutenant. 5. The soldiers will remain to hear² the words of the lieutenant. 6. Let the soldiers remain to hear the words of the king. 7. The soldiers remained to hear the words of Caesar. 8. Let us lead the army back into camp. 9. Let us enrol three legions in Gaul. 10. The commander will send five legions to withstand³ the attacks of the enemy.

11. He sent three legions to withstand the attack of the enemy. 12. Let no one announce our plans to the enemy. 13. Will you not send a messenger to announce these things to Caesar?⁵ 14. Listen to me (*hear me*) that you may understand these things. 15. Caesar demanded that the Germans should not remain in Gaul.⁴ 16. The soldiers remained in the city that they might fortify it. 17. You asked us to help you. 18. We demand that you listen to our words. 19. Ariovistus demanded that Caesar should not help the Gauls. 20. They asked Caesar not to give them up to the Germans.

LESSON XLII.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE. —
RULE XLIII.

123. *Examples. — Subjunctive in Clauses of Result.*

1. Nōn is sum qui (=ut ego) *I am not such a one AS TO USE*
his ūlar. *these things.*
2. Ita vīxit ut esset cārissimus. *He so lived that HE WAS most dear.*

¹ In Latin, use the *Ablative of Means*. See 78, Rule XXV.

² Use *ut* with the *Subjunctive*.

³ Use the *Relative with the Subjunctive*.

⁴ That . . . in Gaul, an *Object Clause*; see 119, 498.

NOTE.—In these examples observe that the Subordinate verbs, *ûtar, esset*, express the *Result* of what is stated in the principal clause. They are in the *Subjunctive* in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XLIII. — Result.

500. The Subjunctive is used to denote RESULT:

I. With the relative *quī*, and with relative adverbs, as *ubi, unde, cūr*, etc.:

Nōn is *sum quī* (= *ut ego*) *hīs ûtar*,¹ *I am not such a one as TO USE these things.* Cic. *Innocentia est affectiō talis animi, quae* (= *ut ea*) *noceat nēminī*,¹ *innocence is such a state of mind as INJURES no one.* Cic.

II. With *ut, ut nōn, quān*:

Ita vixit ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus, he so lived that HE WAS very dear to the Athenians. Nep. *Ita laudō, ut nōn pertimēscam, I so praise as not TO FEAR.*² Cic.

501. CLAUSES OF RESULT readily pass into *Substantive Clauses*, but they still retain the Subjunctive. Thus the Subjunctive is used —

I. In SUBJECT CLAUSES:

Fit ut quisque delectētur, it happens that every one is delighted. Cic. *Sequitur ut falsum sit, it follows that it is false.* Cic.

II. In OBJECT CLAUSES:

Sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant, the sun causes all things to bloom (i. e., produces that result). Cic.

503. The Subjunctive is used in RELATIVE CLAUSES to characterize an *Indefinite* or *General Antecedent*:

Quid est quod tē delectāre possit, what is there which can delight you? Cic. *Sunt quī putent, there are some who think.* Cic. *Nēmō est quī nōn cupiat, there is no one who does not desire.* Cic.

¹ *Is quī*, literally, *he who* = 'such that I.' *Tālis quae*, literally, *such which* = 'such that it.'

² Or *that I do not fear.*

124. Vocabulary.

Barbarus, a, um,	barbarous, rude.
Commovet,	he moves, disturbs.
Compellit,	he drives.
Complūrēs, plūra or plūria,	very many, many, several.
Condōnat,	he condones, pardons, forgives.
Cōnfligit,	he contends, fights.
Contendit,	he hastens.
Continet,	he restrains, retains, confines, keeps.
Eques, itis, m.	horseman; pl. horsemen, cavalry.
Finis, is, m. and f.	end, limit; finēs, pl. m. boundaries;
Injūria, ae, f.	injury, wrong. [territory.
Ita, adv.	so, in such a way.
Littera, ae, f.	letter, letter of the alphabet; litterae, pl., letters; a letter, epistle.
Periculum, i, n.	peril, danger.
Prohibet,	he prohibits, checks, prevents, keeps.
Scit, 4,	he knows.
Silva, ae, f.	wood, forest.
Tam, adv.	so, to such an extent.
Tantus, a, um,	so great.
Tempestās, ātis, f.	weather; tempest, storm.

125. Translate into English.

1. Militēs omnēs fortissimē pūgnābant. 2. Tanta militum virtūs fuit ut omnēs fortissimē pūgnārent. 3. Timor māgnus omnem exercitum occupāvit. 4. Timor māgnus mentēs militum omnium perturbābat. 5. Omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāvit. 6. Tantus timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. 7. Caesar nōn is fuit quī hostēs timēret.¹ 8. Erant tempestātēs quae nostrōs² in castris continērent. 9. Tempestātēs hostem ā pūgnā prohibuērunt. 10. Erant complūrēs diēs³ tempestātēs quae hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent.

11. Ariovistus nōn tam barbarus fuit ut haec nōn scīret.
12. Hī nūntiī Caesarem ita commovent ut castra vallō fōs-

¹ See 123, 500.

² Lit., our, ours; render our men; a Possessive used substantively.

³ Accusative of Duration of Time. See 98, Rule IX.

sāque mūniat. 13. Hī nūntiū litteraeque Caesarem ita commovent ut in finēs Belgārum contendat. 14. Equitēs hostium cum equitātū nostrō ita cōnfligunt ut nostrī¹ eōs in silvās compellant. 15. Tanta Divitiaci apud Caesarem grātia fuit ut injūriam condōnāret. 16. Utinam in reliquum tempus timōris suspiciōnem vitētis. 17. Imperātor sex legiōnēs mīsīt quae hanc urbem oppugnārent. 18. Utinam hae cīvitatēs in armīs essent. 19. Utinam omnēs militēs nostrī fortiter pugnārent.

126. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Our soldiers fought so bravely that they conquered² the enemy. 2. The courage of our soldiers is so great that they always fight bravely, and withstand all the attacks of the enemy. 3. They are not so barbarous as not to help (*that they do not help*) their friends. 4. He is not one who (*that one who*) would announce our counsels to the enemy. 5. So great fear took possession of the commander that he led the army back into camp. 6. So great fear took possession of the Gauls that they fortified their camp with a moat and a rampart.!

7. The fear of the enemy was so great that they gave up the hostages. 8. The soldiers of the tenth legion were so brave that they did not fear the enemy. 9. Our soldiers are so brave that they are prepared for³ all dangers. 10. Fear so disturbs your minds that you do not listen to (*hear*) me. 11. For⁴ the future let us avoid all suspicions. 12. For the future our soldiers will fight so bravely that they will avoid suspicion of fear. 13. Would that all our citizens were in arms. 14. The enemy sent a large army to assault our city.

¹ See foot-note 2, page 104.

² What *Mood* will you use in Latin? See 123, Rule XLIII.

³ Use *ad*. See 116, foot-note on *ad*.

⁴ Use *in*. See 116, foot-note on *in*.

LESSON XLIII.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE. —

RULE LV.

127. Examples. — Indirect Questions.

1. Quaeris *cūr dissentiant*. You ask WHY THEY DISAGREE.
 2. Quaesivit *salvusne esset clipeus*. He asked WHETHER HIS SHIELD WAS SAFE.

NOTE. — In these examples observe that the Subordinate clauses *cūr dissentiant*, 'why they disagree,'¹ and *salvusne esset clipeus*, 'whether the (his) shield was safe,'¹ involve questions without directly asking them. Such clauses are called *Indirect Questions*. The verbs in these Indirect Questions are in the Subjunctive, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LV. — Moods in Indirect Clauses.

529. The Subjunctive is used —

I. In indirect questions:

Quaeritur, *cūr dōctissimi hominēs dissentiant*, it is a question, why the most learned men disagree. Cic. Quaesierās, *nōne putārem*, you had asked whether I did not think. Cic. Quālis sit animus, animus nescit, the soul knows not what the soul is. Cic. Quid diēs ferat incertum est, what a day will bring forth is uncertain. Cic.

II. Often in clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon another Subjunctive:

Nihil indignius est quam eum qui culpā careat supplicio nōn carere, nothing is more shameful than that he who is FREE from fault should not be exempt from punishment. Cic. Vereor nē, dum minuere velim labōrem, augeam, I fear that while I WISH to diminish the labor, I shall increase it. Cic.

3. Indirect double questions are generally introduced by the same interrogative particles as are direct double questions (106, 353).

¹ The Indirect question, *cūr dissentiant*, involves the Direct question, *Cūr dissentiunt?* 'why do they disagree?' *Salvusne esset clipeus* involves the Direct question: *Salvusne est clipeus?* 'is the shield safe?'

Thus they generally take *utrum* or *-ne* in the first member, and *an* in the second:

Quaeritur virtūs suamne propter dignitatem an propter fructūs aliquos expetatur, *it is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages.* Cic.

128. Vocabulary.

Arar, aris, ¹ m.	the Arar, a river in southeastern Gaul,
Atque, conj.	and. [the modern Saône.
Captivus, i, m.	captive.
Conducit,	he leads together.
Dēcertat,	he contends, struggles, fights.
Fluit,	it flows.
Gerit,	he carries on, does, wages.
Igitur, conj.	therefore.
Interior, ² us,	interior, inner.
Jūdicat,	he judges.
Ob, prep. w. acc.	on account of, for.
Officium, ii, n.	duty.
Proelium, ii, n.	battle, engagement.
Pudor, ōris, m.	shame, respect.
Quaerit,	he inquires, asks, seeks.
Quantus, a, um,	how great.
Quot, indeclinable,	how many.
Rēmi, ōrum, m. pl.	The Remi, a tribe of northern Gaul.
Uter, tra, trum, 42, 151, 1,	which (of two). [ence.
Valet,	he avails, prevails, has force or influ-

129. Translate into English.

1. Quae cīvitātēs in armīs sunt? Ab hīs lēgātīs quaerit quae cīvitātēs in armīs sint.³ 2. Quae cīvitātēs quantaeque⁴ in armīs sunt? Ab hīs quaerēbat quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent. 3. Quid dicit Ariovistus? Quid dicat Ariovistus cōgnōscite. Hīs lēgātīs imperāvit ut, quid diceret

¹ Accusative *Ararem* or *Ararim*, Ablative *Arare* or *Arari*.

² See 86, 166.

³ Quae . . . sint, an Indirect Question. What would be the Direct Question? For Translation, see Suggestion XXIV., 2.

⁴ Quantaeque, composed of *quantae* and the conjunction *que*, 'and.'

Ariovistus, cōgnōscerent. 4. In utram partem¹ fluit Arar? In utram partem fluat Arar jūdicēmus.

5. Quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertat? Caesar ex captivīs quaerēbat quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret. 6. Omnem exercitum in ūnum locum condūcāmus. 7. Nōne pudor apud vōs valet? Num apud vōs timor valet? Utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor valet? Intellegāmus utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor valeat. 8. Quid gerunt Belgae? 9. Quid gerēbant Belgae? Imperātor sciēbat quid gererent Belgae. 10. Trēs legiōnēs igitur in interiōrem Galliam mittat.

130. *Translate into Latin.*

1. For what reason are the Gauls fortifying their cities? Let us ascertain for what reason the Gauls are fortifying² their camp. 2. Let us inquire of the ambassadors how many Germans there are in Gaul. 3. Caesar knew how many Germans there were in Gaul. 4. Let us inquire of the captives how many states of Gaul are in arms. 5. Did Caesar know how many states of Gaul were in arms? He knew which states were in arms. 6. Inquire in which direction the Rhine flows.

7. Caesar knew how large the states of Gaul were. He ascertained how brave the Belgians were. He knew who were the bravest of all the Gauls. 8. The Gauls did not understand who their enemies were. So great fear took possession of the Gauls that they did not understand who their enemies were.³ 9. He inquired of the captives into what place Ariovistus was leading his army. 10. Caesar knew whether⁴ valor or fear prevailed among his soldiers. 11. He demanded that the Remi should ascertain what the Belgians were doing.

¹ *Partem*, lit. *part*; render *direction*.

² What *Mood* will you use in the Latin? See 127, 529, I.

³ For *Moods*, see 123, Rule XLII., and 127, Rule LV.

⁴ For *Interrogative Particles*, see 127, 529, 3.

LESSON XLIV.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE. — RULE LVI.

131. The *Present Infinitive*¹ of the verb *Sum* is *esse*, 'to be.' In the four conjugations, the *Present Infinitive Active* has the following

ENDINGS.

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
āre,	ēre,	ere,	īre.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

<i>First conjugation,</i>	<i>amāre, to love.</i>
<i>Second conjugation,</i>	<i>monēre, to advise.</i>
<i>Third conjugation,</i>	<i>regere, to rule.</i>
<i>Fourth conjugation,</i>	<i>audire, to hear.</i>
<i>Verb sum,</i>	<i>esse, to be.</i>

132. Examples. — Infinitive.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. Haec vitāre cupit. | <i>He desires TO AVOID these things.</i> |
| 2. Vincere scit. | <i>He knows how TO CONQUER.</i> |
| 3. Gestiunt scire omnia. | <i>They long TO KNOW all things.</i> |

NOTE. — In these examples observe that *vitāre* depends upon the verb *cupit*, 'he desires to avoid,' *vincere* upon *scit*, and *scire* upon *gestiunt*. They are all in the infinitive, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LVI. — Infinitive.

533. Many verbs admit an Infinitive to complete or qualify their meaning:

Audeō dicere, *I dare say* (I venture to say). Cic. Haec vitāre cupimus, *we desire to avoid these things*. Cic. Cōstituit nōn prōgredi, *he decided not to advance*. Caes. Crēduli esse coepērunt, *they began to be credulous*. Cic. Vincere scīs, *you know how to conquer* (you know to conquer). Liv. Victōriā ūti nescīs, *you do not know how to use victory*. Liv. Latīnē loqūi didicerat, *he had learned*

¹ For the *Infinitive*, see 14, 200, I.

to speak Latin. Sall. Dēbēs hōc rescribere, *you ought to write this in reply*. Hor. Nēmō mortem effugere potest, *no one is able to escape death*. Cic. Solent cōgitāre, *they are accustomed to think*. Cic.

133. In the Irregular verb *Possum*, 'I am able,' a compound of *Sum*,¹ the THIRD PERSON in the singular and plural of the present, imperfect, future, and perfect of the indicative has the following forms :

SINGULAR.	PARADIGM.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres. potest, he is able ;</i>		<i>possunt, they are able.</i>
<i>Imp. poterat, he was able ;</i>		<i>poterant, they were able.</i>
<i>Fut. poterit, he will be able ;</i>		<i>poterunt, they will be able.</i>
<i>Perf. potuit, he has been able ;</i>		<i>potuerunt, they have been able.</i>

134. Vocabulary.

Altitudō, inis, <i>f.</i>	<i>height, depth.</i>
Autem, <i>conj.</i>	<i>but.</i>
Citerior, ius, 86, 166,	<i>nearer ; citerior Gallia, Cisalpine Gaul, the Roman province of Gaul.</i>
Cōgit,	<i>he drives together, brings together, collects ; he forces, compels.</i>
Comportat,	<i>he brings together, gathers.</i>
Cōstituit,	<i>he determines.</i>
Diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>for a long time.</i>
Dubitat,	<i>he hesitates, doubts.</i>
Expūgnat,	<i>he takes by storm.</i>
Frūmentum, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>grain.</i>
Ibi, <i>adv.</i>	<i>there.</i>
Italia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Italy.</i>
Lātitudō, inis, <i>f.</i>	<i>width, thickness.</i>
Mātūrat,	<i>he hastens.</i>
Potest,	<i>he is able, can.</i>
Propter, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	<i>on account of.</i>
Renovat,	<i>he renews.</i>
Vastat,	<i>he lays waste.</i>
Venetia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Venetia, the country of the Veneti.</i>
Vērō, <i>adv.</i>	<i>in truth, indeed ; as conj., but.</i>

¹ Compounded of *potis*, 'able,' and *sum*, 'I am.' *Potis* is shortened to *pot*, which becomes *pos* before *s* : *pot-est*, *pos-sunt*, for *pot-sunt*.

135. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar hęc oppidum propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem expugnāre nō poterat. 2. Hostēs impetum nostrōrum militum diūtius sustinēre nō poterant. 3. Gallī adventum Rōmānōrum ibī exspectāre cōstituērunt. 4. Militēs omnia impedimenta sēcum¹ portāre dēbent. 5. Militēs sēsē² diūtius sustinēre nō poterant. 6. Caesar autem castra in altitudinem pedum³ duodecim vallō mūnīre cōstituit. 7. Imperātor hanc urbem māgnam oppugnāre nō dubitāvit.

8. Imperātor hunc locum altissimō mūrō mūnīre dēbet. 9. Venetī cōstituērunt oppida mūnīre, frumenta ex agrīs in oppida comportāre, nāvēs in Venetiam cōgere. 10. Tum vērō Caesar manūs māgnās cōgere cōstituit. 11. Gallī multis dē causīs bellum renovāre cōstituērunt. 12. Rōmānī agrōs nostrōs vastāre nō dēbent. 13. Imperātor duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōscribere mātūrāvit. 14. Hostēs omnem exercitum in ūnum locum condūcere mātūrāvērunt.

136. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are the enemy able to take our city by storm? They can (*are able to*) attack the city, but on account of the valor of the citizens, and the height of the wall, they cannot take it by storm. 2. Caesar hastened to fortify his camp. 3. The soldiers determined to remain and avoid suspicion of fear. 4. The Romans determined to fortify their camp with a rampart. 5. They determined to enrol five legions in Italy. 6. Were the Helvetii able to take their grain with them.⁴ They were not able to take all their grain with them.

¹ Observe that the preposition *cum* is appended to the pronoun *sē*. See 102, 184, 6.

² Reduplicated form of the pronoun. See 102, 184, 4.

³ Construe with *vallō*.

⁴ See 102, 184, 6.

7. The enemy are so brave that they do not hesitate¹ to renew the war. 8. Ought not the commander to ascertain what states are in arms?² He has not been able to ascertain what states are in arms. 9. The enemy will not be able to sustain the attacks of our soldiers. 10. The citizens did not hesitate to remain in Italy. 11. Let not the commander hesitate to fortify the city with a high wall. 12. The soldiers ought not to hesitate to remain in line, that they may avoid suspicion of fear.

LESSON XLV.

READING AT SIGHT. — DIRECTIONS. — EXERCISE.

137. *Directions for Reading at Sight.*

I. Read at Sight in the Latin, slowly and attentively, the entire passage that is assigned for the exercise. In this reading

1. Remember that the full and exact meaning of an inflected word contains two distinct elements.

1) The *general meaning* of the word, without reference to *case, number, mood, tense*, etc., that is, the meaning of the **STEM**. See 10, 46.

2) The meaning of the endings which mark *case, number, mood, tense*, etc., that is, the meaning of the **SUFFIXES**.

2. Recall as vividly as possible the exact meaning of all the words which you recognize.

3. Notice carefully the *ending* of each word, and thus determine which words are nouns, which verbs, etc.

4. Determine from these endings *case, number, voice, mood, tense*, etc., and endeavor to recall the exact force of each.

¹ What *Mood* will you use in rendering into Latin? See 123, 500, II.

² By what *Mood* will you render *are*? See 127, 529, I.

5. In Complex and Compound Sentences, observe carefully the relation of the clauses to one another, and determine which are *principal*,¹ and which are *subordinate*.¹ Remember that a clause introduced by a conjunction meaning *and*, *or*, *but*, *therefore*, adds a new thought, while a clause introduced by a conjunction meaning *when*, *since*, etc., only explains or modifies some other clause.

II. Having by this first reading acquired a good general idea of the entire passage, read a second time with the same care. If in this reading, any word should appear unfamiliar, endeavor to recall some passage in which you have previously met it. Be not hasty in turning to the passage, but use the knowledge which you already possess. As a last resort, if you fail to recall the word, turn to the vocabulary for it, and make yourself so familiar with it, that you will always recognize it in future.

III. Having by these two readings thoroughly mastered the entire passage, read the Latin aloud two or three times, for the important purpose of appreciating and enjoying the thought in its original form. By this practice the Latin will become, in time, a second vernacular, and you will enjoy reading a fine passage in Latin as you would enjoy reading one in English.

IV. After having thus read and examined the Latin, write a translation² of the passage in good idiomatic English.

138. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*³

Omnēs ferē Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāvērunt. Caesar igitur duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā con-

¹ On *Principal* and *Subordinate Clauses*, see 14, 348, notes.

² On Translation, see Suggestions XIX. to XXVI.

³ It is hoped that the pupil will enter upon this exercise with the determination to master it without help from any source. He has already had in previous lessons *every word* and *every construction* contained in it. The

scripsit et in interiorem Galliam quī dēdūceret Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse postea ad exercitum contendit et Gallis imperavit ut quid Belgae gererent cōgnōscerent. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt: "Belgae manūs māgnās cōgunt, et omnem exercitum in ūnum locum condūcunt." Tum vērō Caesar rem frūmentāriam comparāvit et ad finēs Belgārum contendit. Rēmī autem quī nōn in armīs erant, ad eum lēgātōs mīsērunt quī cum populō Rōmānō pācem et amīcitiā cōfirmārent, et dicerent: "Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt."

139. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Remi did not conspire against the Roman people. All the rest of the Belgae did not hesitate to conspire against the Romans. 2. Caesar enrolled many legions in Italy and Gaul. He determined to send a lieutenant to conduct¹ two legions into the interior of² Gaul. 3. The Remi hastened to establish peace and friendship with the Roman people. They will announce to the Romans what the rest of² the Belgae are doing.

4. Caesar determined to hasten to the army and to ascertain what the Gauls were doing. 5. The tidings so disturbed the commander that he hastened to enrol soldiers and to fortify his camp. 6. Let us prepare supplies of grain and hasten toward the territory of the enemy. 7. Caesar ordered Pedius, the lieutenant, to conduct the legions into Gaul. 8. The Belgae determined to collect large bands of men. 9. The commander determined to send five legions to withstand¹ the attack of the enemy.

important point is, not that he should translate it absolutely at sight, but that he should master it entirely by means of his own resources. These exercises in Reading at Sight are intended to encourage independent work, to promote self-reliance in study, and to give facility in reading and appreciating Latin.

¹ What *Mood* should be used in rendering into Latin? See 119, 497, I.

² What is the Latin idiom for *the interior of, the rest of*?

LESSON XLVI.

VERB *Sum* IN FULL.

140. Lesson from the Grammar.

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations. These Four Conjugations are distinguished from one another by the stem characteristics or by the endings of the Infinitive, as follows:

	CHARACTERISTICS.	INFINITIVE ENDINGS.
CONJ. I.	ā	ā-re
II.	ē	ē-re
III.	e	e-re
IV.	i	i-re

202. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.¹

1. SUM, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset. The Principal Parts are —

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.
Sum, <i>I am</i> ,	esse, <i>to be</i> ,	fuī, <i>I have been</i> .

¹ In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings which distinguish the various forms are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed. In the principal tenses each ending contains the characteristic vowel.

204. *Sum, I am.*—STEMS, *es, fu.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.
*sum,*PRES. INF.
*esse,*PRES. IND.
*fuī,*SUPINE.¹
—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT TENSE.	PLURAL.	
<i>sum,</i> ²	<i>I am,</i>	<i>sumus,</i>	<i>we are,</i>	
<i>es,</i>	<i>thou art,</i> ²	<i>estis,</i>	<i>you are,</i>	
<i>est,</i>	<i>he is ;</i>	<i>sunt,</i>	<i>they are.</i>	
		IMPERFECT.		
<i>eram,</i>	<i>I was,</i>	<i>erāmus,</i>	<i>we were,</i>	
<i>erās,</i>	<i>thou wast,</i> ²	<i>erātis,</i>	<i>you were,</i>	
<i>erat,</i>	<i>he was ;</i>	<i>erant,</i>	<i>they were.</i>	
		FUTURE.		
<i>erō,</i> ⁴	<i>I shall be,</i> ⁵	<i>erimus,</i>	<i>we shall be,</i>	
<i>eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	<i>eritis,</i>	<i>you will be,</i>	
<i>erit,</i>	<i>he will be ;</i>	<i>erunt,</i>	<i>they will be.</i>	
		PERFECT.		
<i>fuī,</i>	<i>I have been,</i> ⁵	<i>fuimus,</i>	<i>we have been,</i>	
<i>fuisti,</i>	<i>thou hast been,</i>	<i>fuistis,</i>	<i>you have been,</i>	
<i>fuit,</i>	<i>he has been ;</i>	<i>fuerunt,</i>	<i>they have been.</i>	
		<i>fuerē,</i>		
		PLUPERFECT.		
<i>fueram,</i>	<i>I had been,</i>	<i>fuerāmus,</i>	<i>we had been,</i>	
<i>fuerās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	<i>fuerātis,</i>	<i>you had been,</i>	
<i>fuerat,</i>	<i>he had been ;</i>	<i>fuerant,</i>	<i>they had been.</i>	
		FUTURE PERFECT.		
<i>fuerō,</i>	<i>I shall have been,</i>	<i>fuerimus,</i>	<i>we shall have been,</i>	
<i>fueris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	<i>fueritis,</i>	<i>you will have been,</i>	
<i>fuerit,</i>	<i>he will have been ;</i>	<i>fuerint,</i>	<i>they will have been.</i>	

¹ The Supine is wanting.² *Sum* is for *esum, eram* for *esam*. Whenever *s* of the stem *es* comes between two vowels, *s* is dropped, as in *sum, sunt*, or *s* is changed to *r*, as in *eram, erō*; see 1, 31. The pupil will observe that the endings which are added to the roots *es* and *fu* are distinguished by the type.³ Or *you are*, and in the Imperfect, *you were*; *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.⁴ In verbs, final *o*, marked *ō*, is generally long.⁵ Or, Future, *I will be*; Perfect, *I was*.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT.	PLURAL.
<i>sim,</i>	<i>may I be,¹</i>	<i>simus,</i>	<i>let us be,</i>
<i>sis,</i>	<i>mayst thou be,²</i>	<i>sitis,</i>	<i>be ye, may you be,</i>
<i>sit,</i>	<i>let him be, may he be ;</i>	<i>sint,</i>	<i>let them be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>essem,</i>	<i>I should be,¹</i>	<i>essemus,</i>	<i>we should be,</i>
<i>esses,</i>	<i>thou wouldst be,</i>	<i>essetis,</i>	<i>you would be,</i>
<i>esset,</i>	<i>he would be ;</i>	<i>essent,</i>	<i>they would be.</i>

PERFECT.

<i>fueroim,</i>	<i>I may have been,¹</i>	<i>fueroimus,</i>	<i>we may have been,</i>
<i>fuerois,</i>	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	<i>fueroitis,</i>	<i>you may have been,</i>
<i>fueroit,</i>	<i>he may have been ;</i>	<i>fueroint,</i>	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>fuissem,</i>	<i>I should have been,</i>	<i>fuissemus,</i>	<i>we should have been,</i>
<i>fuissets,</i>	<i>thou wouldst have been,</i>	<i>fuissetis,</i>	<i>you would have been,</i>
<i>fuisset,</i>	<i>he would have been ;</i>	<i>fuisSENT,</i>	<i>they would have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. es,</i>	<i>be thou,</i>	<i>este,</i>	<i>be ye.</i>
<i>Fut. esto,</i>	<i>thou shalt be,²</i>	<i>estote,</i>	<i>ye shall be,</i>
	<i>esto, he shall be ;²</i>	<i>suntote,</i>	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres. esse,</i>	<i>to be.</i>
<i>Perf. fuisse,</i>	<i>to have been.</i>
<i>Fut. futurus esse,⁴</i>	<i>to be about</i>
	<i>to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

Fut. futurus,⁴ about to be.

1. In the Paradigm all the forms beginning with *e* or *s* are from the stem *es* ; all others from the stem *fu*.³

2. RARE FORMS :—*forem, forēs, foret, forent, fore, for essem, esses, esset, essent, futurus esse ; siem, siēs, siet, sient, or fuam, fuds, fuat, fuant, for sim, sis, sit, sint.*

¹ On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196, and remember that it is often best rendered by the Indicative. Thus, *sim* may often be rendered *I am*, and *fueroim*, *I have been*.

² Or *be thou*, or *may you be*.

³ The *Fut.* may also be rendered like the *Pres.*, or with *let* : *be thou ; let him be*.

⁴ *Futurus* is declined like *donus*. So in the Infinitive : *futurus, a, um esse*.

⁵ *Es* and *fu* are roots as well as stems. As the basis of this paradigm they are properly stems, but as they are not derived from more primitive forms, they are in themselves roots.

LESSON XLVII.

VERB SUM. — RULE XIV. — EXERCISES.

141. *Examples.* — *Dative with Adjectives.*

Patria omnibus cāra est. Native country is dear TO ALL.

Pāx nobis grāta fuit. Peace was acceptable TO US.

NOTE. — Observe in these examples that *omnibus*, limiting the meaning of *cāra*, 'dear,' and *nobis* that of *grāta*, 'acceptable,' are both in the *Dative*. This Latin usage is expressed in the following

RULE XIV. — *Dative with Adjectives.*

391. With adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the *Dative* :

Patriae solum omnibus cārum est, the soil of their country is dear TO ALL. Cic. *Id aptum est temporī,* this is adapted TO THE TIME. Cic. *Canis similis lupō est,* a dog is similar to a wolf. Cic.

142. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Continenter, adv.</i>	<i>continually, incessantly.</i>
<i>Divicō, ōnis, m.</i>	<i>Divico, an Helvetian chieftain.</i>
<i>Flūmen, inis, n.</i>	<i>stream, river.</i>
<i>Lēgātīō, ōnis, f.</i>	<i>embassy.</i>
<i>Longē, adv.</i>	<i>by far, far, long.</i>
<i>Nōbilis, e,</i>	<i>noble, of high birth.</i>
<i>Omninō, adv.</i>	<i>in all, only.</i>
<i>Orgetorix, igis, m.</i>	<i>Orgetorix, an Helvetian chieftain.</i>
<i>Pār, paris,</i>	<i>equal, a match for.</i>
<i>Pōns, pontis, m.</i>	<i>bridge.</i>
<i>Rhodanus, ī, m.</i>	<i>the Rhone.</i>
<i>Sēquanus, a, um,</i>	<i>Sequanian, pertaining to the</i>
<i>Testis, is, m. and f.</i>	<i>witness. [Sequani.¹</i>
<i>Tōtus,² a, um,</i>	<i>all, the whole of. [Gaul.³</i>
<i>Ūterior, us,² adj. comp.</i>	<i>farther; Gallia ūterior, Transalpine</i>

¹ In the eastern part of Gaul.

² See 42, 151, and 86, 166.

³ That is, Gaul beyond the Alps from Rome, Gaul west of the Alps.

143. *Translate into English.*

1. Belgae, quī Gallōrum¹ omnium fortissimī erant, cum Germānis continenter bellum gerēbant. 2. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt, cūjus² lēgātīōnis Divicō princeps fuit. 3. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. 4. Fuerat omnīnō in Galliā ūteriōre legiō ūna. 5. Ad bellum parātī sīmus. 6. Legiōnēs multās cōscripsit ut ad bellum parātus esset.³

7. Hūjus rēi populus Rōmānus sit testis. 8. Ager Sēquanus erat optimus tōtīus Galliae. 9. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, tertiam partem agrī Sēquanī occupāvit. 10. In⁴ eō flūmine pōns erat. 11. Militēs omnēs fortēs esse dēbent. 12. Hostēs parēs esse nostrō exercitū⁵ nōn poterant.

144. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You shall be chief of the embassy which the citizens are sending to the enemy. 2. You are the bravest of all the soldiers. 3. Who will be braver than this soldier? 4. Let us all be brave. 5. Did he not say that all the Gauls were in arms? He says that all the Gauls will be in arms. 6. Caesar was in Italy, but his legions were in Gaul. 7. The Helvetii said: "We are the bravest of the Gauls."

8. The Gauls had always been prepared for war. 9. Shall you be prepared to withstand the attack of the enemy? 10. Let us be brave, that we may be prepared to withstand the attacks of the enemy. 11. Were the Gauls a match for the Romans? They were not a match for the Roman soldiers. 12. Near the city there was a bridge over the Rhone.⁶

¹ Gallōrum is a Partitive Genitive, governed by fortissimī used substantively, according to Rule XVI.; see 31, 397.

² Cūjus is here an adjective, agreeing with lēgātīōnis, according to Rule XXXIV.; see 43.

³ Why in the *Subjunctive*, and why in the *Imperfect*? See 119, Rules XLI. and XLII.

⁴ Render *over*, and observe the difference of idiom between the Latin and the English. ⁵ Why in the *Dative*? See 141, Rule XIV.

⁶ Latin idiom, in the *Rhone*.

LESSON XLVIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

145. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō* learn the Indicative Mood of the Active voice. See page 124.

LESSON XLIX.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. —
EXERCISES.146. *Vocabulary.*

Acceptus, a, um,	acceptable.
Aedui, ōrum, m. pl.	the Aedui, Aeduans, a tribe of
Amicus, a, um,	friendly. [central Gaul.
Auxillium, ii, n.	aid.
Collocō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to place, station.
Divitiacus, i, m.	Divitiacus, an Aeduan chieftain.
Dumnorix, igit, m.	Dumnorix, an Aeduan chieftain.
Ēdūcit,	he leads out.
Finitimus, a, um,	neighboring.
Graecia, ae, f.	Greece.
Graviter, adv.	severely.
Hiberna, ōrum, n. pl.	winter quarters.
Jam, adv.	already.
Māximē, sup. adv.	most, very greatly.
Mōns, montis, m.	mountain.
Plēbs, plēbis, f.	the common people, populace.
Profectiō, ōnis, f.	departure, starting.
Senātus, ūs, m.	senate.
Trāns, prep. w. acc.	across, beyond. [Gaul.
Trēveri, ōrum, m. pl.	the Treveri, a tribe of northeastern

147. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar exercitum in hibernis collocāvit. 2. Helvētīi in tertium annum¹ profectionem lēge² cōfirmant. 3. Cum

¹ In tertium annum, lit. 'into the third year'; render *for* or *upon the third year*.

² See 78, Rule XXV.

multis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmaverant. 4. Caesar Aeduorum principes, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, graviter accusavit. 5. Fugitivi hostibus¹ eam rem nuntiaverunt. 6. Omnes auxilium a populo Romano implorabant. 7. Divitiacus Aeduus maxime plebi acceptus erat. 8. Belgae proximi sunt Germanis qui trans Rhenum incolunt. 9. Treveri proximi flumini Rheno fuerunt.

10. Caesar tres legiones quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant ex hibernis eduxit. 11. Tum in Gallia hiemabamus. 12. Auxilium a Caesare imploraveramus. 13. Num nostra consilia hostibus nuntiavisti? Non vestra consilia hostibus nuntiavi. 14. Principes Aeduorum graviter accusavistis. 15. Pro patria fortiter pugnabimus. 16. Nonne timoris suspicionem vitabis. In reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitabo. 17. Helvetii frumentum secum² portabunt. 18. Helvetii jam agros vastaverant et oppida expugnabant.

148. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will this judge be acceptable to you? He will be acceptable to me and to all the citizens. 2. Have you announced this battle to the consul?³ I have announced it to the consul and to the senate. 3. Shall you pass the winter in Italy? We shall pass the winter in Greece. 4. The commander will place his whole army in winter quarters in Gaul, and pass the the winter himself in Italy.

5. We hastened to establish peace and friendship with the neighboring states. 6. Did you not implore aid from your friends? We implored aid from all our friends. 7. You have severely censured the commander himself. 8. The Remi were friendly to the Romans. 9. Of all the Gauls the Helvetii were the nearest to the Germans, with whom⁴ they were continually waging war.

¹ Explain the construction; 54, Rule XII.

² See 102, 184, 6.

³ For the proper construction, see 54, Rule XII.

⁴ With whom. See 106, 187, 2.

LESSON L.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. — REVIEW
OF DECLENSIONS I. AND II. — RULE XXXI.

149. Vocabulary.

Absum, abesse, āfui,	to be absent, distant.
Collis, is, m.	hill.
Convocō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to call together, assemble.
Fuga, ae, f.	flight.
Movet,	he moves.
Nox, noctis, f.	night.
Occultō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to hide.
Praesidium, ii, n.	garrison.
Septimus, a, um,	seventh.
Subducit,	he withdraws, leads off.
Tentō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to try.

150. Translate into English.

1. Rōmānī Helvētiōs superābunt. 2. Eō tempore¹ Helvētiī adventum Caesaris expēctābant. 3. Aeduī bellī fortūnam tentāverunt. 4. Nox fugam hostium nōn occultāvit. 5. Ariovistus eās omnēs cōpiās ūnō proeliō superāvit. 6. Prōximō diē Caesar ē castrīs cōpiās ēduxit. 7. Nōne hōc proelium imperātōrī nūntiāvistī? 8. Hōc proelium imperātōrī nūntiābō. 9. Num bellum renovābitis? Multis dē causis² bellum renovābimus.

10. Caesar principēs Aeduōrum convocāvit et graviter eōs accūsāvit. 11. Septimō diē Ariovistī cōpiae ā nobīs nōn longē aberant. 12. Prōximā nocte castra movēbāmus. 13. Imperātōr castra movet ut intellegat³ utrum apud milites pudor atque officium an timor valeat.³ 14. Caesar hōc

¹ For construction, see 93, Rule XXXI.

² Literally, from or out of many causes; render for many reasons.

³ Explain Mood; 119 and 127, Rules XLII. and LV.

oppidum occupāvit et ibī praesidium collocāvit. 15. Suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subducit.

151. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar was at that time praising the soldiers of the tenth legion. 2. He had often praised the valor of that legion. 3. On what day did you renew the war? We renewed the war on the tenth day. 4. On which day did the ambassadors announce to you the flight of the enemy? They announced it to us on the same day. 5. Caesar had called together the chiefs of the Aedui, that he might upbraid¹ them. 6. Have you called us together at this time, that you may upbraid us? I have called you together that I may praise your valor, and that I may announce to you the approach of the enemy.

7. For what reason² did you renew the war at that time? We renewed the war that we might conquer the enemy. 8. At that time we were awaiting the arrival of the general. 9. On the next night the Gauls seized the town. 10. We shall conquer in a single battle³ all the forces of the enemy. 11. On the seventh day we shall have placed a garrison in the town, and on the next day we shall try the fortune of war.

LESSON LI.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
REVIEW OF DECLENSION III.

152. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō*, learn the Active voice in full. See the following page.

¹ For Mood and Tense, see 119, Rules XLI. and XLII.

² For *what reason*; see note on *multis dē causis*, 150.

³ In a single battle; Latin idiom, *BY a single battle*.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

205. ACTIVE VOICE.—Amō, *I love.*VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, amā.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PRES. IND.	SUPINE.
amō,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT TENSE.	
			PLURAL.
amō, ¹	<i>I love,²</i>	amāmus,	<i>we love,</i>
amās,	<i>you love,²</i>	amātis,	<i>you love,</i>
amat,	<i>he loves;</i>	amant,	<i>they love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

amābam,	<i>I was loving,</i>	amābamus,	<i>we were loving,</i>
amābās,	<i>you were loving,</i>	amābātis,	<i>you were loving,</i>
amābat,	<i>he was loving;</i>	amābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

FUTURE.

amābō,	<i>I shall love,⁴</i>	amābimus,	<i>we shall love,</i>
amābis,	<i>you will love,</i>	amābitis,	<i>you will love,</i>
amābit,	<i>he will love;</i>	amābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

PERFECT.

amāvī,	<i>I have loved,⁵</i>	amāvimus,	<i>we have loved,</i>
amāvisti,	<i>you have loved,</i>	amāvistis,	<i>you have loved,</i>
amāvit,	<i>he has loved;</i>	amāverunt, ēre,	<i>they have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

amāveram,	<i>I had loved,</i>	amāverāmus,	<i>we had loved,</i>
amāverās,	<i>you had loved,</i>	amāverātis,	<i>you had loved,</i>
amāverat,	<i>he had loved;</i>	amāverant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverō,	<i>I shall have loved,⁴</i>	amāverimus,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
amāveris,	<i>you will have loved,</i>	amāveritis,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
amāverit,	<i>he will have loved;</i>	amāverint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

¹ The final *ā* of the stem disappears in *amō* for *ama-ō*, *amem*, *amīs*, etc., for *ama-im*, *ama-is*, etc. Also in the Pass. in *amor* for *ama-or*, *amer*, etc., for *ama-tr*, etc. Final *o*, marked *ō*, is generally long.

² Or *I am loving, I do love.* So in the Imperfect, *I loved, I was loving, I did love.*

³ Or *thou lovest.* So in the other tenses, *thou wast loving, thou wilt love*, etc.

⁴ Or *I will love.* So in the Future Perfect, *I shall have loved* or *I will have loved.*

⁵ Or *I loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT.	PLURAL.
amem,	<i>may I love,¹</i>	amēmus,	<i>let us love,</i>
amēs,	<i>may you love,</i>	amētis,	<i>may you love,</i>
amet,	<i>let him love ;</i>	ament,	<i>let them love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

amārem,	<i>I should love,</i>	amārēmus,	<i>we should love,</i>
amārēs,	<i>you would love,</i>	amārētis,	<i>you would love,</i>
amāret,	<i>he would love ;</i>	amārent,	<i>they would love.</i>

PERFECT.

amāverim,	<i>I may have loved,²</i>	amāverimus,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
amāveris,	<i>you may have loved,</i>	amāveritis,	<i>you may have loved,</i>
amāverit,	<i>he may have loved ;</i>	amāverint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissē,	<i>I should have loved,</i>	amāvissēmus,	<i>we should have loved,</i>
amāvissēs,	<i>you would have loved,</i>	amāvissētis,	<i>you would have loved,</i>
amāvisset,	<i>he would have loved ;</i>	amāvissent,	<i>they would have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. amā,	<i>love thou ;</i>	amāte,	<i>love ye.</i>
Fut. amātō,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>	amātōte,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
amātō,	<i>he shall love ;</i>	amantō,	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres. amāre,	<i>to love.</i>
Perf. amāvisse,	<i>to have loved.</i>
Fut. amātūrus³ esse,	<i>to be about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. amāns,⁴	<i>loving.</i>
Fut. amātūrus,³	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. amandī,	<i>of loving,</i>
Dat. amandō,	<i>for loving,</i>
Acc. amandum,	<i>loving,</i>
Abl. amandō,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

Acc. amātum,	<i>to love,</i>
Abl. amātū,	<i>to love, be loved.</i>

¹ On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.² Often best rendered *I have loved*. So in the Pluperfect, *I had loved*.³ Decline like *bonus*, 42, 148.⁴ For declension, see 86, 157.

LESSON LII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF
DECLENSION III. — RULE VI. — EXERCISES.

153. *Examples. — Two Accusatives.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Platōnem Homērum philo-</i>
<i>sophōrum appellānt.</i> | <i>They call PLATO THE HOMER of</i>
<i>philosophers.</i> |
| 2. <i>Urbem Rōmam vocāvit.</i> | <i>He called THE CITY ROME.</i> |

NOTE. — In these examples observe that *appellānt*, 'they call,' takes two Accusatives, *Platōnem* and *Homērum*, both referring to the same person, and that *vocāvit*, 'he called,' also takes two Accusatives, *urbem* and *Rōmam*, both referring to the same city. This Latin usage is expressed in the following

RULE VI. — Two Accusatives — Same Person.

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing:

Hamilcarem imperātōrem fēcērunt, they made Hamilcar COM-
MANDER. Nep. Ancum rēgem populus creāvit, the people elected
Ancus KING. Liv. Summum cōsiliū appellārunt Senātum, they
called their highest council SENATE. Cic.

1. PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE. — One of the two Accusatives is the *Direct Object*, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative*; see 59, Rule I.

154. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Allobrogēs, um, m. pl.</i>	<i>the Allobroges, a tribe of southeast-</i> <i>ern Gaul; sing. Allobrox, ogis.</i>
<i>Appellō, āre, āvi, ātum,</i>	<i>to call.</i>
<i>Boīi, ōrum, m. pl.</i>	<i>the Boii, a tribe of central Gaul.</i>
<i>Conjūnx, conjūgis, m. and f.</i>	<i>spouse, husband, wife.</i>
<i>Cōservō, āre, āvi, ātum,</i>	<i>to preserve.</i>
<i>Filius, ii,¹ m.</i>	<i>son. [army.</i>
<i>Galba, ae, m.</i>	<i>Galba, a lieutenant in Caesar's</i>

¹ In the singular, the *Genitive* and *Vocative* are generally contracted to *fili*. See 35, 51, 5.

Gēns, gentis, <i>f.</i>	race, tribe, nation.
Liberī, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i> ¹	children.
Mārcus, ī, <i>m.</i>	Marcus, a Roman praenōmen.
Nōmen, inis, <i>n.</i>	name.
Nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to name, call.
Nūtrix, icis, <i>f.</i>	nurse.
Octōdūrus, ī, <i>m.</i>	Octodurus, a town of the Veragri,
Prōpulsō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to repulse. [now Martigny.
Recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to reject.
Rōma, ae, <i>f.</i>	Rome.
Sicilia, ae, <i>f.</i>	Sicily. [Gaul.
Veragri, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	the Veragri, a tribe of eastern
Vergobretus, ī, <i>m.</i>	Vergobretus, the title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.

155. *Translate into English.*

1. Senātus Rōmānus Aeduōs frātrēs appellāvit. 2. Senātus Ariovistum rēgem et amīcum appellāverat. 3. Senātus patrem Casticī populī¹ Rōmānī amīcum appellat. 4. Galba in vicō Veragrōrum hiemābat. 5. Gallī hunc vicum Octōdūrum appellant. 6. Mārcus Catō nūtricem plēbis Rōmānae Siciliam nōminābat. 7. Gallī omnēs auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrent. 8. Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum incolunt, auxilium ā Caesare implōrāre cōstituērunt.

9. Boī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, hanc urbem oppūgnāre cōstituērunt. 10. Cōservāte vōs, conjugēs, liberōs, fortūnāsque vestrās. 11. Ariovistus cum Rōmānīs dēcertāre parātus erat. 12. Nē² timor exercitum Rōmānum occupet. 13. Utinam³ timor omnem hostium exercitum occupāvisset.⁴ 14. Nē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam recūsēmus. 15. Prō patriā fortiter pūgnēmus et hostēs prōpulsēmus. 16. Ariovistus partem suārum copiārum quae castra Rōmāna oppūgnāret⁵ mīsit.

¹ Not used in the singular.

² Construe with *amicum*.

³ Why is *nē* rather than *nōn* used? See 114, 483, 3.

⁴ For *utinam* and for the force of the *Pluperfect*, see 114, 483, 1 and 2.

⁵ For the use of *Mood*, see Rule XLII.

156. *Translate into Latin.*

1. They called the city Rome. 2. The Aedui called their chief Vergobretus. 3. Will you call us brothers? We shall call you all brothers. 4. The Romans call us Gauls. 5. At that time we called Ariovistus king. 6. Did not the consul name his son Marcus? Cicero the consul named his son Marcus. 7. The citizens called Marcus Cato wise. 8. The enemy had determined to call the bravest of their leaders general.

9. Galba determined to winter with the legion in a village which the Gauls call Octodurus. 10. Do you call Ariovistus a friend or an enemy?¹ I call him the enemy of the Roman people. 11. He inquired whether you called him a friend or an enemy.² 12. Ariovistus, whom the Germans called king, was prepared to try the fortune of war. 13. The Gauls implored aid of the Romans, in order that they might repulse the enemy.

LESSON LIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE PASSIVE. — REVIEW OF DECLENSIONS IV. AND V. — RULE XXII.

157. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the Passive voice. See page 136.

158. *Examples. — Ablative.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. Caedem a vobis depellit. | <i>He wards off slaughter</i> FROM YOU. |
| 2. Statua ex aere facta. | <i>A statue made</i> OF BRONZE. |
| 3. Expulsus est patriā. | <i>He was banished</i> FROM HIS COUNTRY. |
| 4. Ars utilitatē laudatur. | <i>An art is praised</i> BECAUSE OF ITS
USEFULNESS. |

¹ For the construction of *Double or Disjunctive Questions*, see 106, 353.

² For the construction of *Indirect Double Questions*, see 127, 529, 3.

NOTE. — In these examples *vōbis* (*ā vōbis*), 'from you,' *aere* (*ex aere*), 'of bronze,' *patriā*, 'from his country,' and *ūtilitāte*, 'because of its usefulness,' are all in the *Ablative*, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XXII. — Separation, Source, Cause.

413. Separation, Source, and Cause are denoted by the *Ablative with or without a preposition* :

SEPARATION. — *Caedem ā vōbis dēpellō*, I ward off slaughter FROM YOU. Cic. *Expulsus est patriā*, he was banished from his country. Cic. *Urbem commēstū privāvit*, he deprived the city of supplies. Nep. *Cōnātū dēstitērunt*, they desisted from the attempt. Caes.

SOURCE. — *Hōc audīvī dē parente meō*, I heard this FROM MY FATHER. Cic. *Oriundi ab Sabinis*, descended FROM THE SABINES. Liv. *Statua ex aere facta*, a statue made of bronze. Cic.

CAUSE. — *Ars ūtilitāte laudātur*, an art is praised BECAUSE OF ITS USEFULNESS. Cic. *Rogātū vēneram*, I had come by request. Cic. *Ex vulnere aeger*, ill in consequence of his wound. Cic.

415. The *ABLATIVE OF SOURCE* more commonly takes a preposition; see examples under 413. It includes *agency, parentage, material*, etc.

I. The *agent or author* of an action is designated by the *Ablative with ā or ab* :

Occisus est ā Thēbānis, he was slain by the Thebans. Nep.

NOTE 1. — The *Accusative with per* may be used of the person through whose agency the action is effected :

Ab Opplianicō per Fabriciōs factum est, it was accomplished by Opplianicus THROUGH THE AGENCY OF THE FABRICII. Cic.

LESSON LIV.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE PASSIVE. — RULE XXII. — EXERCISES.

159. Vocabulary.

Conventus, ūs, m.	assembly, meeting, council, convention.
Enūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to report, disclose, announce.
Etiam, adv.	also, even.

Lingua, ae, f.	tongue, language.
Liscus, i, m.	Liscus, the chief magistrate of the
Meritō, adv.	deservedly. [Aedui.
Paulātim, adv.	little by little, by degrees, gradually.
Per, prep. w. acc.	through, by, over.
Prōvincia, ae, f.	province. [of northwestern Gaul.
Santonēs, um, m. pl.	the Santoni or Santones, a tribe

160. *Translate into English.*

1. Militēs legiōnis decimae omnēs ā Caesare¹ laudantur.
 2. Eōdem tempore multae legiōnēs meritō laudābantur.
 3. Semper laudāberis. 4. Ab omnibus meritō laudāminī.
 5. Ab omnibus laudātus es. 6. Divitiacus ad Caesarem vocā-
 tus erat. 7. Haec omnia Ariovistō ēnūntiāta sunt. 8. Pater
 Castici ā senātū amicus² appellātus erat. 9. Ea rēs per fugi-
 tīvōs³ hostibus nūntiātur. 10. Aedui frātrēs ab senātū
 appellāti sunt.

11. Timor eōs, quī nōn māgnū in rē militārī⁴ ūsum
 habēbant, occupāvit; hōrum timōre, paulātim etiam iī, quī
 māgnū in castris ūsum habēbant, perturbābantur. 12.
 Principēs Helvētiōrum ā Caesare convocāti sunt. 13. Fīnēs
 Santonum ā prōvinciā Rōmānā nōn longē absunt. 14. Liscus
 multās rēs illō diē in conventū dixit. 15. Ii quī tertiam
 Galliae partem incolunt nostrā linguā⁵ Galli appellantur.
 16. Galba in vicō quī appellātur Octōdūrus hiemābat.

161. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The brave soldiers will be praised by the general.⁶ 2.
 You have been deservedly praised by Caesar himself. 3.

¹ See 158, 415, I., and observe that in the *Active* construction the *Author* or *Agent* of the action is denoted by the *Nominative*; in the *Passive* by the *Ablative* with *ā* or *ab*. Thus in this sentence the *Active* construction would be: *Caesar militēs . . . laudat*.

² *Predicate Nominative*; see 59, Rule I.

³ See 158, 415, note 1.

⁴ *Lit. in the military thing*; render, *in military affairs*.

⁵ *Ablative of Means*; see 78, Rule XXV.

⁶ *By the general*; see note on *ā Caesare*, 160.

Was not Cicero the consul praised by the senate? He was deservedly praised by the Roman people. 4. Has not this citizen been accused by you? He has not been accused by me, but by the magistrate. 5. Will not all these things be announced to the commander?

6. By whom were our plans announced to the enemy? They have not been announced to the enemy. 7. What has been announced to Caesar? All these things have been announced to him. 8. The consul, with a large army, is not far from the city. 9. At that time the enemy were not far from the village which is called Octodurus. 10. The Aedui, who had been called brothers by the senate, implored aid from Caesar.

LESSON LV. *omit*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—INDICATIVE PASSIVE.—REVIEW
OF ADJECTIVES OF DECLENSIONS I. AND II.

162. *Vocabulary.*

Āc, <i>conj.</i>	<i>and.</i>
Alpēs, ium, <i>f. pl.</i>	<i>the Alps.</i>
Arvernī, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>the Arverni, a tribe of southern Gaul.</i>
Celeriter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>quickly.</i>
Centuriō, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>centurion.</i>
Excitō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to excite, arouse.</i>
Fabius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Fabius, a celebrated Roman general.</i>
Harūdēs, um, <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>the Harudes, a tribe of southwestern</i>
Nūper, <i>adv.</i>	<i>recently, of late.</i> [Germany.]
Obsignō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to seal, sign and seal.</i>
Paene, <i>adv.</i>	<i>almost, well nigh, nearly.</i>
Parō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to prepare.</i>
Quintus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Quintus, a Roman praenōmen.</i>
Sēdēs, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>seat, abode; locus āc sēdēs, place of</i>
Testāmentum, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>will.</i> [abode.]
Trānsportō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to transport, carry over, take over,</i>
	<i>bring over.</i> [universally.]
Vulgō, <i>adv.</i>	<i>commonly, as a general thing,</i>

163. *Translate into English.*

1. Oppida Aeduorum paene in cōspēctū exercitūs nostrī expūgnāta sunt. 2. Rēs frūmentāria¹ māgnō cum periculō comparāta erat. 3. Eōdem tempore agrī Aeduorum vastābantur. 4. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, amīcus ā senātū appellātus erat. 5. Māgnae Gallōrum cōpiae ab Ariovistō ūnō proeliō² superātae sunt. 6. Timor exercitum populī Rōmānī occupāvit; etiam centuriōnēs quī māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbant perturbābantur; vulgō in castrīs testāmenta obsīgnābantur.

7. Omnēs ferē Gallī ad bellum celeriter excitantur. 8. Aeduī bellī fortūnam tentāvērunt et superātī sunt. 9. Harūdēs nūper in Galliam trānsportātī sunt.³ Hīs locus āc sēdēs parābuntur. 10. Imperātor in ūteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum quīnque legiōnibus contendit. 11. Multae gentēs ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur. 12. Arvernī ab Quīntō Fabiō bellō superātī sunt.

164. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Our fields have been devastated by the enemy. 2. Many towns had been taken by storm.⁴ 3. Large forces of the enemy will be conquered by our commander. 4. The Gauls had been conquered by Caesar in many battles.⁵ 5. Many chiefs had been called together by Caesar. 6. The chiefs who had been called together said many things in the council. 7. Many Germans were carried over into Gaul by Ariovistus. For these Germans places of abode had been

¹ *Rēs frūmentāria*, lit. *the thing relating to corn or grain, the affair of the grain*; render 'grain' or 'supplies.'

² Observe the difference of construction between expressions of AGENCY, AUTHORSHIP, *ab Ariovistō*, and MEANS, *proeliō*.

³ That is, *across the Rhine*.

⁴ *By storm* is not to be rendered by a separate word, but is involved in the meaning of the Latin verb.

⁵ *In many battles*; Latin idiom, *by many battles*.

prepared in Gaul. 8. These legions were wintering in Gaul with great peril.

9. We are not quickly aroused to war. 10. Many nations had already been aroused to war. 11. The fortune of war has been tried by the Gauls, and they will all be conquered. 12. You, who have large experience in military affairs, will not be quickly aroused to war. 13. Were all kings called friends of the Roman people? Many kings were called friends by the senate. 14. The lands of the Gauls were often devastated by the Germans. 15. The town in which our army wintered was not attacked by the Gauls.

LESSON LVI.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE. — REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES. — RULE LIX.

165. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō*, learn the Subjunctive Mood of the Passive voice. See page 137.

166. *Examples. — Supine.*

1. *Ad Caesarem congratulātum* They came to Caesar TO CONGRATULATE him.
convēnērunt. LATE him.
2. *Vēnērunt rēs repetitum.* They came TO DEMAND restitution.

NOTE. — In these examples the supines *congratulātum* and *repetitum* are employed to denote the purpose of the leading action, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LIX. — Supine in *Um*.

546. The Supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion to express PURPOSE:

Lēgātī vēnērunt rēs repetitum, deputies came to demand restitution.
Liv. *Ad Caesarem congratulātum convēnērunt, they came to Caesar to congratulate him. Caes.*

LESSON LVII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE. —

RULE LIX. — EXERCISES.

167. Vocabulary.

Cāsus, ūs, m.	accident, occurrence, emergency.
Commeātus, ūs, m.	supplies.
Dēditīō, ōnis, f.	surrender.
Iter, itineris, n.	march, journey; māgna itinera, forced
Jūdicium, iī, n.	judgment, decision. [marches.
Observō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to observe, keep, comply with.
Sōcratēs, is, m.	Socrates, the celebrated Greek philosopher.
Sublevō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to assist, support.

168. Translate into English.

1. Adventus hostium Caesarī nūntiētur. 2. Utinam ea rēs imperātōrī nūntiāta esset.¹ 3. Utinam haec cōnsilia Helvētiīs nūntientur.¹ 4. Nē nostra cōnsilia per fugitivōs hostibus nūntientur. 5. Jūdicium senātūs observētur. 6. Utinam omnia senātūs jūdicia observāta essent. 7. Ab hīs lēgātīs quaerit quantaē Galliae cīvitatēs superātae sint.² 8. Ab hīs quaerēbat quae urbēs expūgnātae essent. 9. Quaerunt quam ob rem commeātūs nōn ad Caesarem portātī sint. 10. Eōdem tempore ille mōns ā Labiēnō occupētur.

11. Ab principibus Aeduōrum quaerēbat quam ob rem exercitus populi Rōmānī ab iīs nōn sublevārētur. 12. Caesar ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. 13. Sōcratēs omnium³ sapientissimus fuit. 14. Imperātor in citeriōrem Galliam māgnīs itineribus⁴ contendit. 15. Hae nāvēs lātiōrēs erant quam reliquae. 16. Principēs Gallōrum lēgātōs ad senātum Rōmānum mittēbant. 17. Hostēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē

¹ Show the force of *Tenses*; see 114, 483, 2.

² See 127, Rule LV., and Suggestion XXIV., 2.

³ *Partitive Genitive*.

⁴ *Lit. with large journeys; render with forced marches.*

169. *Translate into Latin.*

dēditōne¹ mittunt. 18. Aedui lēgātos ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum² auxilium.

1. What towns have been taken by storm? 2. Let us ascertain what towns have been taken by storm. 3. Let not our fields be devastated in sight of your army. 4. Let us inquire for what reason these Germans have been brought over into Gaul. 5. May the laws be observed by us and by all the citizens. 6. May you all be wise. 7. Would that these boys were wiser. 8. Would that this mountain had been occupied by our army.

9. Let supplies be brought to our army by the Aedui. 10. Caesar was hastening with forced marches into Gaul. 11. Would that all the forces of the enemy had been conquered.³ 12. May our towns never be stormed by the enemy. 13. What towns of the Gauls were stormed by the Germans? 14. Let us inquire of the ambassadors what towns have been stormed and what fields have been devastated. 15. Let not these things be announced to the Germans. 16. Would that these towns were all occupied by our friends. Let us send ambassadors to the senate to ask⁴ aid.

LESSON LVIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
REVIEW OF PRONOUNS. — RULES LVII. AND LVIII.

170. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō*, learn the Passive voice in full. See the following page.

¹ Lit. concerning a surrender; render to treat for a capitulation, or to capitulate.

² To ask; see 166, Rule LIX.

³ See 114, 483, 2.

⁴ See 166, Rule LIX.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

206. PASSIVE VOICE.—Amor, *I am loved*.VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *amā*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.		
PRIM. IND.	PRIM. INF.	PRIM. IND.
amor,	amāri,	amātus sum.
INDICATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT TENSE.		
<i>I am loved.</i>		
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
amor		amāmur
amāris, or re		amāmini
amātur		amantur
IMPERFECT.		
<i>I was loved.</i>		
amābar		amābāmur
amābaris, or re		amābāmini
amābātur		amābantur
FUTURE.		
<i>I shall or will be loved.</i>		
amābor		amābimur
amāberis, or re		amābimini
amābitur		amābuntur
PERFECT.		
<i>I have been loved or I was loved.</i>		
amātus sum ¹		amāti sumus
amātus es		amāti estis
amātus est		amāti sunt
PLUPERFECT.		
<i>I had been loved.</i>		
amātus eram ¹		amāti erāmus
amātus erās		amāti erātis
amātus erat		amāti erant
FUTURE PERFECT.		
<i>I shall or will have been loved.</i>		
amātus erō ¹		amāti erimus
amātus eris		amāti eritis
amātus erit		amāti erunt

¹ *Fui, fuisti, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sum, es, etc.*: *amātus fui* for *amātus sum*. So *fueram, fueras, etc.*, for *eram, etc.*: also *fuerō, etc.*, for *erō, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be loved, let him be loved.¹

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amē	amēmur
amēris, or re	amēmini
amētur	amēntur

IMPERFECT.

I should be loved, he would be loved.¹

amārer	amārēmur
amārēris, or re	amārēmini
amārētur	amārēntur

PERFECT.

I may have been loved, or I have been loved.¹

amātus sim ²	amāti simus
amātus sis	amāti sitis
amātus sit	amāti sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been loved, he would have been loved.¹

amātus essem ²	amāti essemus
amātus esses	amāti essetis
amātus esset	amāti essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. amāre, be thou loved ;	amāmini, be ye loved.
Fut. amātor, thou shalt be loved,	
amātor, he shall be loved ;	amātor, they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. amārī, to be loved.	
Perf. amātus esse, ² to have been loved.	Perf. amātus, having been loved.
Fut. amātura irī, to be about to be loved.	Ger. ³ amandus, to be loved, deserv- ing to be loved.

¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.² *Fuerim, fueris*, etc., are sometimes used for *sim, sis*, etc.—So also *fuisse* for *esset*, etc., for *essem, esses*, etc. : rarely *fuisse* for *esse*.³ *Ger.* = Gerundive; see 14, 200, IV., note.

171. *Examples. — Infinitive with Subject.*

1. *Pontem jubet rescindī.* *He orders THE BRIDGE TO BE BROKEN DOWN.*
2. *Sentimus calēre ignem.* *We perceive THAT FIRE IS HOT.*

NOTE 1. — The Latin usage illustrated in these examples by the Accusative and the Infinitive is expressed in the following

RULE LVII. — Accusative and Infinitive.

534. Many transitive verbs admit both an Accusative and an Infinitive :

Tē sapere docet, he teaches you to be wise. Cic. Eōs suum adventum expectāre jūssit, he ordered them to await his approach. Caes. Pontem jubet rescindī, he orders the bridge to be broken down. Caes.

NOTE 2. — In the second of the above examples, the Accusative *ignem* may be regarded as the Subject of the Infinitive *calēre*, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LVIII. — Subject of Infinitive.

536. The Infinitive sometimes takes an Accusative as its subject :

Sentimus calēre ignem, we perceive that fire is hot. Cic. Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperīō, I find that Plato came to Tarentum. Cic.

172. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Accommodātus, a, um,</i>	<i>fitted, adapted.</i>
<i>Carīna, ae, f.</i>	<i>keel, bottom (of a vessel).</i>
<i>Concursus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>running together ; running about, running to and fro, agitation.</i>
<i>Extrā, prep. w. acc.</i>	<i>beyond, outside of.</i>
<i>Flūctus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>wave.</i>
<i>Fremitus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>din, noise.</i>
<i>Jubet,</i>	<i>he orders, commands.</i>
<i>Māgnitūdō, inis, f.</i>	<i>size.</i>
<i>Modus, ī, m.</i>	<i>measure, manner.</i>
<i>Nātiō, ōnis, f.</i>	<i>nation.</i>
<i>Nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i>	<i>to bare, expose.</i>
<i>Paulum, adv.</i>	<i>a little, somewhat.</i>
<i>Plānus, a, um,</i>	<i>flat, level.</i>

Prior, us, <i>sup.</i> <i>prīmus</i> , a, um, 86, 166,	<i>former, first.</i>
Prōra, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>prow.</i>
Scientia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>knowledge.</i>
Segusiāni, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>the Segusiani, a tribe of southeastern</i>
Significō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to signify, indicate.</i> [Gaul.
Superus, a, um, <i>comp. supe-</i> <i>rior</i> , us, <i>sup. suprēmus</i> <i>and summus</i> , a, um,	<i>upper; summus, highest, greatest.</i>
Tardō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to retard, check, hinder, impede.</i>

173. *Translate into English.*

1. Castra ab ūnā parte¹ nūdāta sunt. 2. Nē tōta castra nūdentur. 3. Caesaris adventū paulum hostium impetus tardātus est. 4. Omnēs in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in summō periculō fortiter pūgnābant. 5. Agrī nostrī vastārī² nōn dēbent. 6. Oppida Aeduōrum paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī expūgnārī nōn dēbent. 7. Timor hostium fremitū et concursū significābātur. 8. Māximae nātiōnēs ā Rōmānīs superātae sunt. 9. Intellegunt māximās nātiōnēs superātās esse.³

10. Ducēs hostium summam scientiam rēi militāris habēre existimābantur. 11. Caesar duās legiōnēs in prōximō monte collocārī jubet. 12. Fugitīvī dicunt montem ā Labiēnō occupārī.⁴ 13. Segusiānī sunt extrā prōvinciam Rōmānam trāns Rhodanum primī. 14. Nāvēs hostium ad hunc modum aedificātae sunt; carinae plāniōrēs sunt quam nostrārum nāvium,⁵ prōrae ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum accommodātae.

174. *Translate into Latin.*

1. They say that supplies⁵ have not been brought to Caesar by the Aedui. 2. He says that our fields have been devastated by the Gauls. 3. How many vessels have been

¹ *Ab ūnā parte*; Latin idiom, *from one part*; render, *on one side*.

² See 132, Rule LVI.

³ See Suggestion XXV., 1.

⁴ *Nāvium* depends upon *carinae* understood.

⁵ See 171, Rule LVIII.

built by the Gauls? Let us ascertain how many vessels have been built by them. 4. Deserters say that ten vessels have been built by the Gauls. 5. They say that many cities were stormed by the Romans. 6. Deserters say that the camp of the enemy is exposed on (*from*) one side. 7. Let not our camp be exposed. 8. Our camp ought not to be exposed.

9. Will you not fight bravely in sight of your general? 10. We ought to fight bravely for our country. 11. Caesar orders this city to be occupied by our army. 12. An ambassador announced that the cities of our friends were occupied by the enemy. 13. The Germans ought not to lay waste the fields of the Gauls. 14. The arrival of Caesar checked the attack of the enemy. 15. They say that one legion was stationed in the city. 16. In what part of Gaul were the legions wintering? 17. Let us ask in what part of Gaul the legions are wintering. 18. Caesar said that the legions were wintering among the Belgae.

LESSON LIX. *note*

FIRST CONJUGATION IN FULL. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

175. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and Translate into English.*¹

Helvētī per agrum Aeduōrum in Santonum finēs contēbant, quī nōn longē ā prōvinciā Rōmānā absunt. Ob eas causās Caesar in Italiā magnīs itineribus contendit, duāsque ibī legiōnēs cōscripsit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hibernīs ēduxit, et in ūteriōrem Galliā per Alpēs cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus contendit. Ab citeriōre prōvinciā² in Segusiānōs exercitum duxit. Hī sunt extrā prō-

¹ See Directions for Reading at Sight, 137.

² *Citerior prōvincia* is the Roman province of *Citerior* or *Cisalpine Gaul*, while *ūterior prōvincia* is the province of *Ulterior* or *Transalpine Gaul*.

vinciam trāns Rhodanum primī. Helvētīī jam Aeduōrum agrōs vastābant et oppida expūgnābant. Tum vērō tantus timor Aeduōs occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Lēgātōs igitur ad Caesarem misērunt. Eōdem tempore multae Galliae cīvitatēs auxilium ā Caesare implōrāvērunt.

176. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar says that nearly all the Belgae conspired against the Roman people. The Gauls, whom Caesar had commanded to ascertain what the Belgae were doing, announced that the enemy were collecting large forces (*bands of men*), and bringing them together in (*into*) one place. 2. How many legions did Caesar enrol in Italy? At that time he enrolled two legions there. How many legions will winter in the vicinity of this town (*around this town*)? The general says that three legions will winter in the vicinity of this town.

3. By whom have the lands of the Aedui been devastated? He inquired by whom the lands of the Aedui had been devastated. Ambassadors announced that the lands of the Aedui had been devastated by the Helvetii. 4. The general ought to lead all his forces out of winter quarters. 5. At that time Caesar was hastening from Italy over the Alps into Gaul. 6. The Remi sent ambassadors to Caesar, to establish (*who should establish*) peace and friendship with the Roman people, and to say that all the rest of the Belgae were in arms.

LESSON LX.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

177. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the Active voice. See page 144.

178. Vocabulary.

Agmen, inis, n.	army on the march, line of march, line ; extrēmum agmen, the ex- tremity of the line, the rear.
Aliquamdiū, adv.	for a time.
Armō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to arm.
Dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum,	to owe ; ought.
Exterus, a, um, comp. exterior, us, sup. extrēmus and ex- timus, a, um,	[the extremity of. outward ; extrēmus, the outermost, to have, hold ; to regard, regard as. unarmed.
Habeō, ēre, uī, itum,	to advise, warn.
Inermus, a, um,	not ? 106, 351, 1, note 2.
Moneō, ēre, uī, itum,	without.
Nōnne, interrog. part.,	to sustain, withstand, resist.
Sine, prep. w. abl.	to fear.
Sustineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	
Timeō, ēre, uī,	

179. Translate into English.

1. Num hostēs timētis ? Nōn hostēs timēmus. 2. Timōris suspiciōnem vitāre dēbētis. 3. Nōnne omnēs suspiciōnēs vitāre dēbēmus ? 4. Nōn sine causā hostēs timuimus. 5. Vōbīs omnia dēbeō. 6. Aeduī populō Rōmānō multum dēbēbant. 7. Id Caesarī nūntiāre dēbēmus. 8. Nostra oppida expūgnāre nōn dēbētis. 9. Centuriōnēs māgnū in castrīs ūsum habēbant. 10. Nōnne māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbās ? Nōn māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbam. 11. Caesar Divitiacum fidum semper habēbat. 12. Vōs fidōs semper habēbimus. 13. Nōnne mē fidum habēs ? Tē fidum habeō.

14. Caesar Dumnorigem ad sē vocāvit ; monuit ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitāret. 15. Vōs moneō ut in reliquum tempus hās suspiciōnēs vitētis. 16. Ariovistus Caesarem nōn prō amīcō,¹ sed prō hoste habēbit. 17. Tē prō amīcō semper habuī. 18. Num mē prō hoste habētis ? Tē nōn prō hoste sed prō amīcō habēmus. 19. Impetum

¹ Render prō as, lit. for.

hostium fortiter sustinuerāmus. 20. Hostēs ab extrēmō agmine¹ fortiter impetum nostrōrum militum sustinēbant. 21. Quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuerāmus, hōs postea armātōs superāvimus.

180. *Translate into Latin.*

1. At that time the Gauls feared the Germans, who dwelt beyond (*across*) the Rhine. 2. Nearly all the Gauls feared Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 3. Shall you, who have large experience in military affairs, fear the Gauls?² We have not large experience in military affairs, but we do not fear this army. 4. These boys owe much to their father. 5. We all owe much to our fathers. 6. Ought we not to attack that town? We ought to take it by storm. 7. Our soldiers always withstand the attacks of the enemy.

8. We shall always regard you all as our friends.³ 9. Caesar regarded the Germans not as friends, but as enemies. 10. Do you not regard your general as faithful? We all regard him as faithful. 11. Whom do these boys regard as faithful? They regard you as faithful. 12. Did I not warn you not to announce these things to the Germans?² You warned us not to announce your plans to the enemy. 13. Did you not fear Ariovistus at that time? I feared him, and regarded him as an enemy.

LESSON LXI.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL.

181. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Active voice in full. See the following page.

¹ Render *ab*, *on*, *lit. from*. See note on *ab unā parte*, 173.

² Which interrogative particle will you use? See 106, 351, 1, notes.

³ *As our friends*; Latin idiom, *FOR our friends*.

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

207. ACTIVE VOICE.—*Monēō, I advise.*VERB STEM, *mon, moni*; PRESENT STEM, *monē*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.
*monēō,*PRES. IMP.
*monēre,*PRES. IND.
*monuī,*SUPINE.
monitum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.

*monēō**monēs**monet*

PLURAL.

*monēmus**monētis**monent*

IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, or I advised.**monēbam**monēbās**monēbat**monēbāmus**monēbātis**monēbant*

FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.**monēbō**monēbis**monēbit**monēbimus**monēbitis**monēbunt*

PERFECT.

*I have advised, or I advised.**monuī**monuisti**monuit**monuimus**monuistis**monuerunt, or ēre*

PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.**monueram**monuerās**monuerat**monuerāmus**monuerātis**monuerant*

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.**monuerō**monueris**monuerit**monuerimus**monueritis**monuerint*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I advise, let him advise.¹

SINGULAR.

moneam

moneās

moneat

PLURAL.

moneāmus

moneātis

moneant

IMPERFECT.

I should advise, he would advise.

monērem

monērēs

monēret

monērēmus

monērētis

monērent

PERFECT.

I may have advised, or I have advised.¹

monuerim

monueris

monuerit

monuerimus

monueritis

monuerint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have advised, he would have advised.²

monuissē

monuissēs

monuisset

monuissēmus

monuissētis

monuissent

IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. monē, advise thou ;**Fut. monētō, thou shalt advise,
monētō, he shall advise ;**| monēte, advise ye.**| monētōte, ye shall advise,
monētō, they shall advise.*

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. monēre, to advise.**Perf. monuisse, to have advised.**Fut. monitūrus esse, to be about
to advise.*

PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. monēs, advising.**Fut. monitūrus, about to advise.*

GERUND.

*Gen. monendī, of advising,**Dat. monendō, for advising,**Acc. monendum, advising,**Abi. monendō, by advising.*

SUPINE.

*Acc. monitum, to advise,**Abi. monitū, to advise, be advised.*¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.² The Pluperfect, like the Perfect, is often rendered by the Indicative: *I had advised, you had advised, etc.*

LESSON LXII.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE. — EXERCISES.

182. *Vocabulary.*

Memoria, ae, f.	memory, recollection.
Novus, a, um,	new; novae rēs, new things, a change
Pareō, ēre, uī, itum,	to obey. [of affairs, revolution.
Pristinus, a, um,	ancient, pristine.
Retineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	to retain, keep.
Studeō, ēre, uī,	to desire.
Studium, ii, n.	desire.
Taceō, ēre, uī, itum,	to be silent, keep silent, remain silent.
Teneō, ēre, uī, tentum,	to hold, keep.

183. *Translate into English.*

1. Nē hostēs sine causā timeāmus. 2. Germānōs timēre nōn dēbēmus. 3. Hōs agrōs armīs teneāmus. 4. Militēs dicēbant sē hostēs nōn timēre.¹ 5. Hīc centuriō dicit sē hostēs nōn timuisse.¹ 6. Hostium impetum fortiter sustineāmus. 7. Eās rēs memoriā² teneāmus. 8. Nōne eās rēs memoriā tenēre dēbēmus? 9. Militēs suae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retineant. 10. Nostrae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retineāmus. 11. Tuae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinēre dēbēs.

12. Vestrae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinēte, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinēte. 13. Dicunt Caesarem ūnam legiōnem sēcum³ habuisse.¹ 14. Dicunt tē māgnū amīcōrum numerum habuisse.¹ 15. Dicunt tē māgnū amīcōrum numerum habitūrum esse.¹ 16. Dicunt vōs māgnū amīcōrum numerum habitūrōs esse.¹ 17. Amīcōs habēns; cōsul amīcōs habēns; amīcōs habitūrus; cōsulēs amīcōs habitūrī. 18. Ob eās causās Dumnorix novīs rēbus⁴ studēbat. 19. Monendō, timendō, tenendī, causa tenendī, studium habendī.

¹ See Suggestion XXV., 1.² *Memoriā*, literally, *BY the memory*, Ablative of *Means*; render *IN memory*.³ See 102, 184, 6.⁴ See 54, Rule XII.

20. Omnēs ferē Gallī novīs rēbus student et ad bellum celeriter excitantur; omnēs autem hominēs libertātī student.

184. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We shall always retain the recollection of these things. 2. May you ever retain the recollection of this day. 3. The consul says that he shall always retain the recollection of your friendship. 4. For what reason did the Gauls desire a revolution at that time? 5. Does not Caesar say that the Gauls always desire a revolution? He says that all men desire liberty. 6. Let us obey all the laws, and let us not desire a revolution. 7. Obeying, about to obey; obeying the laws, about to obey the laws; by obeying¹ the laws,² of obeying the laws, the desire of obeying the laws.

8. By being silent¹ you avoided suspicion of fear. 9. Let us not fear the Germans without cause. 10. We ought not to regard them as enemies without cause. 11. Would that they had not feared² us without cause. 12. How many legions will our commander have with him in Italy? They say that he will have five legions with him. 13. The general says that he shall always regard us as his friends. 14. So great fear took possession of the Romans, that they did not retain⁴ the recollection of their ancient courage.

LESSON LXIII.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. — ACTIVE VOICE. —
RULE XXX.

185. *Examples. — Place in which.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. In nostris castris fuit. | <i>He was in our CAMP.</i> |
| 2. Rōmae fuit. | <i>He was AT ROME.</i> |

¹ Use the Ablative of the Gerund, as *Ablative of Means*.

² Remember that the Gerund governs the same case as other parts of the verb.

³ For Mood and Tense, see 114, 483, 2.

⁴ See 128, 500, II.

NOTE.—The Latin usage illustrated in the Locative Ablative *castris*, and in the Locative *Rōmae*, is expressed in the following

RULE XXX.—Place in which.

425. The PLACE IN WHICH is denoted —

I. Generally by the *Locative Ablative*¹ with the preposition in:

Hannibal in *Italiā* fuit, Hannibal was IN ITALY. Nep. In nostris castris, in our camp. Caes. In *Appiā viā*, on the Appian way. Cic.

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS by the *Locative*,² if such a form exists, otherwise by the *Locative Ablative*:

Rōmae fuit, he was AT ROME. Cic. *Corinthī* puerōs docēbat, he taught boys AT CORINTH. Cic. *Athēnis* fuit, he was AT ATHENS. Cic.

1. In the names of places which are not towns, the LOCATIVE ABLATIVE is often used without a preposition, when the idea of means, manner, or cause is combined with that of place:

Castris sē tenuit, he kept himself IN CAMP. Caes. *Aliquem tectō recipere*, to receive any one IN ONE'S OWN HOUSE. Cic. *Proeliō cadere*, to fall IN BATTLE. Caes.

2. The Ablatives *locō*, *locis*, *parte*, *partibus*, *dextrā*, *laevā*, *sinistrā*, *terrā*, and *marī*, especially when qualified by an adjective, and other Ablatives, when qualified by *tōtus*, are generally used without the preposition:

Aliquid locō pōnere, to put anything IN ITS PLACE. Cic. *Terrā marique*, on land and sea. Liv. *Tōtā Graeciā*, in all Greece. Nep.

426. LIKE NAMES OF TOWNS are used —

1. Many NAMES OF ISLANDS:

Lesbi vixit, he lived in Lesbos. Nep. *Conōn Cypri vixit*, Conon lived in Cyprus. Nep.

2. The LOCATIVES *domī*, *rūrī*, *humī*, *mīlītiaē*, and *bellī*:

Domī mīlītiaēque, at home and in the field. Cic. *Rūrī agere vitam*, to spend life in the country. Liv.

¹ The *Locative Ablative* does not differ in form from any other Ablative. It is simply the Ablative used with the force of the original *Locative*, i.e. to designate the place of the action.

² See 10, 48, 4; 35, 51, 8; 63, 66, 4. The Locative was the original construction in all names of places.

186. *Vocabulary.*

Agendicum, i, n.	<i>Agendicum</i> , a town of the Senones in central Gaul.
Alesia, ae, f.	<i>Alesia</i> , a town in central Gaul.
Apertus, a, um,	<i>open</i> .
Avus, i, m.	<i>grandfather</i> .
Bibrax, actis, n.	<i>Bibrax</i> , a town of the Remi.
Contineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	<i>to retain, keep, confine, restrain; to enclose; surround</i> .
Dēsīgnō, āre, avi, ātum,	<i>to designate, indicate</i> .
Dēterreō, ēre, ui, itum,	<i>to deter</i> .
Difficultās, ātis, f.	<i>difficulty</i> .
Domus, ūs, f.	<i>house, home; domi, at home</i> .
Genāva, ae, f.	<i>Geneva</i> .
Improbus, a, um,	<i>wicked, unprincipled</i> .
Karthāgō, inis, f.	<i>Carthage</i> .
Largiter, adv.	<i>largely, widely, extensively; largiter potest, he has extensive influence</i> .
Mare, is, n.	<i>sea</i> .
Multitūdō, inis, f.	<i>multitude; the multitude, common</i>
Obtineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	<i>to obtain, hold.</i> [people.]
Sēditiosus, a, um,	<i>seditionous</i> .
Servitūs, ūtis, f.	<i>servitude, slavery</i> .
Solum, adv.	<i>only</i> .
Vir, viri, m.	<i>man</i> .

187. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar eō tempore in citeriōre Galliā erat. 2. Eōdem tempore exercitus noster in Galliā hiemābat. 3. Dicunt imperātorem in Galliā in hibernis fuisse. 4. Germānī Aeduōs in servitūte tenēre nōn dēbent. 5. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, eō diē exercitum castris¹ continuit. 6. Apertō marī² tempestātēs timēbāmus. 7. Summa erat apertō marī difficultās nāvigandī.³ 8. Allobrogēs lēgātōs ad senātum mīserunt rogātum auxiliū. 9. Dumnorix māgnū numerum equitātis habēbat.

¹ *Ablative of Place*, involving the idea of *Means*.

² See 185, 425, II., 2.

³ *Nāvigandī*, Genitive of the Gerund, depending upon *difficultās*. Observe that the Genitive of the Gerund is here treated as any other Genitive would be treated in the same situation. See 31, Rule XVI.

10. Liscus dicit Dumnorigem, Divitiaci frātre, māgnū numerū equitātis semper circum sē habēre. Is nōn solum domi,¹ sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitātēs largiter poterat.²

11. Caesar duās legiōnēs Agendici¹ collocāverat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit. 12. Cōsul eō tempore Rōmae¹ erat. 13. Timor hostēs Alesiae occupāvit. 14. Avus hūjus Galli, viri fortissimī, amicus ab senātū nostrō appellātus erat. 15. Avus hūjus Galli in cīvitāte suā rēgnū obtinuerat, amicus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. 16. Dicunt hāc ōrātiōne Dumnorigem dēsīgnātū esse. 17. Sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinē dētērrētis nē frūmentū comportent.³

188. *Translate into Latin.*

1. They say that you have been in Italy. We were in winter quarters in Italy. 2. Ought we not to place our army in winter quarters in Gaul? The army ought to be placed in winter quarters in the vicinity of (*around*) Geneva. The general has already decided to station three legions at Geneva.⁴ 3. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, was not at home,⁴ but was laying waste the lands of the Gauls. 4. Messengers announced that the consul at that time was at Carthage.

5. You ought not to hold the deserters in servitude. We shall keep them in camp.⁵ 6. How many Gauls did Ariovistus hold in servitude? They announced that Ariovistus always held a very large number of Gauls in servitude. 7. Was Caesar at that time in Italy, or in Gaul?⁶ He was at Rome, and he had with him a large number of friends. 8. Was there not at Geneva a bridge across the Rhone?⁷ Caesar says that at Geneva there was a bridge across the Rhone.

¹ See 185, 425, 426, II.

² *Largiter poterat*, literally, *was largely able*; render, *was very powerful*, or *had great influence*. ³ See 119, 497, II.

⁴ What Case will you use in rendering *at Geneva*, *at home*? See 185, 425; 426, 2.

⁵ In camp; see 185, 425, 1.

⁶ For Double Question, see 106, 353.

⁷ *Across the Rhone*; Latin idiom, *in the Rhone*.

LESSON LXIV.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—INDICATIVE PASSIVE.—RULE
IV.—REVIEW OF RULES I., II., AND III.

189. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the Passive voice. See page 154.

190. *Examples.—Vocative.*

1. Tuum est, *Servi*, rēgnum. *The kingdom is yours, SERVIUS.*
2. Quid est, *Catilina*? *Why is it, CATILINE?*

NOTE.—In these examples the names of the persons addressed, *Servi* and *Catilina*, are in the Vocative, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, *Laeli*, proceed, LAELIUS. Cic. Quid est, *Catilina*? *Why is it, CATILINE?* Cic. Ō dii immortālēs, *O immortal gods.* Cic.

LESSON LXV.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—INDICATIVE PASSIVE.—RULE
IV.—REVIEW OF RULES I., II., AND III.—EX-
ERCISES.

191. *Vocabulary.*

Alter, era, erum, 42, 151.	<i>other (of two), second.</i>
Antea, adv.	<i>before.</i>
Ascendit,	<i>he ascends.</i>
Bellicōsus, a, um,	<i>warlike.</i>
Clāmor, ōris, m.	<i>shout.</i>
Cōsultō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to consult.</i>
Dēmum, adv.	<i>at length.</i>
Dētineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	<i>to detain.</i>
Ferus, a, um,	<i>fierce, savage.</i>

Impendeō, ēre,	to overhang.
Inter, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	among.
Jubeō, ēre, jūssī, jūssum,	to order. [Gaul.
Jūra, ae, m.	Jura, a mountain range in eastern
Lūx, lūcis, f.	light; prima lūx, the beginning of
	light, daybreak, early dawn. ¹
Mūnitiō, ōnis, f.	fortification.
Nervii, ōrum, m. pl.	the Nervii, a tribe of northern Gaul.
Obsideō, ēre, sēdi, sēssum,	to besiege.
Salūs, ūtis, f.	safety.
Sapienter, adv.	wisely. [powerful German tribe.
Suēbī, ōrum, m. pl.	the Suebi, Suevi, or Suabians, a
Summus, a, um, sup. of superus,	highest; highest part of, top of. ¹
Terreō, ēre, ūi, itum,	to terrify.

192. Translate into English.

1. Nōne ab amīcis monitī estis? Ā vōbīs, amīcī, monitī sumus. 2. Nunc, militēs, sapienter monēmur. 3. Primā lūce summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur. 4. Nōne hōc oppidum ab hostibus tenētur? Ab hostibus tenētur. 5. Vīcus quī appellātur Octōdūrus altissimīs montibus² continētur. 6. Montēs quī impendēbant ā māximā multitudīne hostium tenēbantur. 7. Nervī māximē ferī inter Belgās habentur. 8. Helvētīi undique locī nātūrā continentur, ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, alterā ex parte monte² Jūrā. 9. Omnēs hostium impetūs fortiter sustinēbantur.

10. Hostēs quī Alesiae obsidēbantur dē salūte cōsultābant. 11. Iī quī mūnitiōnibus continentur clāmōre suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. 12. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. 13. Rōmānae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur. 14. Caesar Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus montem ascendere jubet. 15. Caesar principēs convocāvit, in hīs Liscum,² magistrātum quī Ver-

¹ Certain adjectives often designate a PARTICULAR PART of an object: *prima nox*, 'the first part of the night;' *mediā aestāte*, 'in the middle of summer;' *summus mōns*, 'the top (highest part) of the mountain.' The adjectives thus used are *primus*, *medius*, *ūltimus*, *extrēmus*, *postrēmus*, *intimus*, *summus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *suprēmus*, *reliquus*, *cētera*, etc.

² Ablative of Means.

³ Object of convocāvit.

gobretus appellātur. 16. Tum dēmum, quod antea tacueram, enūntiāvi.

193. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Many Gauls were held in slavery by Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 2. On that day the Germans were kept in camp by their commander. 3. Brave soldiers, you have been kept in camp by your commander. 4. Judges, you have been regarded by Caesar as friends.¹ 5. Galba, the lieutenant, was ordered to winter in a village which is called Octodurus. 6. You will always be regarded by us as friends. 7. This mountain was held on that day by the Romans. 8. Was not Labienus, the lieutenant, commanded by Caesar to ascend this mountain? He was commanded to ascend this mountain, and to hold it.

9. The difficulty of navigation² on the open sea is great, and our vessels will be detained by the storms. 10. Was not Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, warned by Caesar? He was warned by Caesar to avoid all suspicion in future. 11. We have been warned not to attack this town, on account of the width of the moat and the height of the wall. 12. We have been ordered to fortify our camp with a rampart. 13. The Suebi were regarded by the Romans as very warlike.

LESSON LXVI.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
REVIEW OF RULES XXXVII., XXXVIII., AND XL.

194. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Passive voice in full. See the following page.

¹ Remember the Latin idiom, *for friends*.

² Use the *Gerund*.

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

208. PASSIVE VOICE.—Moneor, *I am advised.*VERB STEM, *mon, moni*; PRESENT STEM, *monē*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

moneor,

PRES. INF.

monēri,

PERF. IND.

monitus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.

moneor

monēris, or re

monētur

PLURAL.

monēmur

monēmini

monentur

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

monēbar

monēbaris, or re

monēbatur

monēbāmur

monēbāmini

monēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall or will be advised.

monēbor

monēberis, or re

monēbitur

monēbimur

monēbimini

monēbuntur

PERFECT.

*I have been advised, I was advised.*monitus sum¹

monitus es

monitus est

monitI sumus

monitI estis

monitI sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*monitus eram¹

monitus erās

monitus erat

monitI erāmus

monitI erātis

monitI erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*monitus erō¹

monitus eris

monitus erit

monitI erimus

monitI eritis

monitI erunt

¹ See 170, 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
monēar	monēāmur
monēāris, or re	monēāmini
monēātur	monēantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be advised, he would be advised.

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris, or re	monērēmini
monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT.

I may have been advised, or I have been advised.

monitus sim ¹	moniti simus
monitus sis	moniti sitis
monitus sit	moniti sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been advised, he would have been advised.²

monitus essem ¹	moniti essemus
monitus esses	moniti essetis
monitus esset	moniti essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. monēre, be thou advised ;	monēmini, be ye advised.
Fut. monētor, thou shalt be advised,	
monētor, he shall be advised ;	monentor, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. monēri, to be advised.	
Perf. monitus esse, ¹ to have been advised.	Perf. monitus, advised.
Fut. monitum iri, to be about to be advised.	Ger. monendus, to be advised, deserv- ing to be advised.

¹ See 177, 206, foot-notes.

² Or *I had been advised, you had been advised, etc.*

LESSON LXVII.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.—REVIEW OF
RULES XXXVII., XXXVIII., AND XL.—EXERCISES.195. *Vocabulary.*

Amor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>love.</i>
Annuus, a, um,	<i>annual, annually, for a year.</i>
Auctōritās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>authority, influence.</i>
Cōnsidius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Considius, an officer in Caesar's</i>
Creō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to create, appoint, elect. [army.</i>
Falsus, a, um,	<i>false.</i>
Imperitus, a, um,	<i>unskilful, ignorant.</i>
Mors, mortis, <i>f.</i>	<i>death.</i>
Nex, necis, <i>f.</i>	<i>death, putting to death.</i>
Nōnnūlli, ae, a, <i>pl.</i>	<i>some.</i>
Perterreō, ēre, ui, itum,	<i>to terrify greatly, terrify, frighten.</i>
Plūs, <i>comp. adv., pos. multum,</i>	<i>more.</i>
Potestās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>power.</i>
Pūblius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Publius, a Roman praenōmen.</i>
Renūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to report.</i>
Rūmor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>rumor, report.</i>
Sēsē,	<i>reduplicated form of sē. See</i>
Temerārius, a, um,	<i>rash. [102, 184, 4.</i>
Valeō, ēre, uī, itum,	<i>to avail, prevail.</i>

196. *Translate into English.*

1. Omnēs collēs ā nōbīs tenentur. 2. Omnia loca superiōra ā nōbīs tenēbuntur. 3. Omnēs collēs āc loca superiōra ab exercitū tenēbantur. 4. Nē falsīs rūmōribus terreāmur. 5. Nē hīs rūmōribus terreantur. 6. Utinam omnēs hostēs hōc rūmōre terreantur. 7. Dicunt vōs hīs rūmōribus terrērī. 8. Hominēs temerārīi atque imperītī saepe falsīs rūmōribus terrentur. 9. Imperātor dicit hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs saepe falsīs rūmōribus terrērī. 10. Pūblius Cōnsidius timōre perterritus renūntiāvit montem ab hostibus tenērī. 11. Sunt nōnnūllī quī multitudinem dēterrent nē frūmentum comportent.

12. Nōnnūllī prīncipēs adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī erant. Hī prīncipēs, adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittēbant. 13. Liscus in conventū dixit sēsē ob eam causam diū tacuisse. 14. Nōn is sum quī gravissimē mortis periculō terrear.¹ 15. Militēs mortis periculō terrērī nōn dēbent. 16. Vergobretus, quī creātur annuus, vītae necisque in suōs² habet potestātem. 17. Auctōritās Dumnorigis apud plēbem plūs valēbat quam ipsius magistrātūs.³

197. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Have not your vessels been detained by storms? Messengers have announced to us that our vessels have been detained by storms. 2. May we always be regarded by you as friends. 3. They say that the Aedui were always regarded by Caesar as friends. 4. Many towns were besieged by the Germans. 5. Messengers announce that many towns have been besieged by the Germans. Let us ascertain which towns have been besieged by them. 6. We are advised by our friends, who have large experience in military affairs, to remain (*keep ourselves*)⁴ in camp. 7. The ambassadors were so terrified that they remained silent for a long time.

8. You ought not to be terrified by these rumors. 9. Would that we had not been terrified by false rumors. 10. Were not the Gauls often terrified by false rumors? Caesar said that the Gauls were often terrified by false rumors. 11. By what rumors, my brave soldiers, have you been terrified? 12. With (*among*) you, Romans, the love of country ought to avail more than the fear of death. 13. Announce to the

¹ Subjunctive in a clause denoting Result. See 123, 500, I.; Suggestion XXIV., 3.

² In *suōs*, literally *into or against his own*, render *OVER* or *AMONG* his subjects, or his countrymen. Adjectives in the plural are often used substantively in Latin, as in English. *Suōs* is thus used.

³ Governed by *auctōritās* understood.

⁴ For Mood, see 119, Rule XLII.

general that this mountain is held by us. 14. Let us hold the mountain which we were ordered to occupy.

LESSON LXVIII.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF RULES XLI., XLII., AND XLIII.

198. *Vocabulary.*

Adequītō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to ride toward, ride.</i>
Alius, a, ud, 42, 151,	<i>other, another.</i>
Cōservō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to save, preserve, spare.</i>
Gubernātor, ōris, m.	<i>pilot.</i>
Impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to obtain one's request.</i>
Liger, is, m.	<i>the Liger, now the Loire, a river in southwestern Gaul.</i>
Līgonēs, um, m. pl.	<i>the Lingones, a tribe of central Gaul.</i>
Nauta, ae, m.	<i>sailor.</i>
Navis longa,	<i>a long ship, ship of war.</i>
Nēve, conj.	<i>nor, and not.</i>
Sed, conj.	<i>but.</i>
Triplex, icis,	<i>triple.</i>
Undique, adv.	<i>on every side.</i>

199. *Translate into English.*

1. Vicus appellābātur Octōdūrus. 2. Dicunt vicum appellātum esse Octōdūrum. 3. Dicēbant hunc vicum altissimīs montibus undique continērī. 4. Nē ad bellum celeriter excitēmur. 5. Caesar dicit omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum celeriter excitārī. 6. Dixērunt sē tibi rem ēnūntiāsse,¹ sed intellegere quantō cum periculō eam rem ēnūntiāssent.¹ 7. Caesar ad Līgonēs litterās nūntiōs-que mīsit nē Helvētiōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvarent. 8. Dicunt eam rem per fugitivōs hostibus nūntiātā esse. 9. Tum dēmum Caesar partem suārum copiārum quae castra

¹ Contracted from *ēnūntiāvisse* and *ēnūntiāvissent*.

hostium oppugnāret¹ mīsit. 10. Triplicem aciem prō castris instrūxit.

11. Galli lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mīserunt, et impetrāvērunt ut cōservārentur.² 12. Nē montēs quī vicō Octōdūrō impendent ab hostibus teneantur. 13. Nāvēs longae in flūmine Ligere aedificentur. 14. Caesar nāvēs longās in flūmine Ligere aedificārī jubet. 15. Nautae gubernātōrēsque ex prōvinciā nostrā comparentur. 16. Caesar nautās gubernātōrēsque ex prōvinciā nostrā comparārī jubet. 17. Caesarī nūntiātum est³ equitēs Ariovistī ad nostrōs adequitāre.

200. Translate into Latin.

1. The village in which Galba wintered was surrounded by very high mountains. Did he understand with how great peril he was wintering in that village? He understood that he was wintering there with great peril. 2. Horsemen rode toward us to announce the words of the king. 3. The Aedui were so terrified, that they sent messengers to Caesar to implore help. 4. The general sent a part of his forces to fortify the town. 5. Caesar sent a lieutenant to order ships of war to be built. 6. Ten ships of war have been built on the Rhine. 7. The deserters obtained their request, not to be regarded (*that they might not be regarded*) as enemies.

8. Those who were ordered to withstand the attack of the enemy were so terrified, that they implored help from Caesar. 9. May our authority avail more with you than that⁴ of our enemies. 10. The messengers said that their towns had been besieged by the enemy. 11. Brave soldiers will not be terrified by the fear of death. 12. The general says that his

¹ For *Mood*, see 119, 497, I.; see also Suggestion XXIV., 3.

² Ut cōservārentur. This is an *Object Clause*, depending upon *impetrāvērunt*, but it was developed out of a *Clause of Result*, and accordingly has the *Subjunctive*.

³ The *Subject* of *nūntiātum est* is the clause *equitēs . . . adequitāre*. See Suggestion XXV., 1.

⁴ Omit the pronoun in rendering into Latin.

soldiers are so brave that they are not terrified by the fear of death. 13. May that city always be held by our friends. 14. Would that these towns were held by our friends.

LESSON LXIX.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

201. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*¹

Caesar convocāvit principēs, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in his Liscum, magistrātum Aeduōrum. Hic magistrātus, qui Vergobretus appellātur, creātur annuus, et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem.

Caesar principēs Aeduōrum graviter accusāvit. Tum dēnum Liscus, quod antea tacuerat, ēnūntiāvit. Haec sunt verba: "Sunt nōnnūlli, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūs valet quam ipsōrum magistrātuum. Hi seditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrent nē frūmentum comportent. Ab iisdem vestra cōsilia hostibus ēnūntiantur." Postea dixit intellegere sēsē quantō cum periculō Caesarī rem ēnūntiāasset, et ob eam causam diū tacuisse.

Hāc ōrātiōne Dumnorix, Divitiaci frāter, dēsīgnātus est. Is māgnū numerum equitātis semper circum sē habēbat, et nōn solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs, largiter poterat.

202. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Liscus said that with the populace the authority of these citizens availed more, than that of the magistrate himself, and that they deterred the multitude from bringing (*that they should not bring*) grain. He also said that they announced to the enemy nearly all the plans of the Romans.

¹ See Directions for Reading at Sight, 137.

2. Who was Dumnorix? He was an Aeduan chief, the brother of Divitiacus, who was called the friend of Caesar and the Roman people.

3. So great fear took possession of the Aedui, whose lands the Helvetii were devastating, that they sent ambassadors to Caesar to implore aid from him. 4. The general ought to lead his army through the lands (*fields*) of the Aedui into the territory of the Santones, who are not far from our province. 5. The general is hastening with forced marches into Italy; he will there enrol three legions, and lead out of winter quarters the five that are now wintering in the vicinity of Rome.

LESSON LXX.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES V., VI., AND IX.

203. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Regō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the Active Voice. See page 164.

204. *Vocabulary.*

Auxilia, ōrum, *n. pl.*

Cōscribō, ere, scripsī, scriptum,

Cōstituō, ere, stitui, stitutum,

Continuus, a, um,

Dēliberō, āre, āvi, ātum,

Dicō, ere, dixī, dictum,

Ēducō, ere, duxī, ductum,

Hiems, emis, *f.*

Īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum,

Interim, *adv.*

Item, *adv.*

Jugum, i, *n.*

Maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm,

Medius, a, um,

auxiliaries.

to enrol, enlist.

[*decide.*

to station, place; to determine,

continuous, successive.

to deliberate.

to say, speak.

to lead out.

winter.

to draw up, arrange, array.

meanwhile, in the meantime.

also, likewise.

ridge, height.

to remain.

middle; the middle of.¹

¹ See foot-note on *summus*, 191.

Mittō, ere, misī, missum,	<i>to send.</i>
Prōducō, ere, duxī, ductum,	<i>to lead forth.</i>
Prōximē, <i>sup. adv.</i>	<i>nearest, most recently, last.</i>
Quattuor, <i>indeclinable,</i>	<i>four.</i>
Reducō, ere, duxī, ductum,	<i>to lead back.</i>
Sextus, a, um,	<i>sixth.</i>
Subducō, ere, duxī, ductum,	<i>to withdraw, lead off.</i>
Sūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum,	<i>to take.</i>
Veterānus, a, um,	<i>veteran.</i>

205. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar diem ad dēliberandum¹ sūmpsit. 2. Nōne diem ad dēliberandum sūmētis? Diem ad dēliberandum sūmpsimus. 3. Hostēs diem ad dēliberandum sūmpserant. 4. Quīque legiōnēs quae sustineant² hostium impetum mittōmus. 5. Caesar copiās suās in prōximum collem subduxerat, equitātumque quī sustinēret² hostium impetum mīserat. Ipse interim in colle mediō³ aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum, sed in summō³ jugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre prōximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocāvit. 6. Nōne haec in conventū dixisti? Ea quae in conventū dixī sunt vēra. 7. Quid Liscus dixerat? Liscus in conventū dixerat Dumnorigem, Divitiaci frātre, novīs rēbus studēre.

8. Imperātor sōlis occāsū⁴ suās cōpiās in castra redūcet. 9. Caesar ex eō diē diēs⁵ continuōs quīque prō castris suās cōpiās prōduxit et aciem instrūxit. 10. Ipse cōstituerat in Galliā hiemāre et tōtam hiemem ad⁶ exercitum manēre. 11. Caesar sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēduxerant. 12. Nōne dixisti

¹ *Ad dēliberandum*, 'for deliberation,' or 'to deliberate.' *Dēliberandum* is a Gerund in the Accusative depending upon *ad*. In Gerunds the Accusative always depends upon a preposition.

² See Suggestion XXIV., 3.

³ See foot-note on *summus*, 191.

⁴ Ablative of Time. See 93, Rule XXXI.

⁵ Duration of Time. See 93, Rule IX.

⁶ Near, in the vicinity of.

Aeduōs ā senātū populi Rōmānī amīcōs appellātōs esse?
Dixī eōs ā senātū frātrēs appellātōs esse.

206. *Translate into Latin.*

1. What did you say in the convention? I said that nearly all the Gauls at that time desired a revolution. 2. Shall you not send ambassadors to the neighboring states to implore aid from them? We have already sent ambassadors to these states, and have established peace and friendship with them. 3. How many legions shall you enrol in Italy? We shall enrol five legions in Italy, and three in Gaul. 4. The general had placed his legions in line of battle before the camp. 5. Have you taken time for¹ deliberation? We have taken time for deliberation, and have decided to send ambassadors to the Belgae.

6. The enemy kept themselves in camp for five days,² but on the sixth day they led their forces out of the camp, and placed them in line of battle. 7. Caesar placed in winter quarters the legions that he had enrolled in Italy. 8. Have you decided to pass the winter in Italy? We have decided to remain in Gaul during the whole winter. 9. For many days the Romans had formed the line of battle in front of the camp. 10. Caesar says that he remained near the army the whole winter.

LESSON LXXI.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL.

207. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Regō*, learn the Active Voice in full. See the following page.

¹ For; render by *ad*.

² For the Latin construction, see 98, Rule IX.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

209. ACTIVE VOICE.—Regō, *I rule.*VERB STEM, *reg*; PRESENT STEM, *regē*.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRæs. IND.	PRæs. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE
regō,	regere,	rēxī, ²	rēctūrum. ²

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.

regō
regis
regit

PLURAL.

regimus
regitis
regunt

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling, or I ruled.

regēbam
regēbās
regēbat

regēbāmus
regēbātis
regēbant

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

regam
regēs
reget

regēmus
regētis
regent

PERFECT.

I have ruled, or I ruled.

rēxī
rēxistī
rēxit

rēximus
rēxistis
rēxērunt, or ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rēxeram
rēxerās
rēxerat

rēxerāmus
rēxerātis
rēxerant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

rēxerō
rēxeris
rēxerit

rēxerimus
rēxeritis
rēxerint

¹ The characteristic is a variable vowel—*ō, u, e, i*: regō, regunt, regere, regis; Curtius calls it the *thematic vowel*; see Curtius, I., p. 199, but on *ō*, see also Meyer, 441.

² See 1, 30, 33.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I rule, let him rule.¹

SINGULAR.

regam

regās

regat

PLURAL.

regāmus

regātis

regant

IMPERFECT.

I should rule, he would rule.

regerem

regerēs

regeret

regerēmus

regerētis

regerent

PERFECT.

I may have ruled, or I have ruled.

rēxerim

rēxeris

rēxerit

rēxerimus

rēxeritis

rēxerint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have ruled, he would have ruled.

rēxissem

rēxissēs

rēxisset

rēxissēmus

rēxissētis

rēxissent

IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. rege, rule thou ;**Fut. regitō, thou shalt rule,**regitō, he shall rule ;**regite, rule ye.**regitōte, ye shall rule,**reguntō, they shall rule.*

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. regere, to rule.**Perf. rēxisse, to have ruled.**Fut. rēcturus esse, to be about to rule.*

PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. regēs, ruling.**Fut. rēcturus, about to rule.*

GERUND.

*Gen. regendī, of ruling,**Dat. regendō, for ruling,**Acc. regendum, ruling,**Abl. regendō, by ruling.*

SUPINE.

*Acc. rēctum, to rule,**Abl. rēctū, to rule, be ruled.*¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.

208. Vocabulary.

Adducō, ere, duxī, ductum,	to lead to, lead, bring. [Gaul.
Arvernī, ōrum, m. pl.	the Arverni, a tribe of southern
Cōgnoscō, ere, nōvī, nitum,	to ascertain.
Conjungō, ere, junxī, junctum,	to join, unite.
Cōsulō, ere, sului, sultum,	to consult.
Contendō, ere, tendī, tentum,	to contend, strive; to hasten.
Dēfendō, ere, fendi, fēsum,	to defend.
Deinde, adv.	then, in the next place.
Genus, eris, n.	kind, class.
Inter sē,	among themselves; with each
	other, with one another, to-
Nōndum, adv.	not yet. [gether.
Nunc, adv.	now.
Periculōsus, a, um,	perilous, dangerous.
Portus, ūs, m.	port, harbor.
Potentātus, ūs, m.	power, dominion, control.
Prīmum, sup. adv.	first.
Tenuis, e,	thin; feeble.
Tribūnus, ī, m.	tribune, one of the six principal
	officers of the legion.
Unquam, adv.	ever, at any time.

209. Translate into English.

1. Nunc dē hōc periculōsō bellō dicam. 2. Prīmum dē genere bellī, deinde dē māgnitūdine¹ dicāmus. 3. Dē salūte cīvium dicere dēbētis. 4. Patriam dēfendere dēbēmus. 5. Quae cīvitas unquam antea tam tenuis fuit quae nōn portūs suōs et agrōs dēfenderet.² 6. Cōsulite vōbīs, cōservāte vōs, conjugēs, liberōs, fortunāsque vestrās, populī Rōmānī nōmen salūtemque dēfendite. 7. Ob eās causās quinque legiōnēs in Galliā cōscribāmus.

8. Caesar dicit sē in Italiā māgnīs itineribus contendisse, duāsque ibī legiōnēs cōscripsisse. 9. Aeduī et Arvernī dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contendēbant. 10. Imperātor tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs conjungerent. 11. Militēs castra dēfendant. 12.

¹ That is, dē māgnitūdine bellī.

² For Mood, see 123, 500. I.

Nōne castra dēfendētis? Castra dēfendēmus. 13. Caesar Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs cum equitātū mīsit. 14. Dīcunt imperātōrem suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subduxisse. 15. Postulāmus nē quem militem ad colloquium adducātis. 16. Utinam Ariovistus suās cōpiās in castra redūcat.

210. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The general has decided to lead back his forces into camp. 2. Caesar says that the enemy led back their forces into camp at sunset. 3. Let us lead our forces out of the camp, and place them in line of battle. 4. Did you not say that the general placed his whole army in line of battle in front of the camp? We said that he led out six legions, and placed them in line of battle in front of the camp. 5. Would that the enemy would lead back their forces into camp. 6. Would that the general had led us back into camp.

7. Let us speak first of the Romans, then of the Gauls. 8. You have spoken of the valor of the soldiers; speak now of the safety of the citizens. 9. Let us defend the safety of our country. 10. Caesar said that these tribes were at that time contending with each other (*among themselves*). 11. We ought to consult, not for ourselves, but for our country. 12. The general says that he shall consult, not for himself, but for his country. 13. How many legions has the general enrolled in Gaul?

LESSON LXXII.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS. — ACTIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF RULES XII. AND XIV.

211. *Vocabulary.*

Commeō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to go back and forth, resort.</i>
Dēducō, ere, duxī, ductum,	<i>to lead from, conduct.</i>
Ducō, ere, duxī, ductum,	<i>to lead.</i>
Effeminō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to effeminate, enervate.</i>
Excūsō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to excuse.</i>

Gerō, ere, gessi, gestum,	to carry on, wage, do.
Importō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to bring in, import.
Incolō, ere, colui, cultum,	to inhabit, dwell.
Levitās, ātis, f.	levity, fickleness, impulsiveness.
Mātrīmōnium, īi, n.	marriage; in mātrīmōnium dūcere, to marry.
Menapii, ōrum, m. pl.	the Menapii, a tribe of northern
Mercātor, ōris, m.	merchant, trader. [Gaul.
Mātūrē, adv.	promptly, early.
Nocturnus, a, um,	nocturnal, by night.
Perfringō, ere, frēgi, frāctum,	to break through.
Pertineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	to pertain, tend.
Phalanx, phalangis, f.	phalanx, line.
Praepōnō, ere, posui, positum,	to place over or in command of.
Regiō, ōnis, f.	direction; region, district.
Ripa, ae, f.	bank of a river.
Séquani, ōrum, m. pl.	the Sequani or Sequanians, a tribe
Sub, prep. v. acc. and abl.	under; up to. [of eastern Gaul.
Succēdō, ere, cēssi, cēssum,	to come under, come up to, ap-
Uterque, utraque, utrumque, ¹	each; both. [proach.

212. Translate into English.

1. Galli lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt quī sē excūsārent.
2. Mercātōrēs ad Belgās nōn saepe commeant. 3. Mercātōrēs ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs² pertinent, saepe important. 4. Menapii eās regiōnēs incolēbant, et ad utramque rīpam flūminis Rhēnī agrōs vīcōsque habēbant. 5. Caesar mātūrius quam tempus annī postulābat in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēduxit; hibernis³ Labiēnum praeposuit. 6. Galli levitāte animī novīs rēbus stūdēbant. 7. Belgae cum Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, bellum gerunt.
8. Lēgātī dixērunt reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse.
9. Rēmī, quī prōximī Galliae sunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem

¹ Declined like *uter*. See 42, 151.

² *Ad effēminandos animōs* = *ad effēminandum animōs*, which is a rare construction. In the second form *animōs* depends upon the gerund *effēminandum*; in the first form it depends upon *ad*, and *effēminandōs* agrees with it; 43, Rule XXXIV. Literally, *to the souls to be enervated*; render *to enervate the soul*.

³ For construction, see 54, 384, II.

misērunt, quī dicerent,¹ reliquōs Belgās in armīs esse. 10. Dumnorix Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium duxerat. 11. Hostēs sub primam nostram aciem succēssērunt. 12. Hostium phalangem perfringāmus. 13. Galliae cīvitatēs nocturnōs conventūs habēbant.

213. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who inhabit these regions? Deserters say that the Menapii inhabit these regions, and that they have many villages beyond the Rhine. 2. Were not these Gauls friendly to Caesar? They were not friendly to him; they feared the Romans and desired a revolution. 3. Will not the soldiers obey the lieutenant? He has ordered them to fortify the winter quarters. They will obey him, and they will fortify the winter quarters with a high rampart. 4. Let the citizens consult in regard to the war.

5. To whom was Dumnorix friendly? Caesar says that Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was friendly to the Helvetii. 6. For this reason² the chiefs remained silent many days. 7. The Aedui were always friends to the Romans. 8. The general sent a lieutenant to lead the army out of winter quarters. 9. We advise you not to speak of this war. 10. We ought to ascertain how many legions Caesar enrolled in Gaul. 11. Let us lead back the soldiers into the camp that we may defend it.

LESSON LXXIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
REVIEW OF RULES XVI., XXIII., AND XXV.

214. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Regō*, learn the Passive voice in full. See the following page.

¹ For Mood, see 119, 497, I. ² Latin idiom, on account of these causes.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

210. PASSIVE VOICE.—*Regor, I am ruled.*VERB STEM, *reg* ; PRESENT STEM, *rege*.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.		
PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PRES. IND.
<i>regor,</i>	<i>regi,</i>	<i>rēctus¹ sum.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I am ruled.</i>	PLURAL.
<i>regor</i>	|	<i>regimur</i>
<i>regeris, or re</i>		<i>regimini</i>
<i>regitur</i>		<i>reguntur</i>

IMPERFECT.

	<i>I was ruled.</i>	
<i>regēbar</i>	|	<i>regēbāmur</i>
<i>regēbāris, or re</i>		<i>regēbāmini</i>
<i>regēbatur</i>		<i>regēbantur</i>

FUTURE.

	<i>I shall or will be ruled.</i>	
<i>regar</i>	|	<i>regēmur</i>
<i>regēris, or re</i>		<i>regēmini</i>
<i>regētur</i>		<i>regentur</i>

PERFECT.

	<i>I have been ruled, or I was ruled.</i>	
<i>rēctus sum¹</i>	|	<i>rēcti sumus</i>
<i>rēctus es</i>		<i>rēcti estis</i>
<i>rēctus est</i>		<i>rēcti sunt</i>

PLUPERFECT.

	<i>I had been ruled.</i>	
<i>rēctus eram²</i>	|	<i>rēcti erāmus</i>
<i>rēctus erās</i>		<i>rēcti erātis</i>
<i>rēctus erat</i>		<i>rēcti erant</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

	<i>I shall or will have been ruled.</i>	
<i>rēctus erō²</i>	|	<i>rēcti erimus</i>
<i>rēctus eris</i>		<i>rēcti eritis</i>
<i>rēctus erit</i>		<i>rēcti erunt</i>

¹ See 207, 209, foot-notes.² See 170, 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be ruled, let him be ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regar	regāmur
regāris, or re	regāmini
regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be ruled, he would be ruled.

regerer	regerēmur
regerēris, or re	regerēmini
regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled, or I have been ruled.

rēctus sim ¹	rēcti simus
rēctus sis	rēcti sitis
rēctus sit	rēcti sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.

rēctus essem ¹	rēcti essemus
rēctus esses	rēcti essetis
rēctus esset	rēcti essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. regere, be thou ruled;	regimini, be ye ruled.
Fut. regitor, thou shalt be ruled,	
regitor, he shall be ruled;	reguntor, they shall be ruled.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. regi, to be ruled.	
Perf. rēctus esse, ¹ to have been ruled.	Perf. rēctus, ruled.
Fut. rēctum iri, to be about to be ruled.	Ger. regendus, to be ruled, deserv- ing to be ruled.

¹ See 170, 206, foot-notes.

LESSON LXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
REVIEW OF RULES XVI., XXIII., AND XXV. — EX-
ERCISES.

215. *Vocabulary.*

Aedificium, ii, n.	building, house.
Aquifer, eri, m.	standard-bearer.
Cârus, a, um,	dear.
Centum, indeclinable,	hundred.
Claudô, ere, clausi, clausum,	to shut, close.
Germânia, ae, f.	Germany.
Germânus, a, um,	German.
Incendô, ere, cendi, censum,	to set on fire, fire, burn.
Însula, ae, f.	island.
Irrumpô, ere, rûpi, ruptum,	to break in, rush in.
Nûnquam, adv.	never.
Occidô, ere, cidi, cisum,	to kill, slay.
Pâgus, i, m.	division, canton.
Porta, ae, f.	gate.
Premô, ere, pressi, pressum,	to press, press hard, distress.
Quoque, adv.	also.
Remaneô, ère, mânsi, mânsum,	to remain.
Repellô, ere, reppuli, repulsum,	to repel, repulse. [many.
Ubii, òrum, m. pl.	the Ubii, a tribe of western Ger-
Usipetês, um, m. pl.	the Usipetes, a tribe of north-
	western Germany.
Vercingetorix, igis, m.	Vercingetorix, a Gallic chieftain.

216. *Translate into English.*

1. Aquifer ipse prô castris fortissimè pûgnâns¹ occiditur.
2. Multî militês fortissimè pûgnantês occisi sunt.
3. Nônne omnês magnâ multitudîne hostium premêmur?
4. Utinam hostês omnês nostrâ virtûte repellantur.
5. Num ab hostibus eô tempore repulsi estis? Nûnquam ab hostibus repulsi sumus.
6. Quid apud Alesiam geritur? Galli perterriti in oppidum irrumpunt; Vercingetorix imperâtor jubet portâs

¹ While fighting. See Suggestion XX., 3.

claudī, nē castra nūdentur. 7. Omnia vīcī Octōdūrī aedificia incēnsa sunt. 8. Nōnne multa oppida ab Helvētiīs incēnsa sunt? Post Orgetorigis mortem Helvētīi oppida sua omnia incendērunt.

9. Māgna Germāniae pars ā bellicōsissimīs nātiōnibus eō tempore incolēbātur. 10. Multae insulae ā ferīs barbarisque nātiōnibus incoluntur. 11. Caesar obsidēs ad sē addūcī jubet. 12. Usīpetēs Germānī ab Suēbīs multōs annōs premēbantur. Ubiī quoque graviter ab Suēbīs pressī erant. 13. Suēbī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur. 14. Omnium¹ quī Galliam incolunt fortissimī sunt Belgae. 15. Suēbī, quī bellicōsissimī Germānōrum omnium esse dīcuntur, ūnō in locō nōn longius annō² remanent. 16. Caesar mīlitum vītā suā salūte² cārīōrem habēbat.

217. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were not the Belgae braver than the other Gauls?^a They are said to have been the bravest of all the Gauls. Did they not often wage war with the Germans who dwelt beyond the Rhine? They are said to have waged war continually with the neighboring states. 2. What is dearer than life? To brave soldiers liberty and country are dearer than life. Ought we not to hold (*regard*) liberty and country dearer than life itself? 3. This part of Gaul has always been inhabited by warlike nations. 4. Which part of Gaul was inhabited by the brave Belgae? 5. One part of Gaul is said to have been inhabited by the Celts.

6. The bravest and most warlike of the Gauls were conquered by the Romans. 7. By the valor of our soldiers the enemy have been repulsed. 8. The bravest of the soldiers were slain. 9. Let us not remain in this town longer than one day. 10. Did you not say that these islands were inhabited by fierce nations? These islands are said to have

¹ *Partitive Genitive.* See 31, 397, 3. ² For Case, see 88, Rule XXIII.

^a Render first with *quam*, and secondly without it.

been inhabited by barbarous nations. 11. Were not many towns burned by the enemy? Many towns are said to have been burned by them. 12. The general has ordered the army to be led back into camp, and the gates to be closed.

LESSON LXXV.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS. — PASSIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF RULES XXX., XXXI., AND XXXIII.

218. Vocabulary.

Aquitānī, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>the Aquitani or Aquitanians, the inhabitants of the southwestern division of Gaul.</i>
Cabillōnum, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>Cabillonum, a town of Eastern Gaul.</i>
Certus, a, um,	<i>certain, fixed, appointed.</i>
Compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētum,	<i>to fill, cover.</i>
Cōnfestīm, <i>adv.</i>	<i>hastily, speedily.</i>
Cotta, ae, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cotta, a lieutenant under Caesar.</i>
Dividō, ere, visi, vīsum,	<i>to divide.</i>
Funda, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>sling.</i>
Indicō, ere, dixī, dictum,	<i>to appoint.</i>
Inopia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>lack, want, need.</i>
Mandō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to commission, order; to entrust, consign, commit, betake.</i>
Matiscō, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Matisco, a town in southeastern Gaul.</i>
Novus, a, um,	<i>new.</i>
Sulpicius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Sulpicius, a lieutenant under Caesar.</i>
Supplicātiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>thanksgiving.</i>
Tigurinus, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Tigurinus, one of the four cantons of evening.</i>
Vesper, eri, <i>m.</i>	<i>[the Helvetii.]</i>
Viginti, <i>indeclinable,</i>	<i>twenty.</i>
Vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to wound.</i>

219. Translate into English.

1. Omnis civitās Helvētiōrum in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hōrum ūnus appellātur Tigurīnus. 2. Gallia est dīvisa

in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam Gallī. 3. Imperātor hōrā septimā vicum hominibus¹ complērī jūssit. 4. Cotta lēgātus fortissimē pūgnāns² fundā vulnerātus est. 5. Rōmae diērum vigintī³ supplicātiō indicitur. 6. Caesar Cicerōnem et Sulpicium Cabillōnī et Mātiscōne in Aeduīs collocāvit.

7. Hostēs ad vesperum fortiter pūgnāvērunt; tum dēmum fugae sēsē mandāvērunt. 8. Litterae ad Caesarem cōfestim ab Cicerōne mittuntur. 9. Ariovistus dixit eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō superātās esse. 10. Multī omnium rērum inopiā adductī auxilium ā Caesare implōrābant. Itaque obsidēs imperāvit, eōsque ad certam⁴ diem adducī jūssit. 11. Multa ab Caesare in colloquiō dicta sunt. 12. Duae legiōnēs, quae in Galliā prōximē cōscrip̄tae erant, fugae sēsē mandābant.

220. Translate into Latin.

1. The lands of the Gauls were often seized by the Germans. 2. Many Gauls, distressed with want at home, implored aid from the neighboring towns. 3. At that time Caesar was enrolling new legions in Italy. 4. Many legions had already been enrolled in Gaul and Italy. 5. At Rome⁵ Caesar is said to have been advised to hasten into Gaul. On the same day he was advised by Labienus to enlist a new legion. 6. A part of a legion had been placed in winter quarters at Octodurus. 7. At that time he is said to have ordered all the legions to be led out of winter quarters.

8. On that day the camp of the Romans was assaulted by the Gauls. 9. These brave soldiers were wounded while fighting⁶ for their country. 10. Let us order them to remain

¹ For *Case*, see 78, Rule XXV.

² See Suggestion XX., 3.

³ Literally, of twenty days; render, for twenty days. The *Accusative of Duration of Time* could have been used.

⁴ See foot-note 1, page 234.

⁵ See 185, 425, II.

⁶ In rendering into Latin, omit *while*. See Suggestion XX., 3.

in the province during the winter.¹ 11. Into how many parts was Gaul divided? Caesar says that Gaul was divided into three parts. 12. Gaul is said to have been divided into three parts. 13. Into how many parts did you say that our country is divided? I said that it is divided into many parts. 14. He is said to have led his army back into camp about midday.

alt

LESSON LXXVI.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

221. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*²

Caesar cōpiās suās in prōximum collem subduxit, equitātumque quī sustinēret³ hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō⁴ triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārū, sed in summō jugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre prōximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī jūssit. Helvētiī sub prīmam nostram aciem succēssērunt, sed Rōmānī facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Hostēs ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum fortiter pūgnāvērunt. Diūtius nostrōrum impetūs sustinēre nōn poterant; multī vulnerātī erant; itaque timōre perterritī fugae sēsē mandāvērunt, atque in finēs Lingonum contendērunt. Caesar ad Lingonēs lītterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent. Tum dēmum Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt.

¹ *During the winter.* Use the Accusative of Duration of Time. See 98, 379.

² See Directions for Reading at Sight, 137.

³ See Suggestion XXIV., 3.

⁴ See foot-note on *summus*, 141.

222. *Translate into Latin.*

1. About midday the general led out all his forces, and placed them in line of battle before the camp. The enemy in sight of their commander fought bravely for many hours, but at length, repulsed by the valor of our soldiers, and overcome (*terrified*) by fear, they betook themselves to flight. The general was wounded, and many soldiers were slain.

2. So great fear took possession of the Gauls, that they decided to fortify their cities, to bring grain into them from their lands, and to build a large number of ships.

3. The Gauls had filled this town with brave soldiers, and Caesar had been advised not to attack it on account of the valor of the men, the width of the moat, and the height of the wall. 4. At that time so great fear took possession of all the Aedui, whose lands the Helvetii were devastating, that they fortified their cities, and sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask aid.

LESSON LXXVII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES XXXIV., XXXV. AND XXXVI.

223. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Audiō* learn the Indicative Mood of the Active Voice. See page 180.

224. *Vocabulary.*

Aduātucī, ōrum, *m. pl.*

Ante, *adv.*

Audiō, īre, īvī or fī, ītum,

Clēmēntia, ae, *f.*

Cōgō, ere, cōēgī, cōactum,

the Aduatuci, a tribe of northern
before. [Gaul.

to hear, hear of.

clemency, forbearance, mercy.

to drive together, bring together,
collect; to force, compel.

Conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum,	to come together, assemble, meet,
Cotidiānus, a, um,	daily. [come.]
Duplex, icis,	double.
Helvētius, a, um,	Helvetian.
Latus, eris, n.	side.
Mūniō, ire, ivi or ii, itum,	to fortify.
Neque, conj.	neither, nor; neque . . . neque,
Pēs, pedis, m.	foot. [neither . . . nor.]
Scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum,	to write.
Veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum,	to come.
Videō, ēre, vidi, visum,	to see.

225. Translate into English.

1. Nōne vōcēs mīlitum audītis? Vōcēs omnium mīlitum audīmus. 2. Tum vērō nostrī clāmōrem ab eā parte audīvērunt. 3. Nōne castra mūniētis? Castra vallō mūniēmus. 4. Caesar castra in altitudinem pedum¹ duodecim vallō mūniverat. 5. Legiōnēs sex, quae primae vēnerant, castra mūniēbant. 6. Aduātucī, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, ūnum oppidum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant.² 7. Eō tempore castra vallō fōssāque mūniēbāmus. 8. Ob eās rēs Galba ūnam partem vicī, quī appellātur Octōdūrus, vallō fōssāque cōnfestim mūnivit.

9. Flūmen latus ūnum castrōrum mūniēbat. 10. Venetī oppida mūniēbant, frūmenta ex agris in oppida comportābant, nāvēs in Venetiam cōgēbant. 11. Rhēnus lātissimus atque altissimus agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit. 12. Aduātucī Caesaris clēmentiam ab aliīs audiēbant. 13. Tanta opera neque viderant ante³ Gallī neque audierant.³ 14. Eādē dē causā Helvētīi Celtārum omnium fortissimī sunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt. 15. Totius ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt.

¹ Construe with *vallō*.

² *Mūnierant*, contracted from *mūniverant*; *audierant*, from *audīverant*.

³ Observe that *ante* is sometimes an adverb, and sometimes a preposition.

226. *Translate into Latin.*

1. What did you hear at Rome? We heard that nearly all the Belgae had conspired against the Roman people. From whom did you hear this report? We heard it from many citizens and from the consuls themselves. 2. Judges, you have heard the words of many witnesses, and all these things which you have heard are true. 3. Have the enemy heard what we are doing? I hear that all our plans have been announced to them by deserters. 4. Have you heard what we have been doing at this time at Rome? We have heard of¹ the many good things which you have done in that city.

5. Have you not fortified all these towns with high walls? We fortify our towns, not by walls and ramparts, but by the valor of our citizens. 6. I have never seen the cities of which² you write, but I have heard of them from others. 7. The legions that had been enrolled in Gaul were at that time fortifying the camp. 8. Have you not often heard that the Belgae incessantly wage war with the Germans? I have often heard that³ from you. 9. You have all heard that many states sent ambassadors to Caesar at that time to ask aid.

LESSON LXXVIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
REVIEW OF RULES LV., LVI., AND LXI.

227. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Audiō*, learn the Active Voice in full. See the following page.

¹ Omit *of* in rendering into Latin. See 225, sentence 13.

² *Of which* = *concerning which*.

³ When the antecedent is a clause, the pronoun must be *neuter*.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

211. ACTIVE VOICE.—*Audiō, I hear.*VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRæs. IND.	PRæs. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
<i>audiō,</i>	<i>audire,</i>	<i>audivi,</i>	<i>audītum.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I hear.</i>	PLURAL.
<i>audiō</i>	|	<i>audimus</i>
<i>audis</i>	|	<i>auditis</i>
<i>audit</i>	|	<i>audiunt</i>

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing, or I heard.

<i>audiebam</i>	|	<i>audiebāmus</i>
<i>audiebās</i>	|	<i>audiebātis</i>
<i>audiebat</i>	|	<i>audiebant</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

<i>audiam</i>	|	<i>audiemus</i>
<i>audietis</i>	|	<i>audietis</i>
<i>audiet</i>	|	<i>audient</i>

PERFECT.

I have heard, or I heard.

<i>audivi</i>	|	<i>audivimus</i>
<i>audivistis</i>	|	<i>audivistis</i>
<i>audivit</i>	|	<i>audiverunt, or ēre</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

<i>audiveram</i>	|	<i>audiverāmus</i>
<i>audiverās</i>	|	<i>audiverātis</i>
<i>audiverat</i>	|	<i>audiverant</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have heard.

<i>audiverō</i>	|	<i>audiverimus</i>
<i>audiveritis</i>	|	<i>audiveritis</i>
<i>audiverit</i>	|	<i>audiverint</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I hear, let him hear.¹

SINGULAR.

audiam
audias
audiat

PLURAL.

audiamus
audistis
audiant

IMPERFECT.

I should hear, he would hear.

audirem
audirēs
audiret

audirēmus
audirētis
audirent

PERFECT.

I may have heard, or I have heard.

audiverim
audiveris
audiverit

audiverimus
audiveritis
audiverint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have heard, he would have heard.

audivissem
audivissēs
audivisset

audivissemus
audivissetis
audivissent

IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. audi, hear thou;**audite, hear ye.*

*Fut. audis, thou shalt hear,
audis, he shall hear;*

*audistote, ye shall hear,
audiant, they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. audire, to hear.**Perf. audivisse, to have heard.**Fut. auditurus esse, to be about to hear.*

PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. audiens, hearing.**Fut. auditurus, about to hear.*

GERUND.

*Gen. audiendi, of hearing,
Dat. audiendō, for hearing,
Acc. audiendum, hearing,
Abl. audiendō, by hearing.*

SUPINE.

*Acc. auditum, to hear,
Abl. auditū, to hear, be heard.*

¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196, II.

228. Vocabulary.

Alō, ere, alui, alitum and altum,	to nourish, support, sustain.
Intellegō, ere, lēxi, lēctum,	to understand, know.
Prōnūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to proclaim, declare.
Propterea, adv.	for this reason; propterea quod, for the reason that, because.
Quaerō, ere, quaesivi or ii, itum,	to seek, inquire, ask.
Quisque, quaeque, quidque and quodque,	every, every one, each, each one.
Quod, conj.	that; because.
Sabinus, i, m.	Sabinus, a lieutenant under
Sciō, ire, ivi or ii, itum,	to know. [Caesar.
Secundus, a, um,	second. [devote oneself to.
Serviō, ire, ivi or ii, itum,	to serve, subserve; to promote,
Sincērē, adv.	truthfully.
Sūmptus, ūs, m.	expense.
Titūrius, ii, m.	Titurius, a Roman name.
Ūllus, a, um, 42, 151,	any.
Ūtilitās, ātis, f.	usefulness; interest, advantage.
Vēstiō, ire, ivi or ii, itum,	to clothe.
Viātor, ōris, m.	traveller.

229. Translate into English.

1. Hōc oppidum duplici mūrō mūniāmus. 2. Hostēs suam urbem altissimō mūrō mūnīre parābant. 3. Imperātor nōs castra vallō mūnīre jubet. 4. Caesar Quīntum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallō mūnīre iussit. 5. Utinam Caesar castra vallō fossāque mūnīvisset.¹ 6. Audiāmus Rōmānōs militēs. 7. Haec ut intellegātis ā mē sincērē prōnūntiārī, audīte Rōmānōs militēs. 8. Caesar prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit.

9. Siciliam nūtrīcem plēbis Rōmānae nōminō, propterea quod sine ūllō sūmptū nostrō² mākīmōs exercitūs nostrōs vēstīvit, aluit, armāvit. 10. Cōsulēs ūtilitātī salūtīque serviunt. 11. Salūtī cīvium omnium servīre dēbētis. 12. Dicit

¹ For the force of the Tense, see 114, 483, 2.

² Sūmptū nostrō, literally, our expense; render, expense to us.

sē hōc ab aliīs audīvisse. 13. Dicunt sex legiōnēs castra mūnitūrās esse. 14. Studium audiendī; mūniendō; miles vōcem audiēs; nostrī clāmōrem audientēs; militēs castra mūnitūri. 15. Gallī ab viātōribus quaerunt quid dē quāque rē audierint.

230. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Which legion was at that time fortifying the camp? The lieutenant said that the sixth legion was fortifying the camp. 2. The general says that he shall fortify the winter quarters with a high rampart. 3. We all know what you heard at Rome. 4. Let us now hear what you are doing and what you are seeing. 5. Lieutenants, fortify this city with a double wall; let not the enemy take it by storm.

6. Judges, hear now the words of these witnesses. 7. Would that you had all heard the words of these witnesses. 8. Hearing the shouts of the soldiers, the general ordered the lieutenants to lead out the whole army, and to place it in line of battle. 9. Have you heard which legions have been sent to sustain¹ the attack of the enemy? We have heard that five legions have been sent to sustain the attack of the enemy, and that two remain in camp.

LESSON LXXIX.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. — ACTIVE VOICE. — RULE XXIX. — REVIEW OF RULES LVII. AND LVIII.

231. *Examples. — Ablative of Specification.*

1. Nōmine fuit rēx. He was king **IN NAME.**

2. Claudus alterō pede. Lamē **IN one FOOT.**

NOTE. — The Latin usage illustrated in the Ablatives *nōmine* and *pede* is expressed in the following

¹ To sustain; render by a *Relative Clause* denoting *Purpose*.

RULE XXIX.—Specification.

424. A noun, adjective, or verb may take an Ablative to define its application :

Nōmine, nōn potestāte fuit rēx, He was king IN NAME, not IN POWER. Nep. Claudus alterō pede, lame IN ONE FOOT. Nep. Reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, they surpass the other Gauls in courage. Caes.

232. Vocabulary.

Accurrō, ere, cucurri or curri,

cursum,

Adamō, āre, āvi, ātum,

Administrō, āre, āvi, ātum,

Angustus, a, um,

Bellovacī, ōrum, *m. pl.*

Cultus, ūs, *m.*

Dēfēnsor, ōris, *m.*

Finīō, īre, ivi or ii, itum,

Fluō, ere, flūxi, flūxum,

Imperium, ii, *n.*

Influō, ere, flūxi, flūxum,

Instituō, ere, uī, ūtum,

Lacus, ūs, *m.*

Lemannus, ī, *m.*

Minus, *comp. adv.*

Noviodūnum, ī, *n.*

Praecedō, ere, cēssi, cēssum,

Superior, us, *comp. of superus,*

Vacuus, a, um,

to run to, hasten to, run. [much.

to be greatly pleased with, like very

to administer, manage, direct.

narrow, limited. [Gaul.

the Bellovacī, a tribe of northwestern culture, refinement, civilization.

defender.

to end; to bound, limit.

to flow.

empire, government.

to flow into, empty, flow.

to begin, proceed.

lake.

[Lake of Geneva.

Lemannus, Leman; lacus Lemannus,

less; minimē, sup., least, very little, not at all, by no means.

Noviodunum, a town in northwestern

to surpass. [Gaul.

superior.

vacant, empty, deserted, abandoned.

233. Translate into English.

1. Eō tempore Rhēnus populī Rōmānī imperium unā ex parte finiebāt. 2. Minimē ad Belgās mercatōrēs saepe comēant. 3. Helvētiī angustōs finēs habent, et ob eam rem minus facile cum finitimīs bellum gerere possunt. 4. Rhodanus inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum fluit. 5. Lacus Lemannus in flūmen Rhodanum influit. 6. Ducēs hostium castra mūnīre instituunt. 7. Caesar in finēs Suessiōnum exercitum duxit, et māgnīs itineribus ad oppidum Noviodū-

num contendit; id vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audierat.

8. Helvētīī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt.

9. Imperātor hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat.

10. Germānī, hominēs ferī āc barbarī, agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum adamābant. 11. Cōnsīdius ad Caesarem accurrit, et dicit montem ab hostibus tenēri. 12. Bellovacī sē cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dixērunt. 13. Vercingetorix bellum administrāre parābat.

234. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar says that the warlike Germans were greatly pleased with (*liked very much*) the refinement of the Gauls.

2. We all know that the river Rhone separated the territory of the Helvetii from the Roman province. 3. The Romans

are said to have surpassed the Gauls in valor. 4. I have often heard that the Gauls at that time surpassed the Ger-

mans in refinement. 5. I have heard from deserters that a brave lieutenant was slain in that battle.

6. They say that the enemy have fortified their towns, and that they will fight bravely for their country. 7. We have

heard that you will remain in Italy the whole winter. 8. Have you not heard that many Gauls were held in servi-

tude by Ariovistus. We have often heard that from the Gauls themselves. 9. The Aedui ought not to be held in

servitude by barbarians. 10. At Geneva many friends were awaiting our arrival from Italy.

LESSON LXXX.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL.

235. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Audiō*, learn the Passive Voice in full. See the following page.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

212. PASSIVE VOICE.—Audior, *I am heard*.VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.
audior,PRES. INF.
audiri,PRES. IND.
auditus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.

audior
audiris, or re
auditor

PLURAL.

audimur
audimini
audiuntur

IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*audiebar
audiebaris, or re
audiebaturaudiebamur
audiebamini
audiebantur

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.*audiar
audieris, or re
audieturaudiemur
audiemini
audientur

PERFECT.

*I have been heard, or I was heard.*auditus sum¹
auditus es
auditus estauditi sumus
auditi estis
auditi sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*auditus eram¹
auditus erās
auditus eratauditi erāmus
auditi erātis
auditi erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*auditus erō¹
auditus eris
auditus eritauditi erimus
auditi eritis
auditi erunt¹ See 170, 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be heard, let him be heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiar	audiamur
audiaris, or re	audiamini
audiat	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be heard, he would be heard.

audirer	audirēmur
audirēris, or re	audirēmini
audirēt	audirentur

PERFECT.

I may have been heard, or I have been heard.

auditus sim¹	auditi simus
auditus sis	auditi sitis
auditus sit	auditi sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been heard, he would have been heard.

auditus essem¹	auditi essemus
auditus esses	auditi essetis
auditus esset	auditi essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audire, be thou heard;	audimini, be ye heard.
Fut. auditor, thou shalt be heard,	
auditor, he shall be heard;	audiantur, they shall be heard.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. audiri, to be heard.	
Perf. auditus esse,¹ to have been heard.	Perf. auditus, heard.
Fut. auditum iri, to be about to be heard.	Ger. audiendus, to be heard, deserving to be heard.

¹ See 170, 206, foot-notes.

LESSON LXXXI.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
 RULE XXVIII. — REVIEW OF RULE XXII. — EXERCISES.

236. *Examples. — Ablative of Difference.*

1. *Ūnō diē longior mēnsis.* *A month one DAY longer (longer BY one DAY).*
2. *Biduō mē antecēssit.* *He preceded me BY TWO DAYS.*

NOTE. — The Latin usage illustrated in the Ablatives *diē* and *biduō* is expressed in the following

RULE XXVIII. — Ablative of Difference.

423. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

Ūnō diē longiorem mēnsem faciunt, they make the month ONE DAY longer (longer BY ONE DAY). Cic. Biduō mē antecēssit, he preceded me BY TWO DAYS. Cic. Sōl multis partibus māior est quam terra, the sun is very much (literally BY MANY PARTS) larger than the earth. Cic.

237. *Vocabulary.*

Britanni, ōrum, m. pl.

the Britons.

Cantium, ii, n.

Kent.

Cevenna, ae, f.

*Cevenna, a mountain range in southern Gaul, now the Cé-
 excellently. [vennes.*

Ēgregiē, adv.

to think.

Existimō, āre, āvī, ātum,

civilized.

Humānus, a, um,

to impede, hinder, embarrass.

Impediō, īre, ivi or li, itum,

entangled.

Impeditus, a, um,

month.

Mēnsis, is, m.

Oppūgnātiō, ōnis, f.

assault, attack.

Pauci, ae, a,

few.

Pellis, is, f.

skin.

Plērusque, raque, rumque,

*[most.
 the larger or greater part, the
 presence; in praesentiā, for the
 present, at the time.*

Praesentia, ae, f.

Prohibeō, ēre, nī, itum,	<i>to prohibit, check, prevent, keep.</i>
Rapina, ae, f.	<i>robbery, plundering, pillaging.</i>
Reperiō, ire, repperī, repertum,	<i>to find.</i>
Satis, adv.	<i>enough; satis habēre, to consider</i>
Tamen, adv.	<i>yet, nevertheless. [it sufficient.</i>
Vesontio, ōnis, m.	<i>Vesontio, a town of eastern Gaul,</i>
Vincō, ere, vici, victum,	<i>to conquer. [now Besançon.</i>

238. *Translate into English.*

1. Vesontio, oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, naturā loci muniēbatur. 2. Nostrum oppidum altissimō mūrō mūniri debet. 3. Nostra oppida egregiē mūniantur. 4. Hic locus egregiō naturā atque opere munitus est. 5. Britannī silvam impeditam, vallō atque fossā munitam, oppidum vocant. 6. Caesar oppidum egregiē naturā atque opere munitum repperit; tamen hōc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. 7. Iter agminis nostrī multis rēbus impediēbatur. 8. Aduātucī, dō quibus suprā scripsimus, sua omnia in ūnum oppidum egregiē naturā munitum comportābant.

9. Ex Britannis¹ omnibus longē sunt humanissimī qui Cantium incolunt; interiōrēs plērique pellibus sunt vēstitī. 10. Oppidōrum oppugnatio duābus rēbus impediēbatur. 11. Arvernī sē monte Cevennā munitōs esse existimābant. 12. Ex captivīs quaerāmus quam ob rem hostēs castra nōn mūniant. 13. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat² in praesentiā² hostem rapinīs prohibēre. 14. Ariovistus paucis mēnsibus³ ante Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerat.

239. *Translate into Latin.*

1. These cities are all excellently fortified by nature and art. 2. You will find that city excellently fortified with a double wall. 3. Did you say that the winter quarters of the

¹ Literally, *out of the Britons*; render, *of the Britons*. It has the force of a *Partitive Genitive*.

² See *Vocabulary*.

³ See 236, Rule XXVIII.

enemy are not fortified? I have heard from captives that the winter quarters of the Gauls are not fortified by art, but that they are enclosed on all sides¹ by high mountains. 4. Those who inhabited a large part of this island were barbarians, and were clothed in skins. 5. Many islands were then inhabited by barbarians, who were clothed in skins.

6. Among barbarians an entangled forest, fortified with a rampart and a moat, is often called a town. 7. Our cities will all be fortified many days² before the arrival of the enemy. 8. From whom did you hear that the camp of the Britons is already fortified with a high rampart? I have heard that report from the captives, of whom I have written above. 9. Did you not say that this tower is higher than that? It is higher than that by many feet. 10. The deserters said that the town had been fortified two years before. 11. Would that your towns had been fortified before the arrival of the enemy.

LESSON LXXXII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — PASSIVE VOICE. —
REVIEW OF RULE IV. — RULE XXXII.

240. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

RULE XXXII.³—Ablative Absolute.⁴

431. A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance:

¹ *On all sides*; Latin idiom, *FROM all sides*; or render by a single adverb.

² Use the *Ablative of Difference*.

³ It seems to be no longer necessary to introduce Rules, as in previous lessons, by means of examples. The pupil has already learned the fact that a *Grammatical Rule* is nothing more than a *statement of the general usage of the language*. The introductory examples were intended chiefly to show him this fact.

⁴ This Ablative is called *absolute*, because it is not directly dependent for its construction upon any other word in the sentence.

Serviō rēgnante vignērunt, *they flourished in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning).¹ Cic. Rēgibus exāctis, cōsulēs creāti sunt, *after the banishment of the kings,*² *consuls were appointed.* Liv. Equitātū praeissō, subsequēbātur, *having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes. Rēgnum haud satis prōsperum neglēctā rēligiōne, *a reign not sufficiently prosperous because religion was neglected.* Liv. Perditis rēbus omnibus tamen virtūs sē sustentāre potest, *though all things are lost, still virtue is able to sustain itself.* Cic.

1. The Ablative Absolute, much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, generally expresses the *time, cause, or some attendant circumstance* of an action.

2. This Ablative is generally best rendered — (1) by a *noun with a preposition* — *in, during, after, by, with, through, etc.*; (2) by an *active participle with its object*; or (3) by a *clause with when, while, because, if, though, etc.*; ³ see examples above.

3. A connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative:

Nisi mūnitīs castris, *unless the camp should be fortified.* Caes.

4. A *noun and an adjective, or even two nouns, may be in the Ablative Absolute*:⁴

Serēnō caelō, *when the sky is clear.* Sen. Caninlō cōsule, *in the consulship of Caninius.* Cic.

241. Vocabulary.

Abstineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	<i>to abstain, refrain.</i>
Acūtus, a, um,	<i>sharpened, sharp.</i>
Adhūc, adv.	<i>hitherto, thus far, as yet.</i>
Catēna, ae, f.	<i>chain.</i>
Culpa, ae, f.	<i>fault, blame.</i>
Dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctum,	<i>to choose, select, elect.</i>
Latinus, a, um,	<i>Latin.</i>
Liberō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to free, liberate.</i>
Ligārius, ii, m.	<i>Ligarius, a prominent Roman in</i> <i>whose behalf Cicero pleaded be-</i>
Nāvigium, ii, n.	<i>vessel, ship.</i> [fore Caesar.

¹ Or, *while Servius was reigning or was king.*

² Or, *after the kings were banished.*

³ The first method of translation comes nearer the original Latin conception, but the other methods generally accord better with the English idiom.

⁴ This construction is peculiar to the Latin. In the corresponding constructions in Sanskrit, Greek, and English, the present participle of the verb to be is used.

Nōbilitās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>nobility ; the nobility, nobles.</i>
Probō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to approve ; to prove.</i>
Quārē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>wherefore.</i>
Relinquō, ere, liqui, lictum,	<i>to leave.</i>
Spoliō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to despoil, rob, deprive.</i>
Sudēs, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>stake.</i>
Tamesis, is, <i>m.</i>	<i>the Thames.</i>
Trini, ae, <i>a,</i>	<i>three-fold, triple.</i>
Vacō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to be without, be free from.</i>
Vinciō, ire, vinxi, vinctum,	<i>to bind.</i>

242. *Translate into English.*

1. Labiēnus monte occupātō nostrōs expēctābat, proeliōque abstinēbat. 2. Mūnītis castris, Caesar duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit, quattuor reliquās in castra reduxit. 3. Ducēs iī¹ dēliguntur, quī summam scientiam rēi militāris habēre existimantur. 4. Caesar ad² flūmen Tamesim exercitum duxit; ad² alteram flūminis rīpam māgnae cōpiāe hostium erant instrūctae; rīpa autem erat acūtis sudibus mūnīta. 5. Captīvī trīnis catēnis vinctī sunt. 6. Celtæ Latīnā linguā Gallī appellāntur.

7. Dumnorix, Divitiacī frāter, dixit Galliam omnī nōbilitāte spoliātam esse. 8. Helvētīi tertiā ex parte lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō continentur. 9. Imperātor fortis servitūte Graeciam liberāvit. 10. Mūrus dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est. 11. Tuum, Brūte,³ iūdicium probō. 12. Adhūc, Caesar,³ Quīntus Ligārius omnī culpā vacat. 13. Quārē cōservāte, iūdicēs,³ hunc hominem nōbilissimum. 14. Caesar nāvigia, quae sēcum habēbat, militibus complēri iūssit, et lēgātōs tribūnōsque militum monuit, ut ad² tempus omnēs rēs ab iis administrārentur.

¹ Observe that *iī* is the *subject*, and *ducēs* a *Predicate Noun*.

² Observe that different English words must be used in rendering this preposition, according to the connection in which it occurs. Thus *to the river*, *on or near the bank*, *at the (proper) time*, or *in time*.

³ The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word.

243. *Translate into Latin.*

1. As the general had freed the citizens from servitude,¹ he was called the father of his country. 2. May our country always be protected (*fortified*) by the valor of its citizens. 3. Having filled the ships with soldiers,¹ Caesar prepared to hasten into Britain. 4. Soldiers,² may you be called true friends of your country.

5. Having led his army to the Thames,¹ Caesar was told³ that the enemy were on the other bank of the river. 6. General,² we ask that your army be led back into camp. 7. On hearing our words,¹ the general ordered his army to be led back into camp. 8. Citizens,² this man is free from blame; let him be selected as leader. 9. The general, leaving one legion in camp,¹ led the others toward the enemy.

LESSON LXXXIII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL.—EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

244. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*

Gallia est divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam Celtae, qui Latinam linguam Galli appellantur. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod minime ad eos mercatores saepe comitantur, atque ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent important, proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, qui-

¹ Be careful here and elsewhere not to render the English words by the corresponding Latin words, but consider by what idiom the thought should be expressed in Latin. Here the Ablative Absolute should be used, as if the English were *the citizens having been freed*, etc. In the first sentence, *the general* will become the subject of the principal verb.

² On the position of the Vocative, see page 192, foot-note 3.

³ Latin idiom, *it was told to Caesar*.

buscum continenter bellum gerunt. Eādem dē causā Helvētīi reliquōs Celtās virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotidianīs proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt.

Helvētīi undique loci nātūrā continentur; unā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Jūrā, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētīōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam Rōmānam ab Helvētīis dīvidit. Ob eas rēs minus facile cum finitimīs bellum gerere possunt.

245. *Translate into Latin.*

1. War could not readily be waged¹ by the Helvetii with their neighbors. 2. Lake Lemannus and the river Rhone, by which the Helvetii are separated from the Roman province, shut in the Helvetii on one side. 3. The rest of the Celts are surpassed in valor by the Helvetii. 4. Wars were incessantly waged by the Germans with the Helvetii.

5. The things which are imported by merchants frequently weaken the spirit of the Gauls. 6. Caesar says that Gaul is divided into three parts. By whom are these parts of Gaul inhabited? 7. Those whom the Romans named Gauls, called themselves Celts. 8. Who were the bravest of all those who inhabited Gaul?

LESSON LXXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN *IO*. — ACTIVE VOICE.
— REVIEW OF RULE LIX. — RULE LX.

246. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

217. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in *io, ior*, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth, wherever those endings have two successive vowels.

¹ Render *was not able to be waged*.

218. ACTIVE VOICE. — *Capiō, I take.*VERB STEM, *cap*; PRESENT STEM, *cape*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
<i>capiō,</i>	<i>capere,</i>	<i>cēpi,</i>	<i>captum.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>capiō, capis, capit;</i>	<i>capimus, capitis, capiunt.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat;</i>	<i>capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.</i>
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

FUTURE.

<i>capiam, -iēs, -iet;</i>	<i>capiemus, -iētis, -ient.</i>
----------------------------	---------------------------------

PERFECT.

<i>cēpi, -istī, -it;</i>	<i>cēpimus, -istis, -erunt, or ēre.</i>
--------------------------	---

PLUPERFECT.

<i>cēperam, -erās, -erat;</i>	<i>cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.</i>
-------------------------------	------------------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>cēperō, -erīs, -erit;</i>	<i>cēperīmus, -erītis, -erint.</i>
------------------------------	------------------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>capiam, -iās, -iat;</i>	<i>capiamus, -iātis, -iant.</i>
----------------------------	---------------------------------

IMPERFECT.

<i>caperem, -erēs, -eret;</i>	<i>caperēmus, -erētis, -erent.</i>
-------------------------------	------------------------------------

PERFECT.

<i>cēperim, -erīs, -erit;</i>	<i>cēperīmus, -erītis, -erint.</i>
-------------------------------	------------------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

<i>cēpisse, -issēs, -isset;</i>	<i>cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.</i>
---------------------------------	---------------------------------------

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres. cape;</i>	<i>capite.</i>
<i>Fut. capitō,</i>	<i>capitōte,</i>
<i>capitō;</i>	<i>capiuntō.</i>

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>capere.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>capiēns.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>cēpisse.</i>		
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>captūrus esse.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>captūrus.</i>
GERUND.		SUPINE.	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>capiendī,</i>		
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>capiendō,</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>capiendum,</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>captum,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>capiendō.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>captū.</i>

RULE LX.—Supine in ū.

547. The Supine in ū is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (231, 424):

Quid est tam jucundum auditū, what is so agreeable to hear (in hearing)? Cic. Difficile dictū est, it is difficult to tell. Cic. Dē genere mortis difficile dictū est, it is difficult to speak of the kind of death. Cic. Cīvītās incredībile memorātū est quantum crēverit, it is incredible to relate how much the state increased. Sall.

247. Vocabulary.

<i>Carrus, ī, m.</i>	<i>cart, wagon.</i>
<i>Certus, a, um,</i>	<i>certain; certiōrem facere, to make more certain, to inform.</i>
<i>Coēmō, ere, ēmi, emptum,</i>	<i>to buy up, obtain by purchase.</i>
<i>Cōnātus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>undertaking, attempt, purpose.</i>
<i>Conjūrātiō, ōnis, f.</i>	<i>conspiracy.</i>
<i>Cupiditās, ātis, f.</i>	<i>desire.</i>
<i>Dō, dare, dedi, datum,</i>	<i>to give.</i>
<i>Facilis, e, comp. facillior, sup. facillimus,</i>	<i>easy.</i>
<i>Faciō, ere, fēci, factum,</i>	<i>to do, make.</i>
<i>Fidēs, ēi, f.</i>	<i>faith, confidence; assurance,</i>
<i>Indūcō, ere, duxi, ductum,</i>	<i>to induce, lead on. [pledge.</i>
<i>Jumentum, ī, n.</i>	<i>draught animal, beast of burden.</i>
<i>Mille,¹ indeclinable,</i>	<i>a thousand.</i>

¹ *Mille* as an adjective is indeclinable; as a substantive it is used in the Nominative and Accusative singular, but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *mare* (63, 63): *miliā, militum, milibus*. With the substan-

Parcō, ere, peperci, parsum,	<i>to spare. (Followed by the Dative.)</i>
Perficiō, ere, feci, fectum,	<i>to accomplish.</i>
Permoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtum,	<i>to move, induce, influence.</i>
Quam, adv.	<i>how; with a superlative, as . . . as possible; quam m̄ximus, the largest possible, as large as possible.</i>
Recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptum,	<i>to retake, betake.</i>
Sēmentis, is, f.	<i>sowing, planting.</i>
Suscipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptum,	<i>to take up, undertake.</i>

248. Translate into English.

1. Caesar pācem cum Helvētiis fēcit. 2. Pācem cum hostibus faciāmus. 3. Nōne pācem cum Gallis faciētis? Pācem cum iis faciēmus. 4. Orgetorix sibi lēgātīōnem ad civitatēs suscepit. Is rēgnī cupiditāte inductus conjūrātīōnem nōbilitātis Helvētiōrum fēcit. 5. Orgetorix facile esse factū Casticō et Dumnorigi probāvit cōnāta perficere. Ii hāc ōrātīōne adducti inter sē fidem dedērunt.¹ 6. Nostri militēs sub ocāsū sōlis sē in castra recēpērunt. 7. Helvētiī, auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti, cōstituērunt jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam m̄ximum numerum coēmere, et sēmentēs quam m̄ximās facere.

8. Hostēs posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent: idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīllium mittit, quī videant² quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. 9. Omnēs tūc tempore in hostēs impetum faciēmus. 10. Utinam eō tempore in hostēs impetum fēcissētis. 11. Nūntiī Caesarem dē his rēbus certiōrem faciēbant. 12. Dux Gallōrum māgnā manū ad castra nostra oppūgnātum venit. His rēbus permōtus Quīntus Titūrius lēgātum ad Gallōs mittit rogātum ut sibi militibusque³ parcant.

tive mille, mīlla, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the Genitive.

¹ *Inter sē dare*, 'to give each other,' 'to exchange.'

² See Suggestion XXIV., 3.

³ Indirect object; see 54, Rule XII.

249. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Helvetii sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask peace.
 2. As hostages had been sent by the Helvetii,¹ Caesar said that he would make peace with them. 3. The Gauls hastened to the winter quarters of the legion to attack it. 4. Caesar understood that to conquer the Helvetii was not an easy thing to do. 5. An hour² before sunset we shall betake ourselves into our camp. ✓

6. Which is the easier thing to do, to march into the forest or to remain in the camp? 7. Who will inform us in which direction the enemy marched?³ 8. The chiefs of the Gauls did not accomplish their purposes. 9. To accomplish⁴ the purposes of the Helvetii, Orgetorix had undertaken an embassy to the other states of Gaul.

LESSON LXXXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN IŌ. — PASSIVE VOICE.
 RULE XLIV.

250. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

219. PASSIVE VOICE. — *Capior, I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.
capior,

PRES. INF.
capi,

PERF. IND.
captus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

capior, caperis, capitur;

PLURAL.

| capimur, capimini, capiuntur.

IMPERFECT.

capiebar, -iebaris, -iebatur;

| capiebāmur, -iebāmini, iebantur.

¹ Use the Ablative Absolute.

² Ablative of Difference.

³ An Indirect Question. What mood must be used?

⁴ Remember that it is only after *verbs of motion* that the Supine is used to express purpose. Here a clause with *ut* should be used.

FUTURE.

capiar, -iēris, -lētur; | capiēmur, -lēmini, -ientur.

PERFECT.

captus sum, es, est; | capti sumus, estis, sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

captus eram, erās, erat; | capti erāmus, erātis, erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

captus erō, eris, erit; | capti erimus, eritis, erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

capiar, -iāris, iātur;

PLURAL.

| capiāmur, -iāmini, -iantur.

IMPERFECT.

caperer, erēris, -erētur; | caperēmur, -erēmini, -erentur.

PERFECT.

captus sim, sis, sit; | capti simus, sitis, sint.

PLUPERFECT.

captus essem, essēs, esset; | capti essēmus, essētis, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. capere;

capimini.

Fut. capitor,
capitor;

capiuntor.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. capi.

Perf. captus esse.

Fut. captum iri.

Perf. captus.

Ger. capiendus.

506. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion* :

*Sī negem, mentiar, if I should deny it, I should speak falsely.*¹
Cic.

¹ Here *sī negem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

RULE XLIV.—Conditional Sentences with **sī, nisi, nī, sin.**

507. Conditional sentences with **sī, nisi, nī, sin**, take —

I. The INDICATIVE in both clauses to assume the supposed case:

Sī spiritum dūcit, vivit, if he breathes, he is alive. Cic. *Sī tot exempla virtūtis nō movent, nihil unquam movēbit, if so many examples of valor do not move (you), nothing will ever move (you).* Liv.

II. The PRESENT or PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case as possible:

Dīs dēficiat, sī velim causam dēfendere, the day would fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause. Cic. *Improbē fēcēris, nisi monueris, you would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic.

III. The IMPERFECT or PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case as contrary to fact:

Plūribus verbis ad tē scriberem, sī rēs verba dēsiderāret, I should write to you more fully (with more words), if the case required words. Cic. *Si voluisset, dimicāset, if he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep.

251. Vocabulary.

Admittō, ere, mīsi, missum,	to admit, commit.
Biennium, ii, n.	two years, space of two years.
Cōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	to accomplish, complete, finish, bring to a close.
Contrōversia, ae, f.	controversy, dispute.
Dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum,	to decide, decree.
Dēfessus, a, um,	tired, exhausted, weary.
Dēlēō, ēre, ēvī, ētum,	to destroy.
Druidēs, um, m. pl.	Druids, the priests of the Gauls.
Facinus, facinoris, n.	misdeed, crime.
Hērēditās, ātis, f.	inheritance.
Interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	to kill, slay, put to death.
Jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum,	to throw.
Labor, ōris, m.	labor, toil, effort, exertion.
Mōs, mōris, m.	usage, custom.
Poena, ae, f.	penalty, punishment.
Praecipitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to precipitate, throw, hurl.

Privātus, a, um,	private, personal.
Prōditor, ōris, m.	traitor.
Prōclō, ¹ ere, prōjēcī, jectum,	to throw forward, throw down.
Pūblicus, a, um,	public.
Sī, conj.	if.
Vinculum, i, n.	fetter, bond, chain.

252. Translate into English.

1. Germānōrum² bellum celeriter cōficiētur. 2. Bellum Helvētiōrum² jam cōfectum erat. 3. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō,³ totius ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt. 4. Germānī suōs interficī vīdērunt; māgnō numerō interfectō,³ reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt. 5. Quid cōficiētur? Eae rēs cōfici dēbent. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās⁴ biennium nōbīs satis dūcimus. Quis ad eās rēs cōficiendās⁴ dēligētur? Jam tū dēlectus es. | 6. Lapidēs undique in mūrū jaciuntur, mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātur. 7. In Galliā Druidēs ferē dē omnibus contrōversis pūblicis prīvātisque cōstituunt; sī quod est admissum facinus, poenās cōstituunt; sī dē hērēditāte contrōversia est, iidem dēcernunt. 8. Sī quod sit admissum facinus, poenās cōstituāmus. 9. Sī quod esset admissum facinus, poenās cōstituissēmus.

10. Ego hōc cōsiliū probārem, sī nūllum periculum vīderem. 11. Ego hōc cōsiliū probāvissem, sī nūllum periculum vīdissem. 12. Helvētīī, sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum iis fēcissent, arma prōjēcissent. 13. Nisi tōtius diēi labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostiū cōpiae dēlētāe essent. 14. Helvētīī mōribus suis⁵ prōditōrem ex vinculis⁶ dīcere⁷ coēgērunt.

¹ Pronounced as though spelled *prōjiciō*.

² English idiom, *war with the Germans*, etc.

³ See Suggestion XXIII., (1).

⁴ See Suggestion XX., 4.

⁵ In accordance with, etc. See 158, Rule XXII.

⁶ English idiom, *in chains*.

⁷ In this connection *dicere* may be rendered *plead*.

253. *Translate into Latin.*

1. If stones had been thrown against the wall, it would have been stripped of soldiers. 2. Should stones be thrown against the wall, the town would be taken. 3. If the general were in the camp, the soldiers would not be daunted by fear. 4. If the general is in the camp, we ought not to fear danger. 5. If the war with the Helvetii should be finished, ambassadors would assemble from the rest of Gaul.

6. If any crime has been committed by these men, let the penalty be determined by the judge. 7. If our city had been fortified, we should not see these perils.¹ 8. If we approved your plan, we should not have accomplished these things so successfully.¹ 9. After these things were accomplished,² peace was made with the enemy.

LESSON LXXXVI.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL, INCLUDING VERBS IN
IŌ. — RULE XLVI.

254. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

514. A concessive clause is one that concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by *though* or *although*.³

Quamquam itinere fessi erant, tamen prœcēdunt, *although they were weary with the journey, they still (yet) advanced.* Sall.

¹ Observe that in 7, the condition refers to past time, and the conclusion to present time, while in 8 the condition refers to present time, and the conclusion to past time.

² Use the Ablative Absolute.

³ *Concessive* clauses bear a close resemblance to *conditional* clauses both in form and in use. *Si optimum est*, 'if it is best,' is a condition; *etsi optimum est*, 'even if (or though) it is best,' is a concession; the one assumes a supposed case, the other admits it.

RULE XLVI. — Moods in Concessive Clauses.

515. Concessive clauses take —

I. Generally the *Indicative* in the best prose, when introduced by *quamquam* :

Quamquam intellegunt, tamen nūquam dicunt, though they understand, they never speak. Cic. *Quamquam festinās, nōn est mora longa, though you are in haste, the delay is not long.* Hor.

II. The *Indicative* or *Subjunctive*, when introduced by *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, or *sī*, like conditional clauses with *sī*. Thus —

1. The *Indicative* is used to represent the supposed case as a *fact* :

Gaudeō, etsi nihil sciō quod gaudeam, I rejoice, though I know no reason why I should rejoice. Plaut.

2. The *Present* or *Perfect Subjunctive*, to represent the supposed case as *possible* :

Etsi nihil habeat in sē glōria, tamen virtūtem sequitur, though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue. Cic.

3. The *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, to represent the supposed case as *contrary to fact* :

Etiamsi mors oppetenda esset, domi māllem, even if death ought to be met, I should prefer to meet it at home. Cic.

III. The *Subjunctive*, when introduced by *licet*, *quamvis*, *ut*, *nē*, *cum*, or the relative *quī* :

Licet irrideat, plūs tamen ratiō valēbit, though he may deride, reason will yet avail more. Cic. *Nōn tū possis, quamvis excellās, you would not be able, although you excel.* Cic. *Ut dēsint virēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās, though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid. *Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. *Cum domi divitiāe adfluerent, fuēre tamen civēs, etc., though wealth abounded at home, there were yet citizens, etc.* Sall.

255. Vocabulary.

Aestās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	summer.
Commūniō, ire, ivi or ii, itum,	to wall around, encompass, surround.
Conciliō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to win, secure.
Crēber, bra, brum,	frequent.

Cuplō, ere, ivi or ii, itum,	to desire.
Cūrō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to care, care for; aliquid faciendum cūrāre, to have anything done.
Etsi, conj.	although.
Excursiō, ōnis, f.	sally, sortie.
Exigō, ere, ēgi, āctum,	to complete, finish, end.
Exiguus, a, um,	restricted, limited, scanty, small,
Graecus, a, um,	Greek, Grecian. [brief.
Indicium, ii, n.	testimony, evidence.
Juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtum,	to aid.
Mātūrus, a, um,	early.
Orbis, is, m.	circle, circuit; orbis terrārum, the
Ōrdō, inis, m.	rank. [earth, world.
Perpetuus, a, um,	perpetual, endless, uninterrupted.
Respicō, ere, spēxi, spēctum,	to regard, look upon.
Tabula, ae, f.	table, tablet; document, record.
Terra, ae, f.	earth, land.
Trānsducō, ere, duxi, ductum,	to lead across.

256. Translate into English.

1. Ea rēs Helvētiis per indicium enūtiātur. 2. Caesar pontem in¹ Arare faciendum cūravit² atque ita exercitum trānsduxit. 3. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt, litteris Graecis cōfectae. 4. Orgetorix dixit sē suae civitātis imperium obtentūrum esse. Is sē suis cōpilis suoque exercitū Casticō Dumnorigique rēgna conciliātūrum esse cōfirmābat.) 5. Si Lingonēs Helvētiōs frumentō jūvissent, Caesar eōs prō hostibus habuisset. 6. Hostēs primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant; postea vallō circummūniti³ oppidō sēsē continēbant. 7. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta jam aestās erat, tamen in aliam gentem exercitum adduxit.

8. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsi in Galliā mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam contendit. 9.

¹ English idiom, OVER.

² Literally, cared for a bridge to be made, i.e. attended to the making of a bridge; render, had a bridge made.

³ The attacking party often constructed works completely enclosing the besieged town.

Etsi nondum Britannorum cōsilia cōgnōverat, tamen periculum vidēbat. 10. Cum ea ita sint, tamen vōliscum pācem faciēmus. 11. Cum primī ōrdinēs hostium interfectī essent, tamen reliquī fortiter pūgnābant. 12. Caesar sē principem nōn solum urbis Rōmae, sed orbis terrārum esse cupiēbat. 13. Sī ea quae in aliīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae perpetuā premitur servitūte.

257. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Although we see other lands distressed by slavery, our country is free. 2. Although these things have been announced to the enemy,¹ they do not know what is done in our camp. 3. Although many very brave soldiers have been slain,¹ we desire to make peace with the enemy. 4. Although a bridge has been made over the river,¹ the army has not yet been led across.

5. What was found in the camp of the Helvetii? Caesar tells us what was found in their camp.² 6. Caesar regarded them as enemies, in order that other nations might not assist the Helvetii. 7. If a bridge had been made,¹ the army could have been³ led over. 8. Although they had made peace¹ a few days before, they made frequent attacks upon the Roman camp.

LESSON LXXXVII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—DEPONENT VERBS.—

RULE XXVI.

258. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

DEPONENT VERBS.

231. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But—

¹ In all these sentences we may use the Ablative Absolute, but a finite verb with a conjunction expresses more clearly the *concessive* or *conditional* force of the clause.

² An Indirect Question.

³ Render, *would have been able to be led*.

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The gerundive generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect participle: *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

NOTE.—The synopsis of a single example will sufficiently illustrate the peculiarities of Deponent Verbs.

232. Hortor, *I exhort.*

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *hortā.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. hortor ¹	horter	hortāre	hortārī	hortāns
Imp. hortābar	hortārer			
Fut. hortābor		hortātor		

Gerund, hortandi.

Gerundive, hortandus.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *hortāt.*

Perf. hortātus sum	hortātus sim		hortātus esse	hortātus
Plup. hortātus eram	hortātus essem			
F. P. hortātus erō				
Fut.			hortātūrus esse	hortātūrus

Supine, hortātum, hortātū.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative in Special Constructions.²

421. The Ablative is used —

I. With *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds:

¹ The tenses are inflected regularly throughout: *hortor*, *hortāris*, *hortātur*; *hortāmur*, *hortāmini*, *hortantur*. All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort*, *I was exhorting*, etc., except the *Gerundive*, which has the passive force, *deserving to be exhorted*, *to be exhorted*. The *Gerundive*, as it is passive in meaning, cannot be used in intransitive Deponent Verbs, except in an impersonal sense; see 281, 301, 1.

² This Ablative is readily explained as the Ablative of *means*: thus, *ūtor*, 'I use,' 'I serve myself by means of'; *fruor*, 'I enjoy,' 'I delight myself with'; *vescor*, 'I feed upon,' 'I feed myself with,' etc.

Plūrimīs rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, we enjoy and use VERY MANY THINGS. Cic. *Māgnā est praedā potitus, he obtained GREAT BOOTY.* Nep. *Lacte et carne vescēbantur, they lived upon milk and flesh.* Sall.

II. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY:

Villa abundat lacte, cāseō, melle, the villa abounds IN MILK, CHEESE, and HONEY. Cic. *Urbs referta copiīs, a city filled WITH SUPPLIES.* Cic. *Virtūte praeditus, endowed with virtue.* Cic. *Deus bonis explēvit mundum, God has filled the world with blessings.* Cic.

III. With dignus, indignus,¹ and contentus:

Dignī sunt amicitīā, they are worthy OF FRIENDSHIP. Cic. *Vir patre dignus, a man worthy OF HIS FATHER.* Cic. *Honōre indignissimus, most unworthy of honor.* Cic. *Nātūra parvō contenta, nature content with little.* Cic.

NOTE 1. — Transitive verbs of Plenty² take the Accusative and Ablative:

Armīs nāvēs onerat, he loads the ships with arms. Sall.

259. Vocabulary.

Abundō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to abound, to be well supplied
Arbitror, āri, ātus sum,	to think. [with.
Cōfidō, ere, fīsus sum, ³	to trust, have confidence in, rely
Cōnor, āri, ātus sum,	to try, attempt. [upon.
Contentus, a, um,	content, satisfied.
Indignus, a, um,	unworthy.
Interclūdō, ere, clūsi, clūsum,	to cut off.
Nūllus, a, um, 42, 151,	not any, no, none.
Persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum,	to persuade.
Potior, iri, itus sum,	to gain possession of, take possession of, obtain possession of.
Privō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to deprive.
Proficiscor, i, profectus sum,	to start, set out.

¹ The nature of the Ablative with *dignus* and *indignus* is somewhat uncertain. On etymological grounds it is explained as *instrumental*; see Delbrück, p. 72; Corssen, 'Krit. Beitr.,' p. 47.

² Transitive verbs of *plenty* mean 'to fill,' 'to furnish with,' etc., as *cumulō, compleō, impleō, imbuō, instruō, onerō, ōrnō*, etc.

³ *Cōfidō* is a *semi-deponent*, i.e. in the tenses for completed action it has the forms of the passive voice, with the meaning of the active.

Trānō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to swim across.</i>
Tūtō, adv.	<i>safely.</i>
Tūtus, a, um,	<i>safe.</i>
Ūllus, a, um, 42, 151,	<i>any, any one.</i>
Ūtor, i, ūsus sum,	<i>to use.</i>
Versus, ūs, m.	<i>verse.</i>
Vis, vis, f.	<i>force, violence; pl. virēs, virium,</i>
Vulnus, eris, n.	<i>wound. [strength.]</i>

260. *Translate into English.*

1. Helvētīi dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis proficiscēbantur. 2. Orgetorix Casticō¹ persuādet ut rēgnum in civitāte suā occupet, itemque² Dumnorigī ut idem cōnētur. 3. Prōditōrēs hanc urbem dēlēre cōnantur. 4. Prōditor nōs omnēs vitā privāre cōnātus est. 5. Tibī, Caesar, bonī virī grātiās agunt. 6. Bellō cōfectō, omnēs Galliae civitatēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt. 7. Eō tempore Druidēs Graecīs litterīs ūtēbantur. 8. Druidēs versūs suōs litterīs nōn mandant, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus Graecīs litterīs ūtantur.

9. Aedui prō Bellovacīs rogābant ut Caesar suā clementiā in eōs ūteretur. 10. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus est. 11. Hostēs, commeātū interclūsō, sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potiri cupiunt. Illi, etsi sē tūtō pūgnātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius³ esse arbitrābantur, commeātū interclūsō, sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potiri. 12. Hostēs ad flūmen Rhēnum vērunt; ibi pauci viribus cōnfisi trānāre contendērunt. 13. Vercingetorix equitatū abundābat. Is militibus quōs antea habuerat sē esse contentum dixit. 14. Militēs extrēmam famem sustinēbant, nulla tamen vōx est ab⁴ iis audita, populī Rōmānī glōriā et superiōribus victōriis indigna. 15. Galli superiōrem partem collis castrīs suis complēvērunt.

¹ *Indirect Object*; the clause with *ut* is the *Direct Object*.

² *Item* modifies *persuādet*.

³ What determines the gender of this predicate adjective?

⁴ The context here shows that *ab* should be rendered *from*, not *by*.

261. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Although the Gauls were well supplied with grain, Caesar was cut off from supplies. 2. Gaul was filled with very warlike nations. 3. We shall not obtain possession of the camp of the enemy without receiving¹ many wounds. 4. Many words which we hear are unworthy of wise men. 5. The Helvetii were not contented with their territory, but desired to obtain possession of the lands of their neighbors. 6. The general, relying on² the valor of his soldiers, has determined to assault the town. 7. We shall attempt to set out to-night.³ 8. Caesar thought that he should use the supplies of grain which were sent by the Aedui. 9. Do you understand for what reason the Druids used Greek letters?⁴

LESSON LXXXVIII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — RULES LIII. AND LIV.

262. *Lesson from the Grammar.*INDIRECT DISCOURSE. — *Ōrātiō Oblīqua.*

522. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse — *Ōrātiō Oblīqua*.⁵

Platōnem ferunt in Italiam vēnisse, they say that Plato came into Italy. Cic. *Respondeō tē dolōrem ferre moderatē, I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic. *Ūtilem arbitror esse scientiam, I think that knowledge is useful.* Cic.

¹ In rendering, omit *receiving*.

² See 260, sentence 12.

³ Render *on this night*.

⁴ What kind of a clause? See 127, 529.

⁵ Thus, in the first example, *Platōnem in Italiam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse; in the direct, i.e. in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be *Platō in Italiam vēnit*.

1. In distinction from the INDIRECT DISCOURSE — *Ōrātiō Obliqua*, the original words of the author are said to be in the DIRECT DISCOURSE — *Ōrātiō Rēcta*.

2. Words quoted without change belong to the DIRECT DISCOURSE:

Rēx 'duumvirōs' inquit 'secundum lēgem faciō,' *the king said, 'I appoint duumvirs according to law.'* Liv.

RULE LIII.—Moods in Principal Clauses.

523. The principal clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the *Infinitive* or *Subjunctive* as follows:

I. When DECLARATIVE, they take the *Infinitive* with a *Subject Accusative*.

Dicēbat animōs esse divinōs, *he was wont to say that souls are divine.* Cic. Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperiō, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Catō mirārī sē ālēbat, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered.* Cic. Hippīās glōriātus est, ānulum sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,¹ *Hippias boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic.

II. When INTERROGATIVE, they take —

1. Generally the *Subjunctive*:

Ad postulāta Caesaris respondit, quid sibi vellet, cūr venīret,² *to the demands of Caesar he replied, what did he wish, why did he come?* Caes.

2. Sometimes the *Infinitive* with a *Subject Accusative*, as in rhetorical questions: ³

¹ In the direct discourse these examples would read — (1) *animi sunt divini*, (2) *Platō Tarentum vēnit*, (3) *miror*, and (4) *ānulum meā manū cōnfēcī*. Observe that the pronominal subjects implied in *miror* and *cōnfēcī* are expressed with the Infinitive, as *mirārī sē*, *sē cōnfēcisse*. But the subject is sometimes omitted when it can be readily supplied; see second example under II., 2, below.

² In the direct discourse this example would read — *quid tibi vis? cūr venis?*

³ A question used for rhetorical effect in place of an assertion is called a *Rhetorical Question*, as *num potest*, 'can he?' = *nōn potest*, 'he can not'; *quid est turpius*, 'what is baser?' = *nihil est turpius*, 'nothing is baser.'

Docēbant rem esse testimoniū, etc.; quid esse levius, etc., *they showed that the fact was a proof (for a proof), etc.; what was more inconsiderate, etc.?* Caes. Respondit, num memoriā dēponere pōsse,¹ *he replied, could he lay aside the recollection?* Caes.

III. When IMPERATIVE,² they take the *Subjunctive* :

Scribit Labiēnō cum legiōne veniat, *he writes to Labienus to come (that he should come) with a legion.* Caes. Redditur respōsum, castris sē tenērent, *the reply was returned, that they should keep themselves in camp.* Liv. Militēs certiōrēs facit, sē reficerent, *he directed the soldiers to refresh themselves.* Caes. Ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, *they prayed that he would bring them help.* Caes. Nūntius vēnit, nē dubitāret,³ *a message came that he should not hesitate.* Nep.

RULE LIV.—Moods in Subordinate Clauses.

524. The subordinate clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the *Subjunctive* :

Respondit sē id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum,⁴ *he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.* Caes. Hippias glōriāsus est, ānulum quem habēret sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,⁵ *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

526. In passing from the DIRECT DISCOURSE to the INDIRECT, pronouns of the first and second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person,⁶ and the first and

Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or in the third person. As such questions are equivalent to declarative sentences, they take the same construction, the Infinitive with its subject.

¹ Direct discourse — (1) *quid est levius* = *nihil est levius*, and (2) *num memoriā dēponere possum* = *memoriā dēponere nōn possum*.

² Imperative sentences include those sentences which take the *Subjunctive of Desire*; see 114, 483.

³ In the direct discourse these examples would read — (1) *cum legiōne veni*, (2) *castris vōs tenēte*, (3) *vōs reficite*, (4) *nōbis auxilium fer*, (5) *nōi dubitāre*.

⁴ Direct, *faciam id quod in Nerviiis fēci*.

⁵ Direct, *ānulum quem habeo meā manū cōnfēci*.

⁶ Thus — (1) *ego* is changed to *sui*, *sibi*, etc., or to *ipse*; *meus* and *nos* to *suus*; (2) *tū* to *is* or *ille*, sometimes to *sui*, etc.; *tuus* and *vester* to *suus* or to the Genitive of *is*; and (3) *hic* and *iste* to *ille*.

second persons of verbs are generally changed to the third person :

Glōriātus est, ānulum sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,¹ *he boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic. Redditur respōnsum, castris sē tenērent,² *the reply was returned that they should keep themselves in camp.* Liv. Respondit, sī obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum,³ *he replied that if hostages were given to him by them, he would make peace with them.* Caes.

263. Vocabulary.

Appetō, ere, petivī or īi, itum,	to seek after, seek.
Artificium, īi, n.	artifice.
Concillium, īi, n.	council, meeting.
Creō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to create, elect, appoint.
Discēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum,	to depart, withdraw, swerve.
Polliceor, ēri, itus sum,	to promise. [er than, before.
Prius, adv. comp., sup. primum,	before, sooner ; prius quam, soon-
Quisquam, quaequam, quicquam,	anyone, anything.
Respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsum,	to answer.

264. Translate into English.

1. Ariovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse, quam populum Rōmānum.⁴ Dixit omnēs Galliae cīvitatēs contrā sē castra habuisse,⁵ eas omnēs cōpiās ā sē unō proeliō superātās esse.⁴ 2. Posterō diē, conciliō convocātō, Vercingetorix dixit nōn virtūte neque in aciē vicisse Rōmānōs,⁴ sed artificii quōdam et scientiā oppugnātiōnis.⁶ 3. Aeduī summō in periculō sunt. Aeduī dicunt sē summō in periculō esse.⁴ Dixērunt sē summō esse in periculō. 4. Aeduī summō in

¹ Direct, ānulum ego meā manū cōnfēcī. Ego becomes sē, and meā, suā.

² Direct, castris vōs tenēte. Vōs becomes sē, and tenēte, tenērent.

³ Direct, sī obsidēs ā vōbis mīhi dabuntur, vōbiscum pācem faciam. A vōbis becomes ab iis ; mīhi becomes sibi ; vōbiscum, cum iis ; and the implied subject of faciam becomes sēsē, the subject of esse factūrum.

⁴ Give the Direct form corresponding to this Indirect Discourse.

⁵ Castra habēre, literally, to have camp, may be rendered to encamp, to take the field.

⁶ English idiom, skill in assault.

periculō erant. Aedui dicunt sē summō fuisse in periculō.¹ Dixērunt sē summō fuisse in periculō.

5. Lischns magistrātum gerēbat. Hōc tempore duo magistrātum gerunt. Aedui summō in periculō sunt quod duo magistrātum gerunt. Aedui dicunt sē summō esse in periculō, quod duo magistrātum gerant, et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum esse dicat.¹ Dixērunt sē summō esse in periculō, quod duo magistrātum gererent, et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum esse diceret.

6. Nōne Orgetorix suae cīvitātis imperium obtinēbit? Dicit sē suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse.¹ 7. Imperātor cum hostibus pācem faciet. Dicit sī² obsidēs ab hostibus sibi dentur, uti eōs ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum.¹ 8. Caesar dixit Ariovistum sē cōsule³ populi Rōmānī amicitiam appetisse;¹ cūr hunc quisquam ab officiō discēssūrum iudicāret?

all

265. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar says that Gaul was divided into three parts; that the Belgae inhabited one of these, the Aquitani another, and the Celts the third.⁴ 2. He said that a third part of Gaul was inhabited by those who called themselves Celts, but whom the Romans named Gauls.⁴ He said that the Helvetii were the bravest of the Gauls, and that they were nearest to the Germans, with whom they were continually waging war.⁴ 3. The Helvetii said that if the Romans made peace with them, they would remain where Caesar desired; but that if peace was not made, the Romans would be regarded by them as enemies.⁴ Although they had attempted to march through the province, they said that they wished to make peace.⁴

¹ Give the corresponding Direct form.

² What form of condition in Direct Discourse?

³ Ablative Absolute, *he being consul*; render, *in his consulship*.

⁴ Give the corresponding Direct form in English and in Latin.

LESSON LXXXIX.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

266. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

233. The ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Future Active Participle with *sum*, denotes an intended or future action ;

Amātūrus sum, I am about to love.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus sum ¹	amātūrus sim	amātūrus esse
<i>Imp.</i>	amātūrus eram	amātūrus essem	
<i>Fut.</i>	amātūrus erō		
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fui	amātūrus fuerim	amātūrus fuisse
<i>Plup.</i>	amātūrus fueram	amātūrus fuisset	
<i>F. P.</i>	amātūrus fuerō ¹		

234. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Gerundive with *sum*, denotes *necessity* or *duty*.

*Amandus sum, I must be loved.*²

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	amandus sum	amandus sim	amandus esse
<i>Imp.</i>	amandus eram	amandus essem	
<i>Fut.</i>	amandus erō		
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fui	amandus fuerim	amandus fuisse
<i>Plup.</i>	amandus fueram	amandus fuisset	
<i>F. P.</i>	amandus fuerō		

267. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*

Helvētiī, auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī, cōstituērunt dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis proficisci, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, cum prōximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiā cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse

¹ The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly. The Future Perfect is exceedingly rare.

² Or, *I deserve (ought) to be loved.*

duxerunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmāvērunt. [Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēlēctus est. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitatēs suscepit. In eō itinere persuāsit Casticō Sēquanō, ut rēgnum in cīvitate suā occupāret; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduō, ut idem cōnārētur persuāsit. Facile esse factū illis probāvit cōnātūs perficere; sē suae cīvitatīs imperium obtentūrum esse, et suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmāvit. Hāc oratiōne adducti inter sē fidem dedērunt. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūtiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt.

268. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Orgetorix was intending to secure¹ regal power in his state. 2. There were many things to be accomplished² by the Helvetii, if they wished to set out from their territory. 3. In accordance with the customs³ of the Helvetii, Orgetorix, who was regarded by them as a traitor, was forced to plead his cause in chains.⁴ 4. It was announced to the Helvetii what Orgetorix was attempting to accomplish. 5. He had said that he would secure for these chieftains regal power in their states. To accomplish his attempt was not an easy thing to do. He had persuaded the Helvetii to set out from their territory with all their forces.

LESSON XC.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Possum* AND *Ferō*.

269. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

289. A few verbs which have special irregularities are called, by way of preëminence, *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs*.

¹ See 266, 233.

² See 266, 234.

³ In accordance with, etc., use the Ablative, under 158, 413.

⁴ See 252, sentence 14.

290. Possum,¹ pōsse, potui, to be able.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Pres.</i> possum, potes, potest ;	possumus, potestis, possunt.
<i>Imp.</i> poteram ; ²	poterāmus.
<i>Fut.</i> poterō ;	poterimus.
<i>Perf.</i> potui ;	potuimus.
<i>Plup.</i> potueram ;	potuerāmus.
<i>F. P.</i> potuerō ;	potuerimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> possim, possis, possit ;	possimus, possitis, possint.
<i>Imp.</i> pōssem ;	pōssēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> potuerim ;	potuerimus.
<i>Plup.</i> potuissē ;	potuissēmus.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> pōsse.	<i>Pres.</i> potēns (as an adjective).
<i>Perf.</i> potuisse.	

292. Ferō,³ ferre, tuli, lātum, to bear.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Pres.</i> ferō, fers, fert ;	ferimus, fertis, ⁴ ferunt.
<i>Imp.</i> ferēbam ; ⁵	ferēbāmus.
<i>Fut.</i> feram ;	ferēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> tuli ;	tulimus.
<i>Plup.</i> tuleram ;	tulerāmus.
<i>F. P.</i> tulerō ;	tulerimus.

¹ *Possum* is compounded of *potis*, 'able,' and *sum*, 'to be.' In *possum* observe —

1) That *potis* drops *is*, and that *t* is assimilated before *s*; *possum* for *potsum*.

2) That *f* of the simple is dropped after *t*: *potui* for *potfui*.

3) That the Infinitive *pōsse* and Subjunctive *pōssem* are shortened forms for *potesse* and *potessem*.

² Inflected regularly through the different persons: *poteram*, *poterās*, *poterat*, etc. So also in the other tenses: *potui*, *potuisti*, etc.

³ *Ferō* has forms derived from three independent stems, seen in *ferō*, *tuli*, *lātum*.

⁴ *Fer-s*, *fer-t*, *fer-tis*, instead of *feris*, *ferit*, *feritis*.

⁵ Inflect the several tenses in full: *ferēbam*, *ferēbās*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> feram;	ferāmus.
<i>Imp.</i> ferrem;	ferrēmus. ¹
<i>Perf.</i> tulerim;	tulerīmus.
<i>Plup.</i> tulissem;	tulissēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fer; ²	ferte.
<i>Fut.</i> fertō,	fertōte,
fertō;	feruntō.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferre. ¹
<i>Perf.</i> tulisse.
<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus esse.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferēns.
<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus.

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> ferendī,
<i>Dat.</i> ferendō,
<i>Acc.</i> ferendum,
<i>Abl.</i> ferendō.

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i> lātum,
<i>Abl.</i> lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

feror,	ferri,	lātus sum,	to be borne.
--------	--------	------------	--------------

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> feror, ferris, fertur;	ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
<i>Imp.</i> ferēbar;	ferēbāmur.
<i>Fut.</i> ferar;	ferēmur.
<i>Perf.</i> lātus sum;	lāti sumus.
<i>Plup.</i> lātus eram;	lāti erāmus.
<i>F. P.</i> lātus erō;	lāti erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferar;	ferāmur.
<i>Imp.</i> ferrer;	ferrēmur.
<i>Perf.</i> lātus sim;	lāti simus.
<i>Plup.</i> lātūssessem;	lāti essēmus.

¹ *Ferrem*, etc., for *fererem*, etc.; *ferre* for *ferere* (e dropped).

² *Fer* for *ferē*; *fertō*, *ferte*, *fertōte*, for *feritō*, *ferite*, *feritōte*.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferre;	ferimini.
<i>Fut.</i> fertor,	_____
fertor;	feruntor.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferri.	
<i>Perf.</i> lātus esse.	<i>Perf.</i> lātus.
<i>Fut.</i> lātum iri.	<i>Ger.</i> ferendus.

LESSON XCI.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Possum* AND *Ferō*. — EXERCISES.

270. Vocabulary.

Arrogantia, ae, f.	arrogance.
Avāritia, ae, f.	avarice.
Clāssis, is, f.	fleet.
Coērcēō, ēre, uī, itum,	to restrain, control.
Dolor, ōris, m.	pain. [ferre, to propose a law.
Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,	to bear, carry; to endure; lēgem
Juvenis, is, m.	youth, a youth.
Nihil, n. indeclinable,	nothing.
Patienter, adv.	patiently.
Praetor, ōris, m.	praetor, a Roman magistrate.
Privātim, adv.	privately, in a private capacity.
Sententia, ae, f.	thought, plan, opinion.
Statuō, ere, uī, ūtum,	to determine, decide.

271. Translate into English.

1. Hī cīvēs plūs possunt quam ipsī magistrātūs.¹ Liscus dicit esse nōnnūllōs, quī privātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs; hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn pōsse. 2. Nōnne hī juvenēs arma ferre possunt? In Galliā arma ferunt. 3. In exercitū Caesaris erant multī quī arma in Italiā tulerant. 4.

¹ After a comparative, *quam* is followed by the same construction as that which precedes it. *Magistrātūs* is here the subject of *possunt* to be supplied.

Civēs Rōmānī avāritiam praetōris ferre nōn potuērunt. 5. Ea quae ferri possunt ferenda sunt. 6. Ferimus ea quae sunt ferenda. 7. Nōne imperātor finitimīs civitātibus auxilium feret? Iis auxilium ferre nōn poterit. 8. Rhēnus per finēs Helvētiōrum fertur. 9. Haec lēx ferētur.

10. Bonae lēgēs ferantur. 11. Multae lēgēs lātae sunt. 12. Gallī nostrōrum mīlitum impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt. 13. Liscus dīcit sē quam diū potuerit tacuisse.¹ 14. Dolōrem patienter ferāmus. 15. Dolor patienter ferendus est. 16. Ariovistus tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur. 17. Nihil dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī hostēs timent. 18. Clāssis est expēctanda. Caesar statuit expēctandam esse clāssē. 19. Cum finitimīs civitātibus pācem factūrī sumus. 20. Hostēs suam urbem altissimō mūrō mūnītūrī sunt.

272. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We can fortify all our cities with walls and with moats. 2. If we are intending to bear² aid to our friends, our cities must be fortified.³ 3. We have decided that we must await, in this place, the arrival⁴ of our friends. 4. If you cannot endure pain, you must make peace⁵ with your enemies.

5. If you had to endure the arrogance⁶ of this general, you would not be silent. 6. They are intending to set out² for Gaul, to carry⁵ arms against the Romans. 7. Good laws should be proposed³ by those who are regarded as the friends of all the citizens. 8. To endure pain patiently is not an easy thing to do.⁶ 9. The soldiers must be warned³ not to fear the enemy. 10. In our state no citizens have greater

¹ *Tacuisse* must here be rendered, *that he has kept silent*, not *that he kept silent*.

² See 266, 233.

³ See 266, 234.

⁴ Render as if the English were, *the arrival must be awaited*, *peace must be made*, *arrogance had to be endured*.

⁵ See 119, 497.

⁶ See 248, sentence 5.

power than the magistrates. 11. All of us can carry arms in defence of¹ our country.

LESSON XCII.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Volō, Nōlō, AND Mālō.* —

RULE VII.

273. Lesson from the Grammar.

293. Volō, ²	velle,	voluī,	to be willing.
Nōlō, ³	nōlle,	nōluī,	to be unwilling.
Mālō, ³	mälle,	māluī,	to prefer.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> volō,	nōlō,	mālō,
vis,	nōn vis,	māvis,
vult;	nōn vult;	māvult;
volumus,	nōlumus,	mālumus,
vultis,	nōn vultis,	māvultis,
volunt.	nōlunt.	mālunt.
<i>Imp.</i> volēbam. ⁴	nōlēbam.	mālēbam.
<i>Fut.</i> volam.	nōlam.	mālam.
<i>Perf.</i> voluī.	nōluī.	māluī.
<i>Plup.</i> volueram.	nōlueram.	mālueram.
<i>F. P.</i> voluerō.	nōluerō.	māluerō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> velim. ⁵	nōlim.	mālim.
<i>Imp.</i> vellem. ⁶	nōllem.	māllem.
<i>Perf.</i> voluerim.	nōluerim.	māluerim.
<i>Plup.</i> voluissem.	nōluissem.	māluissem.

¹ 'In defence of,' *prō*.

² The stem of *volō* is *vol*, with variable stem vowel, o, e, u.

³ *Nōlō* is compounded of *nē* or *nōn* and *volō*; *Mālō*, of *magis* and *volō*.

⁴ Inflect the several tenses in full.

⁵ *Velim* is inflected like *sim*, and *vellem* like *essem*.

⁶ *Vellem* and *velle* are syncopated forms for *velerem*, *velere*; *e* is dropped and *r* assimilated; *velerem*, *velrem*, *vellem*; *velere*, *velre*, *velle*. So *nōllem* and *nōlle*, for *nōlerem* and *nōlere*; *māllem* and *mälle*, for *mālerem* and *mālere*.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. nōli,	nōlite.
Fut. nōlitō,	nōlitōte,
nōlitō,	nōluntō.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. velle.	nōlle.	mälle.
Perf. voluisse.	nōluisse.	mäluisse.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. volēns.	nōlēns.
---------------	---------

RULE VII. — Two Accusatives — Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives — one of the *person* and the other of the *thing*:

Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me MY OPINION. Cic. *Philosophia nōs rēs omnēs docuit, philosophy has taught us all THINGS.* Cic. *Auxilia rēgem ōrābant, they asked AUXILIARIES from the king.* Liv. *Pācem tē poscimus, we demand PEACE of you.* Verg. *Nōn tē cēlāvi sērmōnem, I did not conceal from you THE CONVERSATION.* Cic.

1. In the PASSIVE the PERSON becomes the subject, and the Accusative of the thing is retained:

Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me MY OPINION. Cic. *Ego sententiam rogātus sum, I was asked MY OPINION.* Cic. *Artēs ēdōctus fuerat, he had been taught THE ARTS.* Liv.

LESSON XXIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Volō, Nōlō, AND Mālō.* — RULE VII. — EXERCISES.

274. *Vocabulary.*

Auctor, ōris, m.	author, advocate.
Crēdō, ere, didi, ditum,	to believe. (Followed by the Dative
Cūr, adv.	why? [of the person believed).
Exūrō, ere, ūssi, ūstum,	to burn up, burn.

Flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to demand.</i>
Libenter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>willingly, gladly.</i>
Maleficium, ii, n.	<i>mischief, harm.</i>
Mālō, mälle, mālui,	<i>to prefer.</i>
Nōlō, nōlle, nōlui,	<i>to be unwilling, not to be willing,</i>
Perferō, ferre, tuli, lātum,	<i>to endure.</i> [not to wish.
Permaneō, ēre, mānsi, māsum,	<i>to continue to remain, to remain.</i>
Ūnā, <i>adv.</i>	<i>together.</i>
Unde, <i>adv.</i>	<i>whence, from which place.</i>
Videor, ¹ ēri, visus sum,	<i>to seem, appear.</i>
Volō, velle, volui,	<i>to wish, to be willing.</i>

275. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar dē summīs rēbus cum Ariovistō, rēge Germānōrum, agere volēbat. 2. Num bellī fortūnam tentāre vultis? Patriam dēfendere volumus. Nōlite dubitāre² libertātem dēfendere. 3. Galba saepius³ fortūnam tentāre nōlēbat. 4. Faciam id quod vultis. 5. Catō esse bonus⁴ volēbat. 6. Hī civēs vidēri bonī volunt. 7. Catō esse quam⁵ vidēri bonus mālēbat. 8. Libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. 9. Auctōrēs⁶ bellī esse nōlēbāmus. 10. Auctōrēs⁶ bellī esse nōlēmus. 11. Caesar montem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluit. 12. Cōnsīdius timōre perterritus dicit montem, quem Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenēri.

13. Per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnābuntur, prop-
tereā quod aliud iter habent nūllum. 14. Imperātor nōluit
eum locum, unde Helvētiī discēsserant, vacāre. 15. Dixē-
runt sibī esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter facere. 16.
Galli servitūtem perferre nōlēbant. In libertāte permanēre

¹ *Videor* is the passive of *videō*, 'to see,' but it is also used as a deponent verb with a special meaning.

² Literally, *be unwilling to hesitate*; render, *do not hesitate*, — a common circumlocution in prohibitions instead of *nē dubitā*, a form used in poetry only; as in English, *do not hesitate*, instead of *hesitate not*.

³ The comparative sometimes has the force of *too*.

⁴ A predicate adjective after *esse*, agreeing with *Catō*.

⁵ *Quam* after *mālō* may be rendered *rather than*.

⁶ See 59, 362.

quam servitūtem perferre mālēbant. Reliquīs cīvitātibus persuāsērunt ut in libertāte permanēre quam servitūtem perferre mālrent. 17. Jūdicem sententiam rogābunt. 18. Cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat. 19. Helvētī trēs cōpiārum partēs flūmen Ararim¹ trānsdlexerant. 20. Rhodanus inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum fuit. 21. Allobrogibus sēsē persūasūrōs esse existimābant utī, oppidis suis vicisque exūtis,² unā cum iis proficiscerentur.

276. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You were unwilling to ask us our opinion.³ 2. I do not understand why you wish to ask this man his opinion.³ Will you tell me why you wish to ask this man his opinion? 3. How large an army is the general willing to lead across the river?⁴ 4. He prefers to remain in camp rather than to lead his soldiers across this river,⁴ although a bridge has been built⁵ over it.

5. If the Aedui had not told Caesar that they would assist him, he would not have demanded grain of them.³ 6. Are you not willing to do that which I demand of you?³ 7. You preferred to ask his opinion,⁶ in order that he might believe you to be his friend. 8. If you should persuade us to remain, what should you wish us to do? 9. Do not wish⁷ that which cannot be done. 10. Those who are willing to try the fortune of war must not fear danger. 11. All of us⁸ ought to be willing to defend our country.

¹ A few compounds of *trāns*, *circum*, and *ad*, admit two Accusatives, dependent, the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition.

² See Suggestion XXIII., (3).

³ See 273, 374.

⁴ See 275, sentence 19.

⁵ Use the Ablative Absolute.

⁶ To ask his opinion = to ask him his opinion. 273, 374.

⁷ See 275, sentence 2.

⁸ In Latin, *nōs omnēs*, 'we all,' or simply *omnēs*, agreeing with the subject implied in the ending of the verb.

LESSON XCIV.

IRREGULAR VERBS.—*Fiō* AND *Eō*.—RULES X.
AND XXI.

277. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

294. *Fiō*, fierī, factus sum, to become, be made.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.

Pres. fiō, fis, fit;

Imp. fiēbam;¹

Fut. fiam;

Perf. factus sum;

Plup. factus eram;

F. P. factus erō;

PLURAL.

fiemus, fitis, fiunt.

fiēbāmus.

fiēmus.

facti sumus.

facti erāmus.

facti erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. fiam;

Imp. fierem;

Perf. factus sim;

Plup. factus essem;

fiāmus.

fierēmus.

facti simus.

facti essēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. fi;

fite.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fieri.

Perf. factus esse.

Fut. factum iri.

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. factus.

Ger. faciendus.

295. *Eō*, ire, ivi, itum, to go.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. eō, is, it;

Imp. ibam;¹

Fut. ibō;

Perf. ivi;

Plup. iveram;

F. P. iverō;

imus, itis, eunt.

ibāmus.

ibimus.

ivimus.

iverāmus.

iverimus.

¹ Inflect the several tenses in full.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> eam;	eāmus.
<i>Imp.</i> irem;	irēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> iverim;	iverīmus.
<i>Plup.</i> ivissem;	ivissēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> i;	ite.
<i>Fut.</i> itō,	itōte,
itō;	euntō.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ire.
<i>Perf.</i> ivisse.
<i>Fut.</i> itūrus esse.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> iēns,	<i>Gen.</i> euntis.
<i>Fut.</i> itūrus.	

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> eundi,
<i>Dat.</i> eundō,
<i>Acc.</i> eundum,
<i>Abl.</i> eundō.

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i> itum,
<i>Abl.</i> itū.

RULE X. — Accusative of Limit.

380. The PLACE TO WHICH is designated by the Accusative:¹

I. Generally with a preposition — **ad** or **in**:

Legiōnēs ad urbem addūcit, he is leading the legions TO or TOWARD THE CITY. *Cic. In Asiam redit, he returns INTO ASIA.* *Nep.*

II. In names of towns without a preposition:

Nūntius Rōmam redit, the messenger returns TO ROME. *Liv. Fūgit Tarquiniōs, he fled TO TARQUINII.* *Cic.*

NOTE. — Verbs meaning *to collect, to come together*, etc., — *conveniō, cōgō, convocō*, etc. — are usually treated as verbs of *motion*, and thus take the Accusative, generally with a preposition; but verbs meaning *to place* — *locō, collocō, pōnō*, etc., — are usually treated as verbs of *rest*, and thus take the Ablative (185, 425), generally with a preposition:

¹ Originally the *place to which* was uniformly designated by the Accusative *without* a preposition. Names of towns have retained the original construction, while most other names of places have assumed a preposition.

Ūnum in locum convenire, to meet IN one PLACE. Caes. In alterius manū vitam ponere, to place one's life IN THE HAND of another. Cic.

1. In the NAMES OF TOWNS the Accusative with *ad* occurs — (1) to denote *to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of*, and (2) in contrast with *ā* or *ab*:

Ad Zamam pervēnit, he came TO THE VICINITY OF ZAMA. Sall. A Diāniō ad Sinōpēn, from Diantum TO SINOPE. Cic.

2. Like NAMES OF TOWNS are used —

1) The Accusatives *domum, domōs, rūs*:

Domum reductus est, He was conducted HOME. Cic. Domōs abducti, led TO THEIR HOMES. Liv. Rūs ēvolāre, to hasten INTO THE COUNTRY. Cic.

RULE XXI. — Place from which.

412. The PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the Ablative:

I. Generally *with a preposition* — *ā, ab, dē, or ex*:

Ab urbe proficiscitur, he sets out FROM THE CITY. Caes. Dē forō, from the forum. Cic. Ex Africā, from (out of) Africa. Liv.

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS *without a preposition*:¹

Platōnem Athēnīs arcessivit, he summoned Plato FROM ATHENS. Nep. Fūgit Corinthō, he fled from Corinth. Cic.

1. Many names of islands, and the Ablatives, *domō* and *rūre*, are used like names of towns:

Domō profūgit, he fled FROM HOME. Cic. Dēlō proficiscitur, he proceeds FROM DELOS. Cic.

LESSON XCV.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Fiō* AND *Eō*. — RULES X. AND XXI. — EXERCISES.

278. Vocabulary.

Caedēs, is, <i>f.</i>	slaughter.
Cibāria, ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i>	food, provisions.
Combūrō, esse, būsi, būstum,	to burn up, burn.
Efferō, ferre, extulī, elātum,	to carry forth.

¹ This was the original construction for all places alike.

Ēgredior, i, grēssus sum,	<i>to go out, go forth, depart.</i>
Eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum,	<i>to go.</i>
Equester, tris, tre,	<i>equestrian; equestre proellum, a cavalry engagement.</i>
Exeō, ire, ii, itum, ¹	<i>to go out, go forth, depart.</i>
Fiō, fieri, factus sum,	<i>to be made; to happen.</i>
Lutetia, ae, f.	<i>Lutetia, a city in Gaul, now Paris.</i>
Melodūnum, i, n.	<i>Melodunum, a town of the Senones.</i>
Narbō, ōnis, m.	<i>Narbo, a town in southern Gaul.</i>
Nihilum, i, n.	<i>nothing.</i>
Pator, i, passus sum,	<i>to suffer, permit.</i>
Peditātus, ūs, m.	<i>infantry.</i>
Plānitīēs, ēi, f.	<i>plain.</i>
Praeterquam, adv.	<i>except.</i>
Tolōsa, ae, f.	<i>Tolosa, a town in southern Gaul.</i>
Trānseō, ire, ii, ¹ itum,	<i>to go over, cross.</i>
Vigilia, ae, f.	<i>watch.²</i>

279. *Translate into English.*

1. Helvētiī ē finibus suis exībant. Ē finibus suis exīre cōnābantur. Post Orgetorigis mortem nihilō³ minus ē finibus suis exīre cōnābantur. 2. Id quod cōstituērunt facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. 3. Haec omnia contrā lēgem facta sunt. 4. Illud quod faciendum primum fuit factum est. 5. Id quod vultis nullō modō fieri potest. 6. Nōlite id velle, quod fieri nōn potest. 7. Caesar suum equitātum contrā hostem ire jubet. 8. Omnēs legiōnēs contrā hostem ibant. 9. Fit equestre proellum in plānitīē; Caesar legiōnēs prō castris cōstituit, nē qua irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat; hostēs fugae sēsē mandant; fit māgna caedēs; nōnnūllī fōssam trānsire cōnantur.

10. Divitiacus auxiliī rogandī causā Rōmam⁴ ad senātum profectus est. 11. Labiēnus cum quattuor legiōnibus Lu-

¹ The compounds of *eō* take the contracted form *ii* in the perfect.

² Among the Romans, the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four *watches* of equal length.

³ Ablative of Difference: *less by nothing*. Render, *none the less*.

⁴ See 277, 330.

tetiam proficiscitur. 12. *Ē* castris tertiā vigiliā egrēssus Melodūnum vēnit. 13. Galli per suos finēs nōs ire patientur. 14. Imperātōrem dē his rēbus certiōrem faciāmus. 15. Ubi dē his rēbus certiōrēs facti sunt, privāta aedificia incendērunt. 16. Lēgātōs, nōbilissimōs civitātis, ad rēgem misērunt. 17. Frūmentum omne, praeterquam¹ quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūssērunt. 18. Suēbī, quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertērunt. 19. Dux Rōmānus multōs virōs fortēs Tolōsā et Narbōne² ēvocāvit. 20. Helvētīi trium mēnsium cibāria sibi quemque domō³ efferre jūssērunt.

280. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetii to go forth from their territory. 2. We shall be informed what they carried from home with them. 3. We shall go to Rome, and remain there the whole winter. 4. We shall send you letters often, that you may be informed in what direction we are going.⁴ We have heard that you say that you have not been informed by us in what direction we are going. Do you know in what direction we have gone?

5. Caesar was intending to go from Italy to Geneva with five legions. 6. Having accomplished⁴ this, Caesar orders the Helvetii to return to their homes. 7. Do you prefer to go home rather than to remain at Rome?⁵ 8. The Helvetii thought that they should persuade the Sequani to suffer them to go through their territory. 9. Caesar thought that peace should not be made with the Helvetii, unless they returned home. 10. What did the Helvetii attempt to do after the death of Orgetorix? They attempted to persuade their neighbors to burn all their towns.

¹ The construction with *praeterquam* is elliptical; we may supply after it *id frūmentum nōn combūssērunt*. Of course the ellipsis need not be supplied in translation.

² See 277, 412.

³ What mood must be used in an Indirect Question?

⁴ Use the Ablative Absolute.

⁵ See 185, 425.

LESSON XCVI.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. — REVIEW OF RULE XLIII. —
RULE XIII.

281. Lesson from the Grammar.

298. Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English Impersonal with *it*: *licet*, it is lawful; *oportet*, it behooves.¹ They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive:

Decet, decuit, *it becomes.* *Oportet*, oportuit, *it behooves.*
Miseret, miseritum est, *it excites* *Paenitet*, paenituit, *it causes regret.*²
*pity.*²

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of the weather, or the operations of nature:

Fulminat, it lightens; *grandinat*, it hails; *lucēscit*, it grows light; *pluit*, it rains; *rōrat*, dew falls; *tonat*, it thunders.

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally:

Accidit, it happens; *appāret*, it appears; *cōstat*, it is evident; *contigit*, it happens; *dēlectat*, it delights; *dolet*, it grieves; *interest*, it concerns; *juvat*, it delights; *patet*, it is plain; *placet*, it pleases; *praestat*, it is better; *rēfert*, it concerns.

1. In the PASSIVE VOICE intransitive verbs can be used only impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihī crēditur, it is credited to me, I am believed; *tibi crēditur*, you are believed; *crēditum est*, it was believed; *certātur*, it is contended; *curritur*, there is running, people run; *pūgnātur*, it is fought, they, we, etc., fight; *vivitur*, we, you, they live.

2. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION (266, 234) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihī scribendum est, I must write; *tibi scribendum est*, you must write; *illī scribendum est*, he must write.

¹ The subject is generally an infinitive or clause, but may be a noun or pronoun denoting a *thing*, but not a *person*: *hōc fieri oportet*, that this should be done is necessary.

² *Mē miseret*, I pity; *mē paenitet*, I repent.

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

390. Two Datives — the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT OR END FOR WHICH — occur with a few verbs:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs :

Malō est hominibus avāritia, *avarice is AN EVIL TO MEN* (literally *is TO MEN FOR AN EVIL*). Cic. *Est mihi cūrae*, *it is A CARE TO ME*. Cic. *Domus dēdecori dominō fit*, *the house becomes A DISGRACE TO ITS OWNER*. Cic. *Vēnit Atticis auxiliō*, *he came to the assistance of the Athenians*. Nep. *Hōc illi tribuēbātur ignāviae*, *this was imputed to him as cowardice (for cowardice)*. Cic. *Eis subsidiō missus est*, *he was sent to them as aid*. Nep.

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Quinque cohortēs castris praesidiō reliquit, *he left five cohorts FOR THE DEFENCE OF THE CAMP* (literally *to the camp for a defence*). Caes. *Periclēs agrōs suōs dōnō rēi publicae dedit*, *Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present* (literally, *for a present*). Just.

282. Vocabulary.

Accidō, ere, i,	to fall to, befall; accidit, it happens,
Athēnae, ārum, f. pl.	Athens. [comes to pass.
Athēniēnsis, is, m. and f.	an Athenian.
Atticus, i, m.	Atticus, a Roman name.
Cōicō, ¹ ere, cōjēcī, jectum,	to cast, hurl, throw.
Difficilis, e,	difficult.
Impedimentum, i, n.	hinderance, embarrassment; impedi- menta, pl., hinderances; baggage (of an army). [against.
Īnferō, ferre, intulī, illātum,	to bear into, bear against, wage
Īnstō, āre, stitī,	to be near, be at hand.
Lūna, ae, f.	moon.
Mētiōr, iri, mēnsus sum,	to measure, allot.
Multō, ² adv.	much, far.
Novissimus, a, um, sup. of novus,	newest; novissimum agmen, the rear.
Oportet, ēre, ult,	it behooves, is proper; one ought.

¹ Pronounced as if spelled cōjiciō.

² Originally an Ablative of Difference; literally, *by much*.

Ōrnāmentum, i, n.	ornament, honor.
Plēnus, a, um,	full.
Subsidium, ii, n.	aid, support, reënforcement.
Tēlum, i, n.	dart; weapon.
Titus, i, m.	Titus, a Roman name.

283. Translate into English.

1. Caesarī nūntiātum est, equitēs Ariovistī lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōicere. 2. Helvētiīs est in animō per agrum Aeduōrum iter facere. Caesarī nūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Aeduōrum iter facere. 3. Germānōs trāns Rhēnum incolere dictum est. 4. Eā nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna. 5. Helvētiī undique locī nātūrā continēbantur. Hāc rē fiēbat ut minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre pōssent. 6. Frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportet. Diēs instat, quō diē¹ frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēbit. 7. Ea rēs Gallīs² māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō.³ 8. Legiōnēs duae in novissimō agmine praesidiō² impedimentīs³ erant.

9. Erant itinera duo, quibus Helvētiī domō exīre pōssent; ūnum³ angustum et difficile; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat; alterum,³ multō facilius. 10. Atticus Athēnīs ita vīxit, ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus. 11. Amīcitia populī Rōmānī mihī² ōrnāmentō² est. 12. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī mihī² ōrnāmentō² et praesidiō² esse oportet. 13. Ariovistus dixit amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibī² ōrnāmentō² et praesidiō² esse oportere. 14. Lēgātīs respondeāmus nōs diem ad dēliberandum sūmptūrōs esse. 15. Titus Labiēnus decimam legiōnem subsidio² nostris² mīsit. 16. Gallī oppidum Noviodūnum, nē cui⁴ esset ūsuī³ Rōmānīs,³ incendērunt.

¹ Quō is here an adjective agreeing with diē. The antecedent is usually expressed but once; here diē may be omitted in rendering.

² See 281, 390.

³ Supply erat.

⁴ Cui is here the indefinite pronoun, agreeing with ūsuī.

284. *Translate into Latin.*

1. In the towns of the Gauls were many things which were of great use to the Romans.¹ 2. The friendship of the general ought to be a safeguard to us.¹ 3. We should all live in such a way, as not to be a grief to our friends.¹ 4. It often happens, that what ought to be done is not easy to do. 5. It is our intention to go to Geneva and to Rome² this summer.

6. The friendship of the good is always an honor to us.¹ 7. It was announced to Caesar that the Helvetii had set out from their territory, and that they were attempting to march through the province. 8. It is stated by Caesar that the Helvetii were the bravest of the Gauls. 9. It was the intention of Orgetorix to obtain possession of the sovereignty³ of all Gaul. 10. Let soldiers remain, to be a garrison to the city. 11. The horsemen of Ariovistus hurled stones and darts upon the Romans. 12. Your friendship ought to be a safeguard to me.¹

LESSON XCVII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. — RULE XX.

285. *Lesson from the Grammar.***RULE XX. — Accusative and Genitive.**

409. The ACCUSATIVE of the PERSON and the GENITIVE of the THING are used with a few transitive verbs:

I. With verbs of *reminding, admonishing*:

Tē amicitiae commonefacit, he reminds you OF FRIENDSHIP. Cic. Militēs necessitātis monet, he reminds the soldiers of the necessity. Ter.

II. With verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting*:

Virōs sceleris arguit, you accuse men OF CRIME. Cic. Levitātis eum convincere, to convict him of levity. Cic. Absolvere injūriam eum, to acquit him of injustice. Cic.

¹ See 281, 390.² See 277, 380.³ See 258, 421.

III. With *miseret*, *paenitet*, *puget*, *taedet*, and *piget*:

Eōrum nōs *miseret*, we *pity* THEM (it moves our pity OF THEM).

Cic. *Cōsiliū* mē *paenitet*, I *repent* of my purpose. Cic. *Mē* *stultitiæ* *meæ* *puget*, I am *ashamed* of my folly. Cic.

NOTE 1. — The *Genitive of the Thing* designates, with verbs of *reminding*, etc., that to which the attention is called; with verbs of *accusing*, etc., the crime, charge; and with *miseret*, *paenitet*, etc., the object which produces the feeling; see examples.

NOTE 2. — The personal verbs included under this rule retain the *Genitive* in the *Passive*:

Accūsātus est *prōditiōis*, he was *accused* OF TREASON. Nep.

286. Vocabulary.

<i>Ācritēr</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>sharply, severely.</i>
<i>Anceps</i> , <i>cipitis</i> ,	<i>double, twofold; undecided.</i>
<i>Beneficium</i> , <i>ii, n.</i>	<i>benefit, favor.</i>
<i>Celeritās</i> , <i>ātis, f.</i>	<i>celerity, speed.</i>
<i>Commūnis</i> , <i>e,</i>	<i>common; commūnis rēs, the com-</i>
<i>Incrēdibilis</i> , <i>e,</i>	<i>incredible. [mon interest.</i>
<i>Ineō</i> , <i>ire, ii, itum,</i>	<i>to go into, enter upon, begin, under-</i>
<i>Insimulō</i> , <i>āre, āvi, ātum,</i>	<i>to accuse. [take.</i>
<i>Lēnitās</i> , <i>ātis, f.</i>	<i>smoothness, gentleness.</i>
<i>Licet</i> , <i>ēre, uit,</i>	<i>it is lawful, is permitted; one may.</i>
<i>Necesse</i> , ¹	<i>necessary.</i>
<i>Paenitet</i> , <i>ēre, uit,</i>	<i>it causes regret; mē paenitet, I</i>
<i>Petō</i> , <i>ere, ivi or ii, itum,</i>	<i>to seek, request, ask. [repent.</i>
<i>Prōditiō</i> , <i>ōnis, f.</i>	<i>treason.</i>
<i>Prōsequor</i> , <i>i, secūtus sum,</i>	<i>to follow up, pursue.</i>
<i>Prōspiciō</i> , <i>ere, spēxi, spēctum,</i>	<i>to look forward; to look out for.</i>
	(In the latter sense followed by the Dative.)

287. Translate into English.

1. *Ancipiti* *proeliō* *diū* *pūgnātum* est.² *Ab* *hōrā* *septimā* *ad* *vesperum* *fortiter* *pūgnātum* est. *Ad* *multam* *noctem* *etiam*

¹ *Necesse* is an adjective used only in the Nominative and Accusative Neuter Singular.

² Observe in this sentence and the others in this Lesson, that an impersonal verb can not be rendered literally. Thus, *diū pūgnātum est* would become in English, a long battle was fought, the fighting went on for a long time.

ad impedimenta pugnatum est. 2. Proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. 3. Caesar Titum Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus hostēs prōsequi jūssit: ad novissimum agmen ventum est. Ei ad quōs ventum erat fortiter impetum Rōmānōrum sustinuerunt. 4. Rēi frūmentāriae prōspiciendum est. 5. Caesar rēi frūmentāriae prōspiciendum esse existimābat. 6. Dē commūni rē in colloquiō dicendum est. 7. Vercingetorix prōditiōnis insimulātus est. 8. "Haec," dixit Vercingetorix, "ā mē beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis insimulātis."

9. Flūmen est Arar, quod in Rhodanum influit incredibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iudicārī nōn possit. Caesar per explorātōrēs certior factus est, trēs jam cōpiarum partēs Helvētios id flūmen trānsduxisse. 10. Gallōs hūjus cōsiliī paenitēbat. 11. Galli saepe cōsilia ineunt quōrum eōs paenitet. 12. Saepe cōsilia inīmus quōrum nōs paenitēre necesse est. 13. Nōbīs concilium in diem certam¹ indicere licet. 14. Vōbīs concilium in diem certam indicere liceat. 15. Galli petiērunt utī sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere liceret. 16. Militēs eā² celeritāte iērunt ut hostēs impetum legiōnum sustinēre nōn pōssent.

288. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The town was reached³ by us an hour before sunset. 2. A long and severe battle took place³ near the camp. 3. I have to speak³ of things which you ought to wish to hear. 4. It should be stated³ that the Gauls already repented of their plan. 5. Caesar told the Gauls that they might³ appoint a council.

6. You cannot bring the war to an end, but you may³ repent of your plans. 7. It cannot be ascertained what the enemy intend to do. 8. It was necessary to provide³ for

¹ Diēs, usually masculine, is feminine when it signifies a day fixed or appointed.

² Literally, *that*; render, *such*.

³ In all these cases express the thought impersonally in Latin.

the protection of the camp. 9. Orgetorix (when) accused of treason, was compelled to plead his cause in chains. 10. Crimes should be repented of. 11. The rear of the enemy was reached, and a severe battle took place. 12. Fighting will go on from midday to sunset. 13. As so many have been slain, we may judge how severe a battle has been fought.

LESSON XCVIII.

REVIEW OF RULES LIII., LIV., AND LV. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

289. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*

Post Orgetorigis mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id quod cōstituerant facere cōnābantur, ut ē finibus suis¹ exīrent. Ubi sē¹ ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, vicōs, prīvāta aedificia incendērunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūssērunt, ut parātiorēs ad omnia perīcula essent; trium mēnsium cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre jūssērunt. Persuāsērunt finitimīs utī, oppidīs suis vicisque exūtīs, tinā cum iīs proficiscerentur.

Erant itinera duo, quibus ē finibus suis exīre pōssent: unum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum, mōns autem altissimus impendēbat; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius. Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs esse exīstimābant, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Ob eās causās per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnātī sunt.

Caesar, hīs rēbus audītīs, mātūrāvit ab urbe proficiscī et māximīs itineribus in Galliam contendit. Ubi dē ejus ad-

¹ The pupil should exercise especial care in this Exercise to determine the *antecedents* of the pronouns which occur in it, particularly of *suus* and *sui*.

ventū Helvētīū certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum misērunt, qui dicerent, sibi esse in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. Caesar lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum stūptūrum.

290. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I shall take time for deliberation. 2. I wish to inform you of my arrival. 3. I send you a messenger to inform you of my arrival. 4. We intend to march through your country without (doing) any harm. 5. I intend to march through the province, because I have no other route. 6. Ambassadors were sent to Caesar to say what the Helvetii intended to do.

7. After hearing the words¹ of our friends, we shall set out from this city, and hasten home. 8. We attempted to set out before. 9. I wish you to try to tell me what you intend to do.² 10. Do you think that you will persuade me to tell you what I intended to do?² 11. Burn your towns and villages, and set out together with us. 12. You will never persuade us to set fire to our towns. 13. Let us always be prepared for danger. 14. We have burned all our grain, except what we carried with us. 15. Let each one take with him from home provisions for six months. 16. How many routes are there by which we can go?

LESSON XCIX.

GERUNDS, GERUNDIVES, AND PARTICIPLES. — REVIEW OF RULES LIX., LX., AND XXXII.

291. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

I. GERUNDS.

541. The GERUND is a verbal noun which shares so largely the character of a verb that it governs oblique cases, and takes adverbial modifiers:

¹ Use the Ablative Absolute.

² Observe that this is an Indirect Question.

*Jūs vocandī*¹ *senātum*, the right of summoning the senate. Liv.
*Beātē vivendī*¹ *cupiditās*, the desire of living happily. Cic.

542. The GERUND has four cases — the *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Ablative* — used in general like the same cases of nouns. Thus —

I. The GENITIVE OF THE GERUND is used with nouns and adjectives:

Ars vivendī, the art of living. Cic. *Studiōsus erat audiendī*, he was desirous of hearing. Nep. *Cupidus tē audiendī*, desirous of hearing you. Cic. *Artem vērā ac falsā dījūdicandī*, the art of distinguishing true things from false. Cic.

II. The DATIVE OF THE GERUND is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative:

Cum solvendō nōn essent, since they were not able to pay. Cic.
Aqua utilis est bibendō, water is useful for drinking. Plin.

III. The ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND is used after a few prepositions:²

Ad discendum prōpēnsi sumus, we are inclined to learn (to learning). Cic. *Inter lūdendum*, in or during play. Quint.

IV. The ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND is used (1) as *Ablative of Means*, and (2) with *prepositions*:

Mēns discendō alitur, the mind is nourished by learning. Cic. *Salūtem hominibus dandō*, by giving safety to men. Cic. *Virtūtēs cernuntur in agendō*, virtues are seen in action. Cic. *Dēterrēre ā scribendo*, to deter from writing. Cic.

II. GERUNDIVES.

543. The GERUNDIVE, like other participles, agrees with nouns and pronouns:

Inita sunt cōsilia urbis dēlendae, plans have been formed for destroying the city (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. *Numa sacerdotibus creandis animum adjēct*, Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests. Liv.

¹ *Vocandī* as a Genitive is governed by *jūs*, and yet it governs the Accusative *senātum*; *vivendī* is governed by *cupiditās*, and yet it takes the adverbial modifier *beātē*.

² Most frequently after *ad*; sometimes after *inter* and *ob*; very rarely after *ante*, *circā*, and *in*.

544. The GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION may be used —

1. In place of a *Gerund* with a direct object. It then takes the case of the Gerund whose place it supplies:

Libidō ejus videndi (= *libidō eum videndi*), *the desire of seeing him* (literally, *of him to be seen*). Cic. *Platōnis audiendi* (= *Platōnem audiendi*) *studiosus*, *fond of hearing Plato*. Cic. *Legendis oratoribus* (= *legendō oratorēs*), *by reading the orators*. Cic.

2. In the *Dative* and in the *Ablative* with a preposition :

Locum oppidō condendō cēperunt, *they selected a place for founding a city*. Liv. *Tempora dēmetendis fructibus accommodāta*, *seasons suitable for gathering fruits*. Cic. *Brūtus in liberandā patriā est interfectus*, *Brutus was slain in liberating his country*. Cic.

III. PARTICIPLES.

548. The PARTICIPLE is a verbal adjective which governs the same cases as the verb :

Animus sē nōn vidēns alia cernit, *the mind, though it does not see itself* (literally, *not seeing itself*), *discerns other things*. Cic.

549. PARTICIPLES are often used —

1. To denote, TIME, CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS :

Platō scribēns mortuus est, *Plato died while writing*. Cic. *Itūrī in proelium canunt*, *they sing when about to go into battle*. Tac. *Sol oriēns diem cōficit*, *the sun by its rising causes the day*. Cic. *Militēs renūntiant sē perfidiā veritōs revertisse*, *the soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy* (having feared). Caes.

2. To denote CONDITION or CONCESSION :

Mendācī hominī nē vērūm quidem dicentī crēdere nōn solēmus, *we are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth*. Cic. *Scripta tua jam diū expēctāns, nōn audeō tamen flāgitāre*, *though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it*. Cic.

3. To denote PURPOSE :

Perseus rediit, bellī cāsum tentātūrus, *Perseus returned to try* (about to try) *the fortune of war*. Liv. *Attribuit nōs trucidandōs Cethēgo*, *he assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter*. Cic.

4. To supply the place of RELATIVE CLAUSES :

Omnēs aliud agentēs aliud simulantēs, improbi sunt, *all who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest*. Cic.

5. To supply the place of PRINCIPAL CLAUSES:

Classem dēvictam cēpit, *he conquered and took the fleet* (took the fleet conquered). Nep.

550. The TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE — *Present, Perfect, and Future* — denote only *relative* time. They accordingly represent the time respectively as *present, past, and future* relatively to that of the principal verb :

Oculus sē nōn vidēns alia cernit, *the eye, though it does not see itself* (not seeing itself), *discerns other things*. Cic. Platō scribēns mortuus est, *Plato died while writing*. Cic. Ūva mātūrāta dulcescit, *the grape, when it has ripened* (having ripened), *becomes sweet*. Cic. Sapiēns bona semper placitūra laudat, *the wise man praises blessings which will always please* (being about to please). Sen.

LESSON C.

GERUNDS, GERUNDIVES, AND PARTICIPLES. — REVIEW
OF RULES LIX., LX., XXXII. — EXERCISES.

292. Vocabulary.

Accipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptum,	<i>to receive.</i>
Aggredior, ī, grēssus sum,	<i>to attack.</i>
Ardeō, ēre, ārsi, ārsus,	<i>to burn, to be ardent, be eager.</i>
Concidō, ere, ī,	<i>to fall.</i>
Concidō, ere, cidi, cīsum,	<i>to cut down, destroy, slay.</i>
Cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sēssus,	<i>to settle, post one's self, encamp.</i>
Crūdēlīter, adv.	<i>cruelly.</i>
Dēpopulor, āri, ātus sum,	<i>to ravage, lay waste.</i>
Excruciō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to torture.</i>
Frūmentātiō, ōnis, f.	<i>foraging, provisioning.</i>
Grātulor, āri, ātus sum,	<i>to congratulate; to thank.</i> (Followed by the Dative.)
Initium, īi, n.	<i>beginning.</i>
Īnsequor, ī, secūtus sum,	<i>to pursue, follow.</i>
Moror, āri, ātus sum,	<i>to delay, tarry.</i>
Perfacilis, e,	<i>very easy.</i>
Perveniō, ire, vēni, ventum,	<i>to arrive, come.</i>
Sēpultūra, ae, f.	<i>burial, interment.</i>

Subveniō, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come to the help of, succor, aid.*
(Followed by the Dative.)

Triduum, ī, n. *space of three days, three days.*

Ulciscor, ī, ultus sum, *to avenge one's self on, punish; to take vengeance.*

293. Translate into English.

1. Divitiacus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus est. 2. Animī Rōmānōrum ad ulciscendum ardēbant. 3. Titūrius in illō locō hiemandī causā cōnsēderat. 4. Reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar initium fugae factum esse ā Dumnorige. 5. Caesar equitātum ad eam regiōnem dēpopulandam mittit. 6. Fīnitimī lēgātōs ad Aeduōs mittunt subsidium rogātum. 7. Prīncipēs Aeduōrum ad Caesarem veniunt ōrātum ut cīvitātī subveniat. 8. Tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī,¹ prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum² convēnērunt.

9. Caesar ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. 10. Caesar Helvētiōs aggrēssus³ māgnam eōrum partem concīdit. 11. Gallī dicunt perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus Rōmānōs prohibēre. 12. Centuriō, multis vulneribus acceptis,⁴ pūgnāns⁵ concīdit. 13. Legiō decima Gallōs insequentēs⁶ tardāvit. 14. Cīvēs Rōmānōs crudēliter excruciatōs⁷ interfēcērunt. 15. Caesar, hōc proeliō factō, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat. 16. Rōmānī, propter sepultūram occisōrum trīdium morātī, hostēs sequī nōn potuerant.

294. Translate into Latin.

1. One legion of Caesar's army retarded for three hours the enemy (who were) pursuing. 2. After a beginning of

¹ Literally, 'ambassadors of Gaul'; render, 'from Gaul.'

² Supply in English the object, *him*.

³ See Suggestion XX., 5.

⁴ See Suggestion XXIII., (2).

⁵ In English the present participle in such a connection is usually accompanied by *while*.

⁶ See Suggestion XX., 2.

flight had been made¹ by one division of the enemy, the rest were easily conquered. 3. The Romans defeated the enemy (who were) not informed of their approach. 4. Let us send to our friends, to ask aid against those who have come for the purpose of ravaging our lands. 5. To conquer the brave and the free is not an easy thing to do.

6. For the sake of crossing the river more easily, Caesar had a bridge built over the Rhine. 7. Our soldiers ought to be prepared for setting out from camp, and for fighting with the enemy. 8. In asking aid, the Aedui said that they were eager to take vengeance.² 9. For defending the bridge which had been made, Caesar stationed soldiers on each bank of the river. 10. The Gallic chieftains said to Caesar: "We have been sent to you by our states to congratulate you."³

LESSON CI.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS. — NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES I., II., III., AND IV.

295. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Rule I. See 59 , 362. | 3. Rule III. See 20 , 368. |
| 2. Rule II. See 31 , 363. | 4. Rule IV. See 190 , 369. |

296. *Vocabulary.*

Adficiō, ere, fēci, fectum,	<i>to affect, visit.</i>	[Gaul.
Aduātuci, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>the Aduatuci, a tribe of northern</i>	
Aeduus, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>an Aeduan, one of the Aedui.</i>	
Bibracte, <i>is, n.</i>	<i>Bibracte, the chief town of the Aedui.</i>	
Cassius, <i>ii, m.</i>	<i>Cassius, a Roman name.</i>	
Crassus, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Crassus, a Roman name.</i>	
Gnaeus, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Gnaeus, a Roman name.</i>	

¹ Use the Ablative Absolute.

² Render, 'for (*ad*) taking vengeance.'

³ See **54**, 384.

⁴ Names of towns in *e* have *e* in the Ablative Singular.

Inimicus, i, m.	enemy. ¹
Intereō, ire, ii, itum,	to perish.
Irācundus, a, um,	passionate, violent.
Lacrimō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to weep.
Litavicus, i, m.	Litavicus, an Aeduan chieftain.
Lūcius, ii, m.	Lucius, a Roman name.
Octōdecim, ² indeclinable,	eighteen.
Passus, ūs, m.	pace; mille passūs, a thousand paces, a (Roman) mile; duo milia pas- sum, two miles; see 247, foot-note.
Pompēius, ii, m.	Pompey, a celebrated Roman general and statesman.
Quō, adv.	whither, to what place?
Subitō, adv.	suddenly.
Supplicium, ii, n.	punishment.
Victōria, ae, f.	Victoria.

297. Translate into English.

1. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, quī tertiam partem agrī Sēquanī occupāvit, homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius.
 2. Vesontiō est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum. Ariovistus cum suis omnibus cōpīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem contendēbat. 3. Litavicus Aeduus, convocātis subitō militibus, lacrimāns dixit: "Quō proficiscimur, militēs? Omnis noster equitātus interiit; prīncipēs civitātis interfectī sunt." 4. Is pāgus, quī appellābātur Tigurīnus, Lūcium Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat, et ējus exercitum sub jugum miserat. 5. Caesar principum liberōs obsidēs³ ad sē addūcī iussit.
 6. Gnaeō Pompēiō et Mārcō Crassō cōsulibus⁴ Germānī Rhēnum trāsiērunt. 7. Helvētīi timōre perterriti sunt nē suppliciō adficerentur. 8. Divitiacus, Dumnorigis frāter, addūcī nōn potuit ut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. 9. Caesar ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum, milibus passuum octōdecim

¹ *Inimicus* is a personal foe, while *hostis* is a public enemy.

² *Octōdecim* is less common than *duodēvigintī*.

³ *Obsidēs* is a predicate noun after *addūcī*; render, as hostages.

⁴ When two nouns are in the Ablative Absolute, one is a predicate noun. Here the predicate noun *cōsulibus* is plural, because it is connected with two singular nouns. Render, in the consulship of, etc.

aberat. 10. Eō cōsiliō domōs suās Helvētīi reliquerant, ut Galliae bellum inferrent. 11. Caesar Aeduōs, frātrēs¹ ab senātū appellātōs, in servitūte vidēbat tenēri. 12. Aduātucī, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt.

298. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The wall of the town was high, and the moat very wide and very deep. 2. Alesia was a town excellently fortified by art. 3. Victoria, a woman of great virtue and wisdom, has been for many years queen of Britain. 4. Who was king of those Germans who dwelt in Gaul at the arrival of Caesar? 5. Of which tribe of the Gauls was the chief magistrate called Vergobretus? 6. It was a great honor to a nation,² to be called friends or brothers by the Roman senate.

7. Caesar had demanded hostages with this purpose, — to deter³ their friends from conspiring⁴ against the Romans. 8. We are told⁵ by Caesar, that Pompey and Crassus were consuls at that time. 9. Magistrates and judges ought never to be rash and passionate. 10. To determine whether men are our friends or our enemies, is not always an easy thing to do. 11. Do you know who was⁶ the bravest general in the last war?

LESSON CII.

ACCUSATIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES V., VI., VII., IX., AND X. — RULES VIII. AND XI.

299. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Rule V. See 25 , 371. | 3. Rule VII. See 273 , 374. |
| 2. Rule VI. See 153 , 373. | 4. Rule IX. See 98 , 379. |
| 5. Rule X. See 277 , 380. | |

¹ *Frātrēs* is a predicate noun after *appellātōs*, agreeing with *Aeduōs*.

² See 281, 390.

³ See 297, sentence 10.

⁴ Use *nē* with the *Subjunctive*.

⁵ Render, *it is told to us*.

⁶ What mood will you use? See 127, 529.

RULE VIII. — Accusative of Specification.

378. A verb or an adjective may take an Accusative to define its application :

Capita vėlāmur, we have OUR HEADS veiled (are veiled as to OUR HEADS, or have veiled OUR HEADS). Verg. *Nūbe umerōs amictus, with HIS SHOULDERS enveloped in a cloud*. Hor. *Miles frāctus membra labōre, the soldier with LIMBS shattered with labor* (broken as to his limbs). Hor. *Aenēās ōs deō simill, Aeneas like a god in APPEARANCE*. Verg.

1. In a strict sense, the *Accusative of Specification* generally specifies the part to which the action or quality particularly belongs.

2. In a freer sense, this Accusative includes the adverbial use of *partem, nihil, rēs*, and of many neuter pronouns and adjectives — *hōc, illud, id, quid, multum, summum, cētera, reliqua*, etc.

Māximam partem lacte vivunt, they live mostly (as to the largest PART) *upon milk*. Caes. *Aliās rēs est improbus, in other THINGS* (as to the rest) *he is unprincipled*. Plaut. *Quærit, quid possint, he inquires HOW powerful they are*. Caes.

RULE XI. — Accusative in Exclamations.

381. The Accusative, either with or without an interjection, may be used in exclamations :

Heu mē miserum, AH ME unhappy! Cic. *Mē miserum, ME miserable!* Cic. *Ō fallācem spem, O deceptive HOPE!* Cic. *Mē caecum, blind that I am!* Cic.

300. Vocabulary.

Adeō, ire, īi, itum,	to go to, arrive at, reach.
Aeduu, a, um,	Aeduan, pertaining to the Aedui.
Cēnsus, ūs, m.	census, enumeration.
Cōnsimill, e,	similar, like.
Cōnsultum, ī, n.	decree.
Doceō, ēre, uī, dōctum,	to teach, inform.
Explōrātor, ōris, m.	scout.
Explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to explore.
Redeō, ire, īi, itum,	to go back, return.
Spatium, īi, n.	space, interval, distance.
Verbīgēnus, ī, m.	Verbigenus, the name of one of the four cantons of the Helvetii.

301. *Translate into English.*

1. Ubi per explorātōrēs Caesar certior factus est Helvētiōs flūmen Ararim trānsire,¹ legiōnēs trēs ē castris ēduxit. 2. Hostēs vicōs Rēmōrum omnēs quōs adire poterant incendērunt. 3. Belgae Bibrax, oppidum Rēmōrum, oppugnāvērunt; sed finem oppugnandī nox fēcit. 4. Nihil Sēquanī respondērunt.² 5. Nervii equitātū nihil³ poterant. 6. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnis prohibēre. 7. Divitiacus Rōmam ad senātum⁴ vēnit auxilium postulātum. 8. Caesar paucōs diēs ad Veson-tiōnem morātur. 9. Caesarem diem ex diē ducēbant⁵ Aeduī. 10. Helvētiōrum quī domum rediērunt cēsus habitus est. 11. Helvētiī hunc pāgum Verbigēnum appellant. 12. Haec omnia nōs docuistis. 13. Caesar Ariovistum docēbat, quae senātūs cōnsulta in Aeduōs facta essent.⁶ 14. Hostēs fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. 15. Germāni Caesarem nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habuisse dicuntur. 16. Hostēs cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī. 17. Ariovistus multōs mēnsēs castris sē tenuit. 18. Prīma legiō in castra vēnerat, reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū spatium aberant.

302. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Ariovistus, through his ambassadors, demanded that Caesar should not lead an army into his part of Gaul. 2. Caesar sent a lieutenant to explore those harbors of Britain which he could reach. 3. What demand did the Aeduan

¹ As *certiorem facere*, 'to inform,' has the force of a single verb, it admits an infinitive depending upon it. See 171, 534.

² Answered nothing; render, made no reply.

³ See 299, 378, 2; render with *poterant*, 'were not strong.'

⁴ Why is the preposition used with *senātum*, but not with *Rōmam*? See 277, 380.

⁵ *Diem ex diē*, 'day after day'; *ducēbant*, 'led on' = 'put off.'

⁶ Why Subjunctive? See 127, 529.

⁷ His part of, render, his.

chieftain make?¹ 4. During the whole winter the Roman legions kept themselves within their winter quarters. 5. Caesar hastened into Gaul with forced marches, and went to Geneva. At this town there was a bridge over the river Rhone. Caesar remained one month in the vicinity of Geneva.

6. Caesar, after defeating the Helvetii, ordered them² to return to their homes. 7. The river which the Helvetii were crossing was called the Arar. 8. Experience teaches us many things. 9. Experience teaches soldiers what it is best to do³ in battle. 10. Caesar made the Helvetii return⁴ to their own territory. 11. To regard all men as friends is not an easy thing to do.⁵

LESSON CIII.

DATIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES XII., XIII., AND XIV. —
RULE XV.

303. Lesson from the Grammar.

1. Rule XII. See **54**, 384. 2. Rule XIII. See **281**, 390.
3. Rule XIV. See **141**, 391.

RULE XV. — Dative with Nouns and Adverbs.

392. The Dative is used with a few special nouns and adverbs:

I. With a few nouns from verbs which take the Dative:

Iūstitia est obtemperātiō⁵ lēgibus, justice is obedience TO LAWS.
Cic. Sibi respōnsiō, a reply TO HIMSELF. *Cic. Opulentō hominī servitūs dūra est, serving (servitude to) a rich man is hard.* *Plaut.*

¹ Observe that *to make a demand* = *to demand*.

² *After . . . them*, render, *ordered the defeated Helvetii*.

³ Use the Supine.

⁴ *Made . . . return*; render, *made that the Helvetii should return*.

⁵ From *obtemperō*, which takes the Dative.

II. With a few adverbs from adjectives which take the Dative :

- Congruenter¹ *nātūrae* vivere, to live in accordance WITH NATURE.
 Cic. *Sibi* convenienter dicere, to speak consistently WITH HIMSELF.
 Cic. *Prōximē* hostium castris, next to the camp of the enemy. *Caes.*

304. Vocabulary.

Adulēscēns, entis, <i>m. and f.</i>	youth, young man, young woman.
Arcessō, ere, <i>ivi or ii, itum,</i>	to summon, invite.
Calamitās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	calamity, disaster.
Commīus, ii, <i>m.</i>	Commīus, a chieftain of the Atrebātes
Cūra, ae, <i>f.</i>	care. [in Gaul.
Facile, <i>adv.</i>	easily.
Fidēlis, e,	faithful.
Gallicus, a, um,	Gallie.
Idōneus, a, um,	suitable, fit, proper.
Ingrātus, a, um,	ungrateful, unpleasant, disagreeable.
Insīgnis, e,	remarkable, signal.
Persolvō, ere, <i>i, solūtum,</i>	to pay.
Praeficiō, ere, <i>fēci, fectum,</i>	to place over, place in command of.
Praesum, esse, <i>fui,</i>	to be in charge of, be in command of, to superintend. (Followed by the Dative.)
Senonēs, um, <i>m. pl.</i>	the Senones, a tribe of central Gaul.
Similis, e,	similar, like.
Streptus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	din, noise.

305. Translate into English.

1. Hīc pāgus, quī appellātur Tigurīnus, insīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulit. 2. Quae cīvītās calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulit, ea princeps poenās persolvēt.² 3. In omnī Galliā Druidēs rēbus dīvīnīs praesunt. 4. Caesar lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī prōximī flūmīnī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. 5. Labiēnō mandat, ut Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat. 6. Haec omnia ad bellum māgnō ūsui erant.

¹ From *congruēns*, which takes the Dative.

² Quae cīvītās . . . ea, render as if it were ea cīvītās quae ; princeps . . . persolvēt, 'shall be the first to pay.'

7. Imperātor duās legiōnēs urbī praesidiō reliquit. 8. Germānī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessitī sunt. 9. Caesar Brūtum adulēscētem clāssī Gallicisq̄ nāvibus praefēcit.

10. Quid illī simile bellō fuit? 11. Germānī dixērunt sē pōsse Rōmānīs ūtilēs esse. 12. Caesar Commium sibi fidēlem arbitrābātur. 13. Senonēs finitimī Belgīs erant. 14. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallis. 15. Caesar castrīs idōneum locum dēligit. 16. Locus ad aciem instruendam idōneus erat. 17. Belgae, māgnō cum strepitū castrīs ēgrēssī, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur.¹ 18. Ariovistus dixit nūquam ante illud tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī prōvinciae finēs² ēgrēssum esse.

306. Translate into Latin.

1. The Belgae are next to the Germans, who dwell beyond the Rhine. 2. The Helvetii were so surrounded by natural boundaries,³ that they could not easily wage war against their neighbors. 3. Geneva is the town of the Allobroges nearest the territory of the Helvetii. 4. Caesar placed Labienus in command of the fortification that he had made near Geneva. 5. Caesar saw that it was perilous to the Roman people for the Germans to cross⁴ the Rhine and come into Gaul.

6. The Romans found that the Helvetii were not a match for them. 7. The general of a large army always has many things to care for.⁵ 8. Ariovistus told Caesar, that he thought

¹ *Fēcērunt ut . . . vidērētur*, literally, *made that their departure seemed; render, made their departure seem.*

² Many verbs are sometimes *transitive* and sometimes *intransitive*. Thus, *ēgredior* in this sentence as a *transitive* verb, *to pass beyond*, is followed by the Direct Object, *finēs*, while in the previous sentence, as an *intransitive* verb, *to depart*, it is followed by the Ablative of Separation, *finibus*.

³ *Natural boundaries; render, the nature of the place.*

⁴ *For the Germans to cross*; English subject clauses of this form are generally expressed in Latin, as here, by the Infinitive with subject Accusative.

⁵ *Render, 'many things are for a care to the general.'* 281, 390.

that the friendship of the Roman people ought to be a safeguard to him.¹ 9. He knew that the death of Caesar would be acceptable to many Romans. 10. Two brothers were in command of one hundred cantons of the Suebi. 11. Caesar left a large number of soldiers for a garrison to the camp.¹

LESSON CIV.

GENITIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES XVI. AND XX. —
RULES XVII., XVIII., AND XIX.

307. Lesson from the Grammar.

1. Rule XVI. See 31, 395. 2. Rule XX. See 285, 409.

RULE XVII. — Genitive with Adjectives.

399. Many adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

Avidus laudis, desirous OF PRAISE. Cic. *Ōtī cupidus*, desirous OF LEISURE. Liv. *Cōnscīus conjūratiōnis*, cognizant of the conspiracy. Sall. *Amāns sui virtūs*, virtue fond of itself. Cic. *Efficiēs voluptātis*, productive of pleasure. Cic. *Glōriæ memor*, mindful of glory. Liv.

I. The Genitive is used with adjectives denoting —

1. DESIRE or AVERSION:

Contentiōnis cupidus, desirous of contention. Cic. *Sapientiae studiōsus*, studious of (student of) wisdom. Cic.

2. KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, RECOLLECTION, with their contraries:

Rē gnārus, acquainted with the thing. Cic. *Prūdēs rē militāris*, skilled in military science. Nep. *Peritus belli*, skilled in war. Nep. *Insuētus laboris*, unaccustomed to labor. Caes. *Glōriæ memor*, mindful of glory. Liv.

3. PARTICIPATION, GUILT, FULNESS, MASTERY, with their contraries:

Adfinis culpaē, sharing the fault. Cic. *Ratiōnis expers*, destitute of reason. Cic. *Vita metūs plēna*, a life full of fear. Cic.

¹ See 281, 390.

II. The Genitive is used with VERBALS in **Āx**, and with PRESENT PARTICIPLES used adjectively:

Virtūtum ferāx, productive of virtues. Liv. *Tenāx prōpositi, tenacious (steadfast) of purpose.* Hor. *Amāns patriae, fond of his country.* Cic. *Fugiēns labōris, shunning labor.* Caes.

RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A noun predicated of another noun denoting a different person or thing, is put in the Genitive:

*Omnia hostium erant, all things belonged to the enemy.*¹ Liv. *Senātus Hannibalis erat, the senate was HANNIBAL'S (i.e. in his interest).* Liv. *Jūdicis est vērū sequi, to follow the truth is the duty of a judge.*² Cic. *Parvi pretii est, it is of small value.* Cic. *Tyrus mare suae ditiōnis*³ *fēcit, Tyre brought the sea under (literally, made the sea of) her sway.* Curt.

RULE XIX.—Genitive with Special Verbs.

406. The Genitive is used—

I. With *misereor* and *miserescō*:

Miserere labōrum, pity the labors. Verg. *Miserescite rēgis, pity the king.* Verg.

II. With *recordor*, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliscor*:

Meminit praeteritōrum, he remembers the past. Cic. *Oblitus sum mei, I have forgotten myself.* Ter. *Flāgitiorum recordāri, to recollect base deeds.* Cic. *Reminisci virtūtis, to remember virtue.* Caes.

III. With *rēfert* and *interest*:

Illōrum rēfert, it concerns them. Sall. *Interest omnium, it is the interest of all.* Cic.

308. Vocabulary.

Antiquus, a, um,	ancient, old, former.
Clāmītō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to exclaim, cry out.
Cohortātiō, ōnis, f.	exhortation, encouragement.
Cōnsciūs, a, um,	conscious, aware.

¹ Literally, *were* OF THE ENEMY, or *were* THE ENEMY'S.

² Literally, *is* OF A JUDGE.

³ Here *ditiōnis*, denoting a different thing from *mare*, of which it is predicated, is put in the Genitive.

Cōstantia, ae, f.	constancy, steadfastness.
Cōsuētūdō, inis, f.	custom, usage.
Cupidus, a, um,	desirous.
Dēminuō, ere, uī, ūtum,	to diminish, lessen.
Distineō, ēre, uī, tentum,	to keep apart, separate.
Honor, ōris, m.	honor.
Incommodum, i, n.	misfortune, disaster, defeat.
Injūria, ae, f.	injury, wrong.
Interest, esse, fuit, im- personal,	it interests, concerns.
Ōdi, ¹ isse,	to hate, detest.
Potentia, ae, f.	power, influence.
Principātus, ūs, m.	sovereignty, dominion.
Reminiscor, i,	to remember.
Restituō, ere, uī, ūtum,	to restore.
Suspikor, āri, ātus sum,	to suspect.
Vetus, eris,	old, ancient.

309. Translate into English.

1. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne² ad aliam partem profectus est. 2. Aliquid novī cōsiliī³ ā barbaris initum est. Caesar suspicātus est aliquid novī ā barbaris initum esse cōsiliī. 3. Dumnorix Aeduus, dē quō ante ab nobīs dictum est, homō erat cupidus rērum novārum, cupidus imperiī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis. 4. Jūdicārī potest quantum habeat in sē⁴ bonī⁵ cōstantia. 5. Caesar Allobrogibus imperāvit ut Helvētīs frūmenti cōpiam facerent.⁵ 6. Hominēs barbarī nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī sunt. 7. Vercingetorix, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cūjus pater principātum Galliae tōtius obtinuerat, prōditiōnis accūsātus est.

¹ This verb wants the present system. Ōdi is Present in sense: hence in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect it has the sense of the Imperfect and Future.

² Literally, *from the exhortation of*; render, *from exhorting, or encouraging*.

³ Literally, 'something of . . . plan'; render, 'some . . . plan.' So *quantum bonī*, 'how much advantage.'

⁴ Literally, *has in itself*; render *possesses*.

⁵ *Cōpiam facere*, 'to furnish a supply.'

8. Divici³, lēgatiōnis princeps, Caesarem monuit ut remisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmānī et pristinae virtutis Helvētiōrum. 9. Haec ā mē beneficia habētis, quem prōditionis insimulātis. 10. Dumnorix clāmitābat liberum sē liberaeque esse civitātis. 11. Populus Rōmānus nullius injūriae sibi cōnsciū fuit. 12. Gallī cōnsilia ineunt quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse est. 13. Rēi publicae commūnisque salutis interest manūs hostium distīnērī. 14. Dumnorix Rōmānōs ōdit, quod eōrum adventū potentia sua dēminūta et Divitiacus frāter in antiquum locum honoris est restitūtus.

310. *Translate into Latin.*

1. How much space¹ did the line of battle occupy? 2. The enemy led a part of their forces over the river. 3. Caesar found that the Nervii were men of great valor. 4. The rampart was twelve feet² in height.³ 5. The tribune of the soldiers, a man of great wisdom and courage, hastened to Galba, and told him what hope there was of safety. 6. Of all those regions of Gaul, the state of the Veneti has by far the greatest reputation.

7. The Gauls were not unskilled in military affairs. 8. Caesar was waiting to see⁴ what plan¹ the enemy would adopt. 9. The nation of the Suebi is by far the largest and the most warlike of all the Germans. 10. It is for the interest of all to obey the laws. 11. Has the traveller told you any news?¹ 12. All men by nature are desirous of freedom. 13. Those who were accused of treason were not put to death. 14. Let us ever⁵ remember the valor of our fathers.

¹ Render, *how much of place, what of plan, anything of new.*

² Use the Predicate Genitive.

³ Latin idiom, INTO, i.e. *in the direction of.*

⁴ To wait to see, *exspectā.*

⁵ Observe that the English word *ever* sometimes means *at any time*, Latin *ūquam*, and sometimes *always*, Latin *semper*. Which meaning has it here?

LESSON CV.

ABLATIVE PROPER. — REVIEW OF RULES XXI., XXII.,
AND XXIII. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

311. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XXI. See 277, 412. 2. Rule XXII. See 158, 413.
3. Rule XXIII. See 88, 417.

312. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*

Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit incredibilī lēnitātē, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi trānsībant. Ubī per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs aggrēssus māgnam eōrum partem concīdit; reliquī fugae sēsē mandārunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hīc pāgus Lūcium Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat, et ējus exercitum sub jugum mīserat. Ita, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.

313. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar says that one canton of the Helvetii was called Tigurinus, and that this one canton had inflicted a signal calamity upon the Roman people. By this canton, Cassius, the consul, had been slain, and his army had been sent under the yoke.

2. When the Helvetii were crossing the river Arar, scouts informed Caesar that one division had not yet crossed. Caesar led forth three legions from camp, and attacked this division of the Helvetii. The Romans found that this division was that canton of the Helvetii, which was called

Tigurinus. They already knew that the Helvetian state was divided into four cantons.

3. Who dwell at this time where the Helvetii formerly (*before*) dwelt? 4. Is the nation that dwells there divided into cantons? 5. In what part of the territory of the Helvetii did the canton which was called Tigurinus dwell?

LESSON CVI.

INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.—REVIEW OF RULES XXV., XXVI., XXVIII. AND XXIX.—RULES XXIV. AND XXVII.

314. Lesson from the Grammar.

1. Rule XXV. See 78, 420.
2. Rule XXVI. See 258, 421.
3. Rule XXVIII. See 236, 423.
4. Rule XXIX. See 231, 424.



RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Accompaniment.

419. The Ablative is used —

I. To denote ACCOMPANIMENT. It then takes the preposition **cum**:

Vivit cum Balbō, he lives WITH BALBUS. Cic. *Cum gladiis stant, they stand with swords* (i. e. armed WITH swords). Cic.

II. To denote CHARACTERISTIC or QUALITY. It is then modified by an adjective or by a Genitive:

Summā virtūte adulescēns, a youth OF THE HIGHEST VIRTUE. Caes. *Quidam magnō capite, ore rubicundō, magnis pedibus, a certain one with a large head, with a red face, and with large feet.* Plant.

III. To denote MANNER.¹ It then takes the preposition **cum**, or is modified by an adjective or by a Genitive:

¹ Note the close connection between these three uses of the Ablative—the first designating an attendant person or thing—with *Balbus*, with *swords*; the second, an attendant quality—a youth *with* (attended by) the

Cum virtūte vixit, he lived VIRTUOUSLY. Cic. *Summā vī proelium commiserunt, they joined battle WITH THE GREATEST VIOLENCE.* Nep. *Duobus modis fit, it is done in two ways.* Cic.

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Price.

422. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative:

Vendidit aurō patriam, he sold his country FOR GOLD. Verg. *Conduxit māgnō domum, he hired a house AT A HIGH PRICE.* Cic. *Multō sanguine Poenīs victōria stetit, the victory cost the Carthaginians (stood to the Carthaginians at) much blood.* Liv.

315. Vocabulary.

Adfinitās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	connection, relationship.
Audācia, ae, <i>f.</i>	audacity, boldness.
Biturigēs, um, <i>m. pl.</i>	the Bituriges, a tribe of central
Capillus, ī, <i>m.</i>	hair. [Gaul.
Carō, carnis, <i>f.</i>	flesh.
Commovēō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum,	to move, disturb, alarm.
Ēiciō, ¹ ere, ējēcī, jectum,	to cast out, drive out, expel.
Favēō, ēre, fāvī, fautum,	to favor. (Followed by the
Incendium, ī, <i>n.</i>	fire, burning. [Dative.]
Inficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	to stain, color, dye.
Liberālītās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	liberality.
Portōrium, ī, <i>n.</i>	tax, toll, duty.
Praestō, āre, stitī, stitum or	to surpass. (Followed by the
stātum,	price. [Dative.]
Pretium, ī, <i>n.</i>	hanging down, long.
Prōmissus, a, um,	to buy up, buy, purchase.
Redimō, ere, ēmī, emptum,	to seek, exact.
Repetō, ere, ivi or īi, itum,	oak.
Robur, oris, <i>n.</i>	wife.
Uxor, ōris, <i>f.</i>	woad, a plant used for dyeing blue.
Vitrum, ī, <i>n.</i>	to live.
Vivō, ere, vixī, victum,	

316. Translate into English.

1. Populus Rōmānus ab Helvētiīs poenās bellō repetiit.
2. Nāvēs Venetōrum tōtae factae ex robore erant.
3. Ger-
highest virtue; the third, an attendant circumstance — to live with virtue, virtuously. Compare cum Balbō vivere and cum virtūte vivere.

¹ Pronounced as if spelled ējiciō.

mānī dixerunt sē vēnisse ējectōs¹ domō. 4. Caesar honōris Divitiaci causā² sēsē Bellovacōs in fidem receptūrum³ dixit. 5. Allobrogēs nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidēbantur. 6. Biturigēs incendia urbium suārum māgnō cum dolōre ferēbant. 7. Omnēs sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt capillōque sunt prōmissō. 8. Hominēs barbarī carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vēstītī. 9. Clāssis Rōmāna celeritatē prae-stābat.

10. Dumnorix est homō summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā. 11. Helvētiī, Caesaris adventū commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt. 12. Pūgnātum ab hostibus ācriter est. 13. Tempestātibus sub pellibus⁴ mīlitēs continēri nōn poterant. 14. Dumnorix ex⁵ Helvētiīs uxōrem habet; favet Helvētiīs propter eam adfinitātem. 15. Galli jūmenta importāta māgnō parant pretiō. Jūmentis importātis mākīmē dēlectantur. Germānī jūmentis importātis nōn ūtuntur. 16. Complūrēs annōs portōria nostra parvō pretiō redēpta habētis.⁶

317. Translate into Latin.

1. The Germans were led across the Rhine not far from the sea. 2. The Suebi were men of great height. 3. The Usipetes, during a large part of the winter, lived upon the supplies of the Menapii. 4. Caesar had ascertained that the cavalry of the Germans had been sent across the river a few days before. 5. The Germans, terrified by the approach of the Romans, sought safety in flight. 6. The Britons

¹ See Suggestion XX., 3, 2).

² Honōris causā, for the sake of honoring, out of respect for.

³ In fidem recipere, to receive under one's protection.

⁴ Sub pellibus, under skins, i. e. in tents, as the tents were made of skins.

⁵ Ex, from; render, from among.

⁶ The public revenues were not collected by the state, but the right of collecting them was sold for a definite sum to the highest bidder. Compare the expression, *redēpta habētis*, with the English Perfect Active, *you have purchased*.

thought that it was best to keep the Romans from grain and supplies.

7. Caesar was daily carrying grain from the fields into the camp. 8. For¹ several successive days storms kept the Romans in camp, and prevented the enemy from attack. 9. A forest of great width reaches from the river Rhine through the midst of² the territory of the Treveri. 10. The chieftain of the Treveri was not of friendly disposition towards the Romans. 11. The general decided to unite the town with the camp by a fortification. 12. In knowledge of military affairs the Romans surpassed the Gauls.

LESSON CVII.

LOCATIVE ABLATIVE. — CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS. —
AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, AND VERBS.
— REVIEW OF RULES XXX. TO XXXVI.

318. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XXX. See **185**, 425.
2. Rule XXXI. See **93**, 429.
3. Rule XXXII. See **240**, 431.
4. Rule XXXIII. See **65**, 432.
5. Rule XXXIV. See **43**, 438.
6. Rule XXXV. See **107**, 445.
7. Rule XXXVI. See **20**, 460.

319. *Vocabulary.*

Audeó, ère, ausus sum, ³	to dare.
Augeó, ère, auxi, auctum,	to augment, increase.
Bellô, âre, âvi, âtum,	to war, wage war, carry on war.
Cônsequor, i, secûtus sum,	to follow, pursue, overtake.

¹ Do not translate the preposition. Use the Accusative of Duration of Time.

² Remember the Latin idiom for *the midst of*.

³ A *semi-deponent* verb. The forms belonging to the Present System are in the Active Voice, all others in the Passive.

Contrā, adv.	against, in opposition.
Dives, itis, comp. divitior or ditior, sup. divitissimus or ditissimus,	rich, wealthy. [means, wealth.
Facultās, ātis, f.	ability; facultātēs, pl., resources,
Familiāris, e,	domestic, private; rēs familiāris,
Frētus, a, um,	relying on. [private property.
Incolumis, e,	unharmcd, safe.
Largior, iri, itus sum,	to bestow, make gifts.
Liceor, ēri, licitus sum,	to bid.
Moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtum,	to move.
Post, adv.	afterward.
Rūrsus, adv.	again.
Vectigal, ālis, n.	tax, revenue.
Vicis, gen., ¹ f.	turn; in vicem, in turn.

320. Translate into English.

1. Hōc proeliō factō, Caesar reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequi pōsset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūravit,² atque ita exercitum trānsduxit. 2. Caesar in Rēmōrum finibus castra posuit. 3. Suēbī centum mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt; reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illi domī remanent. 4. Helvētīi diem dicunt, quā diē³ ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. 5. Vectigālīa nostra parvō pretiō redēpta habent, proptereā quod, illis licentibus,⁴ contrā⁵ licēri audet nēmō.

6. Orgetorix, apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus et ditissimus, suam rem familiārem auxerat, et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāverat. 7. Paene unō tempore et in flūmine et jam in manibus nostrīs⁶ hostēs vīsī sunt. 8. Multō diē⁷ per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et montem ā suis tenēri, et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse. 9. Hostēs, superiōribus victōriis⁸

¹ Not used in the Nominative.² See Vocabulary under cūrō.³ Omit diē in rendering.⁴ See Suggestion XXXIII., (1).⁵ Against, in opposition; render, against them.⁶ In manibus nostrīs, close at hand.⁷ Multō diē, late in the day.⁸ See 185, 425, 1.

frēti, in suā virtūte tōtius Galliae salūtem positam putābant. 10. Prōnūntiātur militēs primā lūce itūrōs esse. 11. Principēs habēbant quāsdam rēs quās ab eō petere volēbant. 12. Rōmānī ad ūnum¹ omnēs incolumēs sē in castra recēpērunt.

321. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Of² all the Britons, those who inhabit Kent are by far the most civilized. 2. The cavalry of the Britons attack the Romans on the march. 3. The soldiers were occupied with the fortification of the camp. 4. The enemy made an attack upon those who were stationed in front of the camp. 5. The cavalry saw that the legions were behind them. 6. Caesar saw that a large force of the enemy was drawn up on³ the other bank of the river.

7. A chieftain of the Britons had come to Caesar in Gaul.⁴ 8. Caesar ascertained from the ambassador, that a town protected by forests was not far from that place. This town he hastened to attack on two sides.⁵ 9. It has been stated above that Kent is on³ the sea. 10. The soldiers of Titurius placed all hope of safety in their valor. 11. Sabinus ordered the tribunes and the centurions whom he had about him to follow him.



LESSON CVIII.

USE OF THE INDICATIVE. — SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES. — REVIEW OF RULES XXXVII., XXXVIII. AND XL. — RULE XXXIX.

322. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XXXVII. See **112**, 474.
2. Rule XXXVIII. See **114**, 483.
3. Rule XL. See **114**, 487.

¹ Ad ūnum, to a man.

² In such a connection as this, *ex* with the Ablative is often used instead of the Partitive Genitive.

⁴ Latin idiom, into Gaul.

³ Use *ad*.

⁵ Latin idiom, from two sides.

RULE XXXIX.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action
NOT AS REAL but AS POSSIBLE :

Hic quaerat quispiam, here some one MAY INQUIRE. Cic. *Ita laudem inveniās, thus you WILL (OR MAY) OBTAIN praise.* Ter. *Ita amicōs parēs, thus YOU WILL MAKE friends.* Ter. *Vix dicere ausim, I SHOULD scarcely DARE to say.* Liv. *Crēderēs victōs, vanquished you would have thought them.* Liv. *Forsitan quaerātis, perhaps you may inquire.* Cic. *Hōc nēmō dixerit, no one would say this.* Cic. *Quis dubitet (= nēmō dubitat), who would doubt (or who doubts = no one doubts)?* Cic. *Hōc quis ferre possit, who would be able to endure this?* Cic.

323. Vocabulary.

Abeō, ire, ii, itum,	to depart, go away.
Ascendō, ere, i, scēsum,	to ascend. [or.
Aut, conj.	or; either; aut . . . aut, either . . .
Capiō, ere, cēpī, captum,	to take; cōsiliū capere, to take counsel, form a plan. . .
Dissentiō, ōnis, f.	disagreement, dissension.
Exspoliō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to rob, deprive.
Forsitan, adv.	perhaps.
Iniquus, a, um,	unfavorable, disadvantageous.
Insuetus, a, um,	unaccustomed.
Māter, tris, f.	mother.
Neglegō, ere, lēxi, lēctum,	to neglect, disregard.
Nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptum,	to veil; to marry (to assume the [bridal veil for).
Praestō, āre, stitī, stitum or stātum,	to manifest, show, put forth. ¹
Prōponō, ere, posuī, positum,	to set forth.
Sentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēsum,	to think.
Subiciō, ² ere, jēcī, jectum,	to cast under, subject.

324. Translate into English.

1. Princeps māgnū numerū equitatūs suō sūmptū alēbat. 2. Dē³ quartā vigiliā lēgātus summū jugum montis

¹ Observe that with this meaning *praestō* is a transitive verb, while with the meaning given in 315, it is intransitive.

² Pronounced as if spelled *subficiō*.

³ Dē, from; render, in the course of.

ascendat. 3. Vōs, militēs, datā facultāte,¹ vōbīs cōsulite; abite, dum est² facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite. 4. Ad lēgātōs mittendōs nōbīs tridui spatium dētur. 5. Īnsuetus nāvigandī mare timēbis. 6. In Galliā relinqūmur. 7. Eōdem itinere quō hostēs iērunt ad eōs contendēmus. 8. Prīnceps mātrem hominī nōbilissimō nūptum³ collocābit. 9. Forsitan equitātum ante sē mittat. 10. Quae ipsī intelligāmus, prōpōnāmus. 11. Montem occupēmus proeliōque abstinēāmus.

12. Ad tempus omnēs rēs administrentur. 13. Nōlīte dissentiōne rem in summum pericūlum dēducere; ūnum atque idem sentiāmus ac probēmus. 14. Habētis, militēs, quam petistis, facultātem; hostem iniquō locō⁴ tenētis; praestāte eandem virtūtem, quam saepe praestitistis. 15. In cōsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus; nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum pericūlum neglēxērunt, nec⁵ Galliam perpetuae servitūtī subicere. 16. Rōmānī alius aliī⁶ subsidium tulērunt.

325. Translate into Latin.

1. Send ambassadors to the general: you will obtain your request. 2. Let this day decide with reference to the courage of these two soldiers. 3. Come to me speedily. 4. Conduct the legion into the territory of the enemy. 5. Let us not wait for the rest of the army. 6. Let not our plans be ascertained by the enemy. 7. Retain your ancient valor.

¹ See Suggestion XXIII., (1).

² Supply with *est* the Dative *vōbīs*, *there is to you*; render, *you have*.

³ *Nūptum* is a Supine used after the verb of motion *collocābit* (166, 546); *will place to be veiled or to marry*; render, *will give in marriage*.

⁴ For case, see 185, 425, 2.

⁵ Render, *or*.

⁶ *Alius aliī*, *another to another*. In this Latin idiom there is regularly an ellipsis which must be supplied in English, as here (*one to one*), *another to another*. In this case we may render *to one another*. *Alius* is in opposition with *Rōmānī*.

8. May we contend in battle before the camp. 9. Fortify the camp with a higher rampart.

10. Let not the Germans cross the Rhine and try the fortune of war. 11. Let all the soldiers assail the leader of the enemy, and let them either wound him or put him to death. 12. Let us await the aid of our friends. 13. Consider, soldiers, that you are fighting in the sight of your general. 14. Let the Ubii send scouts among the Suebi, and let them ascertain what is done among them. 15. Let every man consult not for himself alone, but for his country and his friends. 16. Let us not be regarded as enemies.

LESSON CIX.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES. — SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE AND OF RESULT. — REVIEW OF RULES XLI., XLII., AND XLIII.

326. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XLI. See 119, 491. 2. Rule XLII. See 119, 497.
3. Rule XLIII. See 123, 500.

327. *Vocabulary.*

Adigō, ere, ēgī, āctum,	<i>to drive, impel, throw.</i>
Et, conj.	<i>and; et . . . et, both . . . and.</i>
Fingō, ere, finxī, fictum,	<i>to form, fashion; vultum fingere,</i> <i>to control the countenance.</i>
Hortor, āri, ātus sum,	<i>to exhort, urge.</i>
Lacrima, ae, f.	<i>tear.</i>
Litus, oris, n.	<i>shore.</i>
Obsidiō, ōnis, f.	<i>siege, blockade.</i>
Opera, ae, f.	<i>work; operam dare, to take pains,</i>
Ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to ask, beg, plead. [endeavor.</i>
Persequor, ī, secūtus sum,	<i>to follow up, avenge.</i>
Praeciپیō, ere, cēpi, ceptum,	<i>to enjoin upon, direct.</i>
Quin, conj.	<i>that not, but, that.</i>

Quō,¹ *conj.*Ratiō, ōnis, *f.*Spiritus, ūs, *m.*Ventus, i, *m.*Vultus, ūs, *m.**that; quō minus, that not, so that method, way.* [not.²*breath; pl., haughtiness, airs.**wind.**countenance, face.*328. *Translate into English.*

1. Orgetorix sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscepit;³ in eō itinere persuāsit Casticō Sēquanō, cūjus pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod⁴ pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduō ut idem cōnārētur persuāsit. 2. Litavicus Aeduōs hortātur ut similī ratiōne, atque ipse fēcerit,⁵ suās injūriās persequantur. 3. Caesar dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorigem continēret. 4. Locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustis mare continēbātur, ut ex locis superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī pōset. 5. Erat lēgātō praeceptum ab imperātore, ut sub montem cōsideret milia passuum ab urbe octo. 6. Lēgātus equō admissō⁶ ad Caesarem accurrisse dicitur.

7. Tantus timor eōs occupāvit, ut vultum fingere nōn pōsent. 8. Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus⁷ nōn vidērētur. 9. Principēs nōn dubitābant quā Ariovistus dē obsidibus supplicium sūmeret.⁸

¹ Originally the Ablative of the pronoun, *by which*; *quō minus*, *by which the less*.

² See Suggestion XXVI., 6.

³ Sibi suscepit, *took upon himself, undertook*.

⁴ Quod is here a pronoun.

⁵ Atque . . . fēcerit, *as he himself has done*; after words of likeness and unlikeness, *atque* is an adverb with the force of *as*. Observe the idiomatic force of *fēcerit* here, *has done*, i. e. *has acted*.

⁶ Equō admissō, *his horse having been let go*; *render, with his horse at full speed*.

⁷ The Gerundive of *ferō*, *to be endured*; *render, endurable*.

⁸ In Latin, punishment is regarded as satisfaction exacted by one party, and paid by the other; hence *supplicium sūmere* is *to inflict (to take) punishment, supplicium dare, to suffer (to give) punishment*.

10. Octōdecim nāvēs ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in portum pervenīre pōssent. 11. Tānus timor occupāvit eōs quī nōn māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbant, ut lacrimās tenēre nōn pōssent. 12. Caesar Rhēnum¹ trānsducere exercitū¹ cōstituit, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret. 13. Ubi lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt; ōrant ut sibi parcat.

329. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Two German tribes sent ambassadors to Caesar, to beg that he would not regard them as enemies. 2. No one is so brave, as not to be disturbed by dangers that are² both new and great. 3. The Germans crossed the Rhine, to lay waste the territory of the Gauls. 4. The Bituriges asked aid, that they might more easily withstand the forces of the enemy. 5. Caesar sent messengers to the Aedui, to inform them that he was willing to spare them.

6. The Gauls burned a town which they judged they could not hold, that it might not be of use to the Romans.³ 7. The lieutenant was seized with such fear, that he hastened to the general, to ask⁴ him to withdraw the soldiers into camp. 8. Orgetorix did not doubt, that he should persuade Casticus to seize regal power in his state. 9. We were detained by our friends, so that we could not return home. 10. Let us urge our friends not to avenge their wrongs.

LESSON CX.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. — CONCESSIVE CLAUSES. —
REVIEW OF RULES XLIV. AND XLVI. — RULE XLV.

330. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XLIV. See 250, 507. 2. Rule XLVI. See 254, 515.

¹ See 275, sentence 19.

² Omit *that are* in rendering.

³ *Of use to the Romans*, see 281, 390.

⁴ As it would not be desirable to have three successive clauses with *ut*, to ask may here be rendered by the Supine of *rogō*.

RULE XLV. — Conditional Clauses with *dum, modo, ac si, ut si, etc.*

513. Conditional clauses take the Subjunctive —

I. With *dum, modo, dummodo*,¹ 'if only,' 'provided that'; *dum nē, modo nē, dummodo nē*, 'if only not,' 'provided that not':

Manent ingenia, modo permaneat industria, *mental powers remain, if only industry remains. Cic. Dum res maneat, verba fingant, let them make words, if only the facts remain. Cic. Dummodo repellat periculum, provided he may avert danger. Cic.*

II. With *ac si, ut si, quam si, quasi, tanquam si, velut, velut si*, 'as if,' 'than if,' involving an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Perinde habebō, ac si scripsissēs, *I shall regard it just as if (i.e. as I should if) you had written. Cic. Jacent, tanquam omnino sine animo sint, they lie as if (i.e. as they would lie if) they were entirely without mind. Cic. Quam si vixerit tecum, as if he had lived with you. Cic. Crudelitatem, velut si adesset, horrebant, they shuddered at his cruelty as (they would) if he were present. Caes.*

331. Vocabulary.

Alcēs, is, f.	elk.
Contrahō, ere, traxi, tractum,	to contract.
Decrētum, ī, n.	decree, decision.
Ērigō, ere, rēxi, rēctum,	to erect, raise up; sē ērigere, to lift one's self; to rise.
Gravis, e,	heavy, severe.
Interdicō, ere, dixi, dictum,	to forbid, prohibit, exclude.
Latrō, ōnis, m.	robber, brigand.
Peritus, a, um,	skilful, skilled.
Praemium, ii, n.	reward.
Privātus, i, m.	private citizen.
Sacrificium, ii, n.	sacrifice.
Stō, āre, steti, stātum,	to stand.
Sulla, ae, m.	Sulla, a celebrated Roman general and statesman.
Tametsi, conj.	although.

¹ When not used in conditions, these conjunctions often admit the Indicative: *Dum lēgēs vigēbant, while the laws were in force. Cic.*

332. *Translate into English.*

1. In Galliā si caedēs est facta, Druidēs dēcernunt; si dē finibus contrōversia est, iidem dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; si quī, aut privātus aut populus, eōrum dēcrētō¹ nōn stetit, sacrificiis² interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. 2. Si pācem Rōmānī nōbiscum faciant, obsidēs iis dabimus. 3. Si Lingonēs Helvētiōs jūvissent, Caesar eōs eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habuisset. 4. Si ab armīs discēdere vultis, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittite. 5. Tametsi populus Rōmānus ab Helvētiis prō veteribus injūriis poenās repetiit, tamen ea rēs nōn minus ex ūsū³ terrae Galliae quam populi Rōmāni accidit.

6. Pūblius Cōnsīdīus rēi militāris peritissimus fuisse dicitur. 7. Cicerō lēgātus castra, etsi erat exigua per sē, tamen quam māximē contraxit. 8. Hi militēs, si per tē, Cotta, liceat,⁴ cum prōximis hibernis conjuncti commūnem cum reliquis bellī cāsum sustineant. 9. Hīc lēgātus, quī in exercitū Lūcīi Sullae et postea in Mārcei Crassī fuit, cum explorātōribus praemittētur. 10. Alcēs, si conciderunt, ērigere sēsē nōn possunt.⁵ 11. Si quid in nōbis animi est, hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus. 12. Si Labiēnus ex hibernis fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn potuisset.

333. *Translate into Latin.*

1. If you cannot withstand the attack of the enemy, withdraw the soldiers into the camp. 2. If hostages should be given us, we should make peace. 3. If they wish to make

¹ The Locative Ablative; see 185, 425; to stand in, i.e. to abide by.

² See 54, 384; a Dative rendered from is thus used with a few verbs of repelling, taking away, etc.

³ Out of, i.e. in accordance with, the interest. Render to the advantage of.

⁴ Per tē liceat denotes simply the absence of opposition or refusal.

⁵ One of the fabulous stories current in Caesar's time in respect to the wild beasts of the German forests.

peace, they will give hostages. 4. If they are giving hostages, they are willing to make peace. 5. Had they been willing to make peace they would have given hostages. 6. If these things shall be reported¹ to Ariovistus, he will inflict punishment upon the hostages.

7. If war should be waged against us, why should we be terrified? 8. If we seek² we shall find. 9. If we had sought, we should already have found. 10. If we possessed³ any spirit, we should be marching into the territory of the enemy. 11. If you had aided our enemies, we should not regard⁴ you as friends. 12. If you were our friends, you would not have waged⁴ war against us. 13. Were you to aid our enemies, we should know whether you are friends or foes.

LESSON CXI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES. — RULES XLVII. AND XLVIII. —
EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

334. Lesson from the Grammar.

RULE XLVII. — Moods with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quandō*.

516. Causal clauses with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quandō*, generally take —

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively*, on *one's own authority* :

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, celebratote illos dies, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days*. Cic. *Gaudē quod spectant tē*, *rejoice that (because) they behold you*. Hor.

¹ Use the Future Perfect.

² Latin idiom, *if we shall seek*.

³ See 332, sentence 11.

⁴ Remember that the Imperfect must be used for *present* time, the Pluperfect for *past* time, and that the Condition and the Conclusion are of course not necessarily in the same tense.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully*, or *on another's authority* :

Sôcratēs accūsātus est, quod corrumpere*t* iuventūtem, *Socrates was accused, because (on the alleged ground that) he corrupted the youth.* Quint. Aristidēs nōne expulsus est patriā, quod iustus esset, *was not Aristides banished because (on the alleged ground that) he was just ?* Cic.

RULE XLVIII.—Causal Clauses with cum and quī.

517. Causal clauses with *cum* and *quī* generally take the Subjunctive, in writers of the best period :

Necesse est, cum sint dii, animantēs esse, *since there are gods, it is necessary that there should be living beings.* Cic. Cum vita metūs plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic. Quae cum ita sint, perge, *since these things are so, proceed.* Cic. Ō vis vērītātis, quae (cum ea) sē dēfendat, *O the force of truth, since it defends itself.* Cic.

2. Clauses with either *cum* or *quī* admit the Indicative in all writers, when the statement is viewed as a *fact* :

Habeō senectūtī grātiā, quae mihi sermōnis aviditātem auxit, *I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.* Cic. Grātulor tibi, cum tantum valēs, *I congratulate you that (in view of the fact that) you have so great influence.* Cic.

335. Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.

Dumnorix Aeduus, Divitiaci frāter, est homō summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum ; complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Aeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō redēpta habet, proptereā quod, illō licente, contrā licēri audet nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxit, et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit. Māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alit et circum sē habet ; nōn solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter potest. Hūjus potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī nōbilissimō nūptum collocāvit ; ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habet. Favet Helvētiīs propter eam adfinitātem ; ōdit Caesarem et Rōmānōs,

quod eōrum adventū potentia sua dēminūta et Divitiacus frāter in antīquum locum honōris est restitūtus.

Caesar Dumnorigem ad sē vocat; quae ipse intellegat, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet.

336. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Among the Aedui, the man in greatest favor with the populace was Dumnorix. The state ¹ revenues were bought up by him at a price smaller than that which others were willing to give, because when he bid,² the rest did not dare to bid against him. The horsemen, supported at his expense and always kept around him, were distinguished (*availed*) by their number and their audacity. He was summoned to Caesar, who had ascertained that this Aeduan chieftain desired a revolution in his own state, detested the Romans, and favored the Helvetii.

2. Divitiacus, the brother of Dumnorix, was friendly to the Romans. He had been chief magistrate of the Aedui, and by the arrival of Caesar his ancient place of honor had been restored to him. This arrival of Caesar had diminished the power of Dumnorix. 3. Dumnorix was warned by Caesar to avoid suspicion.

LESSON CXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES. — RULES XLIX. AND L.

337. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

RULE XLIX. — Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, etc.

518. In temporal clauses with *postquam*, *posteaquam*,³ *ubi*, *ut*, *simul*, *simul atque*, etc., ‘after,’ ‘when,’ ‘as soon as,’ the Indicative is used :

¹ *The state revenues* = *the revenues of the state.*

² *Use the Ablative Absolute.*

³ *Or post quam and postea quam.*

Postquam vidit, etc., castra posuit, *he pitched his camp, after he saw*, etc. Caes. Ubi certiōrēs facti sunt, *when they were informed*. Caes. Id ut audivit, *as he heard this*. Nep. Postquam vident, *after they saw*. Sall. Postquam nox aderat, *when night was at hand*. Sall.

RULE L.—Temporal Clauses with *dum*, etc.

519. I. Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of WHILE, AS LONG AS, take the *Indicative* :

Haec fēci, *dum* licuit, *I did this while it was allowed*. Cic. Quoad vixit, *as long as he lived*. Nep. Dum lēgēs vigēbant, *as long as the laws were in force*. Cic. Dōnec eris fēlix, *as long as you shall be prosperous*. Ov.

II. Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of UNTIL, take —

1. The *Indicative*, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT :

Dēliberā hōc, *dum* ego redeō, *consider this until I return*. Ter. Dōnec rediit, *until he returned*. Liv. Quoad renūtiātum est, *until it was (actually) announced*. Nep.

2. The *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed as something DESIRED, PROPOSED, or CONCEIVED :

Differant, *dum* dēfervēscat ira, *let them defer it till their anger cools* (i. e. that it may cool). Cic. Exspēctās *dum* dicat, *you are waiting till he speaks* (i. e. that he may speak). Cic.

338. Vocabulary.

Adjungō, ere, junxī, junctum,	<i>to join, add, unite.</i>
Agō, ere, ēgī, āctum,	<i>to drive, lead ; to do, act, perform ; to treat, plead ; grātiās agere, to return thanks, thank.</i>
Ancora, ae, f.	<i>anchor.</i>
Cōnstō, āre, stitī, stātum,	<i>to stand firm ; to be established, evident, plain, manifest.</i>
Cum, conj.	<i>when, while ; since ; although.</i>
Dum, conj.	<i>while ; until.</i>
Equus, ī, m.	<i>horse.</i>
Occidō, ere, cidī, cisum,	<i>to kill, slay.</i>

Pilum, i, n.	spear, javelin.
Posteāquam, ¹ conj.	after.
Postquam, ¹ conj.	after.
Praeceptis, ipitis,	precipitate, headlong.
Prōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	to accomplish, effect.
Prope, adv., comp. propius,	
sup. prōximē,	near.
Prōvideō, ēre, vidī, vīsum,	to look out for, provide.
Queror, ī, questus sum,	to complain.
Quoad, conj.	until.
Simul, simul atque, conj.	as soon as.
Tergum, i, n.	back; terga vertere, to turn the back; to retreat, flee.
Trānsiciō, ² ere, jēcī, jectum,	to pierce, transfix.
Ubi, conj.	where; when.
Vertō, ere, tī, sum,	to turn.

339. Translate into English.

1. Quod omnibus cōstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre,³ frūmentum in Britannīā prōvīsum nōn erat. 2. Caesar questus est, quod Britannī bellum sine causā intulissent. 3. Decima legiō Caesarī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum jūdicium fēcisset. 4. Sēquanī, cum per sē minus valērent, Germānōs sibī adjunxērunt. 5. Posteāquam equitātus noster in cōspēctum vēnit, hostēs terga vertērunt, māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus. 6. Dum longius ab mūnitiōne aberant Galli, plūs multitudine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius succēssērunt, trānsjectī pīlis interībant.

7. Rōmānī finem sequendī nōn fēcērunt, quoad praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt. 8. Caesar, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris expēctāvit. 9. Cingetorix, simul atque dē Caesaris adventū cōgnitum est,⁴ ad eum vēnit.

¹ Also written *postea quam*, *post quam*.

² Pronounced as if spelled *trānsficiō*.

³ *Hiemārī* used impersonally is the subject of *oportēre*; literally, *that it behooved that the winter be passed*; render, *that they must winter*, or *that the winter must be passed*. *Oportēre* is the subject of *cōstābat*.

⁴ *Dē . . . cōgnitum est*, literally, *it was ascertained concerning*; render, *Caesar's approach was ascertained*.

10. Dum haec geruntur,¹ nostris omnibus occupatis, hostes discēsserunt. 11. Caesar, ubi ex captivis cōgnovit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōsēdissent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostes contendit. 12. Caesar, postquam in Trēveros vēnit, Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit.

340. Translate into Latin.

1. Of all the inhabitants of Gaul,² the Belgae are the fiercest, because they are farthest distant from the civilization of the Roman province. 2. Since the Helvetii surpassed all the other Gauls in valor, they tried to seize the sovereignty of all Gaul. 3. When³ the Helvetii were ready to set out,⁴ they burned all their towns. They intended to march through the Roman province, because they had no other route.⁵ They attempted to march through the province, and told the Romans they had no other route.

4. Caesar did not answer the ambassador, until his soldiers had assembled. 5. After Caesar found that the Helvetii were following his line of march,⁶ he withdrew his forces to the nearest hill. 6. As soon as the enemy approached, Caesar removed all the horses out of sight. 7. We shall remain in this place, until a supply of grain has been provided. 8. The general censured the Aedui, because he had not been aided by them.⁷ 9. After Caesar ascertains in what place the enemy have encamped, he will lead out his forces and hasten towards that place.

¹ With *dum, while*, the Present is generally used, whether the action is present, past, or future. When used, as here, of a past action, it is best rendered by a past tense in English.

² *Inhabitant of Gaul*, is qui Galliam incolit.

³ Use ubi.

⁴ *To set out*; either the infinitive, or *ad* with the gerund, or with the noun meaning *departure* may be used.

⁵ Regard this as the reason of the Helvetii.

⁶ Render *line of march* by a single word.

⁷ *Because . . . them*. What difference in meaning in this instance between *quod* with the indicative and *quod* with the subjunctive?

LESSON CXIII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES. — RULES LI. AND LII.

341. *Lesson from the Grammar.***RULE LI. — Temporal Clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam*.**

520. In temporal clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam*¹—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put —

1. In the *Indicative*, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT :

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *they are present before it is light.* Cic. *Antequam* in Sicillam vēnī, *before I came into Sicily.* Cic. Nec prius respēxī quam vēnimus, *nor did I look back until we arrived.* Verg.

2. In the *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed as SOMETHING DESIRED, PROPOSED, OR CONCEIVED :

Antequam dē rē publicā dicam, expōnam cōsillium, *I will set forth my plan before I (can) speak of the republic* (i.e. preparatory to speaking of the republic).² Cic. Nōn prius ducēs dimittunt, quam¹ sit concēssum, *they did not dismiss the leaders till it was granted.* Caes. *Priusquam* incipiās, cōsultō opus est, *before you begin there is need of deliberation* (i.e. as preparatory to beginning). Sall. *Tempestās minātur, antequam surgat, the tempest threatens, before it rises.* Sen.

II. The Imperfect and the Pluperfect are put in the *Subjunctive* :

Nōn prius ēgrēssus est quam rēx eum in fidem reciperet, *he did not withdraw until the king took him under his protection.* Nep. *Prius-*

¹ Often written *ante quam* and *prius quam*, sometimes with intervening words between *ante* or *prius* and *quam*.

² Here the temporal clause involves *purpose* as well as *time*. *Antequam dicam* is nearly equivalent to *ut postea dicam* : 'I will set forth my views, that I may afterward speak of the republic.'

quam peteret cōsulātum, insānit, *he was insane before he sought the consulship.* Liv. Antequam urbem caperent, *before they took the city.* Liv.

RULE LII. — Temporal Clauses with *cum*.

521. In temporal clauses with *cum* —

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put in the *Indicative* :

Cum verba faciunt, mājorēs suōs extollunt, when they speak, they extol their ancestors. Sall. *Cum quiescunt, probant, while they are silent they approve.* Cic. *Librōs, cum est ōtium, legere solēō, when there is leisure, I am wont to read books.* Cic.

II. The Imperfect and the Pluperfect are put —

1. In the *Indicative*, when the temporal clause **ASSERTS AN HISTORICAL FACT** :

Pāruit cum necesse erat, he obeyed when it was necessary. Cic. *Nōndum profectus erat, cum haec gerēbantur, he had not yet started when these things took place.* Liv. *Cum quaequam cohors impetum fēcerat, hostēs refugiēbant, whenever any cohort made (had made) an attack, the enemy retreated.* Caes.

2. In the *Subjunctive*, when the temporal clause **simply DEFINES THE TIME** of the principal action :

Cum epistolam complicārem, tabellārīi vēnērunt, while I was folding the letter (i.e. during the act), the postmen came. Cic. *Cum ex Aegyptō reverterētur, dēcēssit, he died while he was returning (during his return) from Egypt.* Nep. *Cū tridui viam perfēcisset, nūntiātum est, etc., when he had accomplished a journey of three days, it was announced, etc.* Caes. *Caesari cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci, when this was (had been) announced to Caesar, he hastened to set out from the city.* Caes.

342. Vocabulary.

Accūsātiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	accusation.
Accūsātor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	accuser.
Antequam, <i>conj.</i>	before.
Cohors, ortis, <i>f.</i>	cohort, the tenth part of a legion.
Colōnia, ae, <i>f.</i>	colony. [suddenly, unexpectedly.]
Imprōvisus, a, um,	unforeseen, unexpected ; dē imprōvisō, ¹

¹ *Imprōvisō* is the neuter of the adjective used substantively.

Multum, <i>adv., comp.</i>	
plūs, <i>sup.</i> plūrimē,	<i>much.</i>
Priusquam, <i>conj.</i>	<i>before.</i>
Profugiō, ere, fūgi,	<i>to flee away, flee, escape.</i>
Refugiō, ere, fūgi,	<i>to flee back, flee.</i>

343. *Translate into English.*

1. Cum summus mōns ā Titō Labiēnō tenērētur, Pūblius Cōnsīdius, quī rēi militāris perītissimus habēbātur, ad Caesarem accurrit. 2. Cum cohors impetum fēcerat, hostēs refugiēbant. 3. Oppidum Britannī vocant, cum silvās impeditās vallō atque fōssā mūniērunt. 4. Fuit¹ tempus, cum Gallī prō patriā fortiter pūgnābant. 5. Fuit antea tempus, cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent.²

6. Caesar hunc montem ā Titō Labiēnō lēgātō occupārī voluit. 7. Explōrātōrēs oppidum ab hostibus tenērī dicunt; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs cōgnōvisse. 8. Multum, cum in omnibus rēbus, tum³ in rē militārī, potest fortūna. 9. Multīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. 10. Antequam dē accūsātiōne ipsā dicō, dē accūsātōribus pauca dicam. 11. Caesar dē imprōvisō in finēs Nerviorum contendit, et priusquam illi profugere pōssent,⁴ māgnō hominum numerō captō atque vastātīs agrīs, in dēditiōnem venīre cōēgit.

344. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar ordered Divitiacus to be summoned, before Dumnorix should attempt anything. 2. When the top of the

¹ When *est, erat*, etc. stand at the beginning of a sentence, they often correspond to the English *there is, there was*, etc.

² Observe the force of the moods with *cum* in this sentence and the preceding.

³ Cum . . . tum, *while . . . at the same time, not only . . . but also, not only . . . but especially.*

⁴ Observe the force of the moods with *antequam* and *priusquam* in this sentence and the preceding.

mountain was held¹ by Labienus, Caesar was not far from the camp of the enemy. 3. When the ambassadors had come, they said that they were ready to give hostages. 4. When our army has conquered² the enemy, it will return home. 5. When you ask us for aid, we always assist you.

6. When the enemy have sent ambassadors to seek peace, the general regards them as friends. 7. Ariovistus had been called friend by the Roman senate, before Caesar came into Gaul. 8. The Aedui had held the sovereignty of all Gaul, even before they had sought the friendship of the Romans. 9. The king of the Germans said that he had not waged war against the Gauls before they waged war against him. 10. When you are³ ready to return home, send me a letter.

LESSON CXIV.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. — REVIEW OF RULES LIII.
AND LIV.

345. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule LIII. See 262, 523. 2. Rule LIV. See 262, 524.

346. *Vocabulary.*

Civitas, atis, f.	citizenship; state.
Detrimentum, i, n.	loss, disadvantage.
Flaccus, i, m.	Flaccus, a Roman name.
Imperatum, i, n.	order, bidding; imperata facere, to do one's bidding, execute one's
Nisi, conj.	unless. [orders.

¹ When, as in this sentence, the imperfect or the pluperfect must be used with *cum*, decide as follows whether to use the indicative or the subjunctive: if the meaning is, *the top of the mountain was held*, etc., and *at this time Caesar*, etc., use the indicative; but if the meaning is, *Caesar was not far*, etc., *at the time when*, etc., use the subjunctive.

² Use the Future Perfect.

³ Use the Future.

Nunc, <i>adv.</i>	now, at this time.
Pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsūm,	to pay.
Procillus, i, m.	Procillus, a prominent Gaul.
Prōgredior, i, grēssus sum,	to advance.
Signum, i, n.	standard; signa ferre, to carry the standards; to advance.
Stipendium, li, n.	tax, tribute.

347. Translate into English.

1. Amicitia populi Rōmānī vōbīs ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō est. 2. Omnēs dicunt amicitiam populi Rōmānī vōbīs ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse. 3. Ariovistus dixit amicitiam populi Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō, esse oportēre. 4. Militēs propter timōrem signa nōn ferent. 5. Nōnnūllī Caesarī renūntiābant militēs propter timōrem signa nōn lātūrōs esse. 6. Nōbīs est in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habēmus nūllum; rogāmus ut id nōbīs facere liceat. 7. Ubī dē Caesaris adventū Helvētiī certiorēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt quī dicerent, sibi esse¹ in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent¹ nūllum; rogāre¹ ut id sibi facere liceret.

8. Cōnsīdius equō admissō ad Caesarem accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit,² ab hostibus tenērī;² id sē ā Gallicīs armīs cōgnōvisse.³ Caesar suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit. 9. Caesar dixit sibi nūllam cum Germānīs amicitiam esse pōsse, sī in Galliā remanērent.³ 10. Caesar respondet, cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs sibi dentur, sēsē cum Helvētiīs pācem esse factūrum. 11. Ariovistus respondit sē Aeduīs bellum

¹ To what in the previous sentence do *esse*, *habērent*, and *rogāre* correspond? What is the subject of *rogāre*? Account for the changes in mood and tense.

² What would *voluerit*, *tenērī*, and *cōgnōvisse* be in Direct Discourse?

³ In this sentence and in those following, change the Indirect Discourse to direct.

nōn illātūrum esse, sī stipendium penderent. 12. Rēmī ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dicerent sē contrā populum Rōmānum nōn conjūrāsse, parātōsque esse¹ imperāta facere.

348. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I did not make war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls made war upon me; all their forces were conquered by me in a single battle. I came into Gaul before you came. Why do you come into my territory? Unless you withdraw your army from my lands, I shall regard you not as a friend but as an enemy. Therefore return home and lead off your soldiers.²

2. Caesar said that Gaul ought to be free.³ 3. It was announced to Caesar that the horsemen of Ariovistus were riding towards our soldiers. 4. Caesar said that he should send as an ambassador Procillus, whose father had been presented with citizenship by Flaccus. 5. Caesar says that when he understood that Ariovistus was remaining in camp, he drew up a triple line of battle,⁴ and advanced toward the Germans.

LESSON CXV.

INDIRECT CLAUSES. — INFINITIVE. — SUPINE. — AD-
VERBS. — REVIEW OF RULES LV. TO LXI.

349. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule LV. See **127**, 529. 4. Rule LVIII. See **171**, 536.
2. Rule LVI. See **132**, 533. 5. Rule LIX. See **166**, 546.
3. Rule LVII. See **171**, 534. 6. Rule LX. See **246**, 547.
7. Rule LXI. See **70**, 551.

¹ For the construction of *facere*, see 340, sentence 3.

² After rendering this into Latin, change your Latin into indirect Discourse, depending upon *dicō*, 'I say;' *dicīt*, 'he says;' *dixi*, 'I said;' *dixit*, 'he said.'

³ In this sentence and those following, after rendering into Latin, give the direct Discourse corresponding to your indirect Discourse.

⁴ Use the Ablative Absolute and omit the conjunction *and*.

350. *Vocabulary.*

Conclāmō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to shout, call out.</i>
Fertilitās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>fertility.</i> [be annoyed.
Molestē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>with trouble; molestē ferre, to be vexed,</i>
Negōtium, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>business, occupation; negōtium dare,</i> <i>to entrust a task, entrust an en-</i>
Ostendō, ere, i, tēsum or	<i>[terprise.</i>
tentum,	<i>to show, make known, declare.</i>
Praesēns, entis,	<i>present.</i>
Sānus, a, um,	<i>sound, sane.</i>
Ut, <i>adv.</i>	<i>as.</i>
Versor, āri, ātus sum,	<i>to be busied, be occupied, be engaged.</i>

351. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar ad exercitum venit; dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque Gallīs quī finitimī Belgīs sunt, ut ea quae apud eōs gerantur¹ cōgnōscant,² sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. 2. Caesar nihil Dumnorigem, sē absente, prō sālō³ factūrum arbitrātus est, quī praesentis⁴ imperium neglēxisset. 3. Principēs Aeduōrum ad Caesarem veniunt ōrātum, ut civitātī subveniat; summō esse in periculō rem, quod duo magistrātum gerant, et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creatum esse dicat; civitātem esse omnem in armīs, dīvisum senātum, dīvisum populum. Caesar, nē tanta civitās, quam ipse semper aluisset, ad arma dēscenderet,⁵ in Aeduōs proficisci statuit.

4. Caesar sī Helvētiī vim facere⁶ cōnentur, sē prohibitūrum esse ostendit. 5. Gallī conclāmāvērunt habēre sēsē, quae⁷ dē rē commūnī dicere vellent. 6. Hostēs ad castra nostra oppugnātum vērunt. 7. Caesar, quoad hiberna

¹ For Mood, see 262, 524.

² Subjunctive of *Purpose*, depending upon *dat negōtium*.

³ *Prō sālō*, literally, *for sane*; render, *as a sane man*.

⁴ *Praesentis*, i.e. *Caesaris*.

⁵ *Dēscenderet*, 'descend'; render, *proceed or resort to*.

⁶ *Vim facere*, 'to use violence.'

⁷ *Quae* is here a relative pronoun; what is its antecedent?

mūnīta esse cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit. 8. Hostēs parātōs esse ad dīmicandum exīstimāvit. 9. Prīncipēs Britanniae optimum factū esse duxērunt commeātū Rōmānōs prohibēre. 10. Ex oppidō lēgātī ad Caesarem vērērunt ōrātum, ut sibi Ignōsceret. 11. Galli, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre in Galliā mōlestē ferēbant.

352. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar ordered the first line and the second to remain in position,¹ the third to fortify the camp. 2. Caesar, as he had previously determined, ordered two lines to drive back the enemy, the third to fortify the camp with a rampart and a moat. 3. Caesar inquired of the captives why Ariovistus remained in camp. 4. Caesar was informed by letter, that all the Belgae were conspiring against the Roman people and exchanging hostages.

5. It was said that the Belgae conspired, because they feared² that the Roman army was marching against them. 6. Caesar found that the Belgae had settled in Gaul on account of the fertility of the land, and that they had driven out the Gauls who had formerly dwelt there. 7. The enemy sent ambassadors to beg³ that the Romans would make peace with them. 8. To conquer the brave and free is never an easy thing to do.

LESSON CXVI.

EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

353. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*

Caesar ab explōrātōribus certior factus est hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo. Dē tertiā

¹ 'Position,' *locus*; see 185, 425, 2.

² What mood will you use, and why?

³ Use the Supine.

vigiliā Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus summum jugum montis ascendere jūssit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mīsit. Pūblius Cōnsīdius, quī rēi militāris perītissimus habēbātur, et in exercitū Lūciī Sullae et postea in Mārci Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemissus est.

Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Titō Labiēnō tenērētur, Cōnsīdius equō admissō ad Caesarem accurrit, et dixit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluisset, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armīs cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subduxit, aciem instrūxit. Labiēnus, monte occupātō, nostrōs expēctābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.

354. *Translate into Latin.*

Caesar sent scouts to ascertain how far the enemy were from the Roman camp. When it was ascertained that they were about eight miles distant, two legions, under the command of Labienus,¹ were ordered to ascend the mountain, and to hold it for the present. Sending the cavalry ahead,¹ Caesar set out a little before daylight, and led the foot-soldiers by the route by which he had found that the Helvetii themselves had gone. A lieutenant, whom Caesar had always regarded as very skilful in military affairs, was sent forward with scouts, to ascertain what the enemy were doing; but at daybreak, stricken with fear, he hastened to Caesar on the march, and said that the mountain, which Labienus at that very time was holding, had been seized by the enemy.

¹ Use the Ablative Absolute.

NARRATIVES FROM CAESAR.

THE EMIGRATION OF THE HELVETII, THEIR DEFEAT BY THE ROMANS, AND THEIR RETURN TO THEIR COUNTRY.¹

The Inhabitants of Gaul. The Valor of the Helvetii.

I. Gallia est dīvisā in partēs trēs, quārum ² ūnam ³ incolunt Belgae, aliam ⁴ Aquitānī,⁴ tertiam ⁵ Galli.⁴ Helvētīī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte ⁶ praecedunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis ⁶ cum Germānis contendunt.

Orgetorix and His Project of Emigration.

II. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is,⁷ Messāllā et Pisōne cōsulibus,⁸ civitātī ⁹ persuāsit ut dē finibus suis exirent.¹⁰ Helvētīī continentur ūnā ex parte ¹¹ flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Jūrā

¹ From Caesar's "Commentaries on the Gallic War," I., 1-29. For Suggestions on Exercises in Latin Composition, see page 300.

² Partitive Genitive. 31, 397. ³ Supply *partem* as object of *incolunt*.

⁴ Subject of *incolunt*. Observe that the term *Galli* is used in two senses. It properly denotes the inhabitants of all Gaul, but it is often used, as in this instance, to designate the inhabitants of the third division of the country, i.e. of Celtic Gaul. ⁵ 231, 424. ⁶ 78, 420.

⁷ *Is* would not be expressed unless it were emphatic, as in English, 'it was he who,' etc., i.e. it was Orgetorix who originated the project of emigration. ⁸ 240, 431. This was in the year 61 B. C.

⁹ 54, 384. *Civitātī* is here used as a collective noun: 'the citizens; ' observe that this is shown by the number of *exirent*.

¹⁰ 119, 497; 491.

¹¹ 'On one side.'

quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā¹ lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō quī prōvinciam ab Helvētiis dividit. His rēbus² fiēbat ut minus facile finitimis³ bellum inferre pōssent.⁴ Prō⁵ multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur.

The Helvetii Prepare to Leave their Country.

III. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte⁶ Orgetorigis⁷ permōti, cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent⁸ comparāre. Ubi jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt,⁹ oppida sua omnia, vicōs, reliquaque privāta aedificia incendērunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam¹⁰ quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūssērunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda¹¹ essent.¹²

The Route Selected and the Day Appointed.

IV. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus⁶ domō¹³ exīre pōssent; ūnum¹⁴ per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, alterum per prōvinciam, multō facilius, quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllis locis¹⁵ vadō⁶ trānsitur.¹⁶ Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est prōximum-

¹ Supply *ex parte*.

² 158, 413.

³ 54, 384.

⁴ 123, 500.

⁵ *Prō*, 'in proportion to.'

⁶ 78, 420.

⁷ The secret purpose of Orgetorix was to possess himself of sovereign power among the Helvetii, and then to use this valiant and warlike nation, with the aid of a few other tribes, whose chieftains he had won to his purposes, in bringing the whole of Gaul under his control. His treasonable plot was detected; but just before the time appointed for his trial by the Helvetian authorities, he suddenly died, as it was suspected, by his own hand. The Helvetians did not, however, give up their project of emigration.

⁸ *Quae* . . . *pertinērent*, 'which would be requisite for their departure.' 123, 503.

⁹ 337, 518.

¹⁰ See 279, sentence 17.

¹¹ 291, 544.

¹² 119, 497.

¹³ 277, 412.

¹⁴ *Ūnum*, in apposition with *itinera*. 31, 363.

¹⁵ 185, 425, 2.

¹⁶ *Vadō trānsitur*, 'is crossed by means of a ford,' i.e. 'is fordable.'

que Helvëtiôrum finibus¹ Genâva. Ex eô oppidô pōns ad Helvëtiôs pertinet.² Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs³ existimābant vel vī coāctūrōs,⁴ ut per suōs finēs eōs ire pate-rentur.⁵ Omnibus rēbus⁶ ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dixerunt quā diē⁷ ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs convenirent.⁸ Is diēs erat ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs,⁹ Pisōne, Gabiniō¹⁰ cōsulibus.

Caesar Hastens into Gaul, and Receives an Embassy from the Helvetii.

V. Caesarī cum nūntiātum esset¹¹ eōs per prōvinciam iter facere cōnārī,¹² mātūrāvit ab urbe¹³ proficisci, et ad Genāvam¹⁴ pervēnit. Ubī dē ējus adventū Helvëtiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt quī dicerent,¹⁵ sibi esse in animō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut ējus voluntāte id sibi facere licēret.¹⁶ Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat¹⁷ Lūcium

¹ 141, 391.

² *Ad . . . pertinet*, 'leads over to the Helvetii.'

³ 171, 534.

⁴ 119, 498.

⁵ Ablative Absolute:

⁶ 93, 429.

⁷ 123, 500.

⁸ *Ante . . . Aprīlēs*; this whole expression may be regarded as an indeclinable noun, in this instance a *predicate nominative* after *erat*; 59, 362. It means 'the fifth day before the Calends (*the first*) of April,' which according to the Roman reckoning was not the 27th but the 28th day of March. This was in the year 58 B. C.

⁹ 341, 521; 119, 491.

¹⁰ *Eōs . . . cōnārī*: subject of *nūntiātum esset*.

¹¹ *Ab urbe*, i.e. from Rome.

¹² *Ad Genāvam*, 'into the vicinity of Geneva'; 'to Geneva' would be simply *Genāvam*; 277, 380.

¹³ *Quī dicerent*, to say; 119, 497.

¹⁴ *Sibi . . . licēret*, Indirect Discourse. In Direct Discourse, thus: *Nōbis est in . . . facere, proptereā . . . habēmus nūllum; rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte id nōbis facere liceat*. Explain the changes of Mood, etc. 262, 523, 524. Observe that *esse* and *rogāre* are the leading verbs in the principal clauses, and that the subject of *esse* is the clause *iter . . . facere*.—*Rogāre*, 'that they asked,' the subject, if expressed, would be *sē*.—*Ut . . . licēret*; 119, 498. *Licēret* has *id facere* as its subject, and *sibi* as its indirect object; 54, 384.—*Ējus voluntāte*, 'with his (Caesar's) consent,' 158, 413.

¹⁵ *Memoriā tenēbat*: retained in (by means of) memory.

Cassium cōsulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub jugum missum,¹ concēdendum² nōn putābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere pōset, dum militēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent,³ lēgātis respondit, diem⁴ sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlēs⁵ reverterentur.⁶

Caesar takes Measures to prevent the March of the Helvetii.

VI. Intereā eā legiōne,⁷ quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque,⁷ quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, milia⁸ passuum decem novem mūrū fōssamque perduxit. Ubī ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negāvit sē pōsse iter ullī per prōvinciam dare,⁹ et, sī vim facere cōnārentur,¹⁰ prohibitūrum¹¹ ostendit. Helvētīī perrumpere cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum tēlis repulsā, hōc cōnātū¹² dēstitērunt.

The Helvetii decide to March by a different Route.

VII. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via,¹³ quā, Sēquanīs invītīs, propter angustias ire nōn poterant. His cum suā

¹ This defeat of the Roman army under Cassius occurred near the Lake of Geneva, 107 B. C. ² *Concēdendum*, i.e. the request of the Helvetii.

³ 337, 519.

⁴ *Diem*, render time.

⁵ *Ad Īdūs Aprīlēs*, on the Ides of April, i.e. on the 13th of April.

⁶ *Sī . . . reverterentur*: in Direct Discourse, *sī quid vultis . . . revertimini*, 262, 523, 524.

⁷ Ablative of Means with *perduxit*.

⁸ *Milia*, 98, 397. These defences extended along the southern side of the Rhone, from the Lake of Geneva to Mount Jura, and commanded all the fords of the Rhone by which the Helvetii could enter the Roman province.

⁹ *Negāvit . . . dare*: said that he could not grant; literally, denied that he was able to give.

¹⁰ 262, 524.

¹¹ *Prohibitūrum*, i.e. *sē prohibitūrum esse*.

¹² 158, 413.

¹³ *Ūna . . . via*: only the way through the Sequani, i.e. the narrow pass along the north bank of the Rhone, between the mountains and the river.

sponte¹ persuādēre nōn pōssent,² lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduū mīserunt, ut eō dēprecātōre³ ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.⁴ Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimū poterat,⁵ et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvītate Orgetorigis filiam in mātīmōnium duxerat.⁶ Itaque rem suscēpit⁷ et ā Sēquanīs impetrāvit, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire paterentur.

Caesar Marches Five Legions of Roman Soldiers into Gaul.

VIII. Caesarī renūtiātum est, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere.⁸ Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futurum.⁹ Ob eās causās ēi mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, Titum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam contendit duāsque ibī legiōnēs cōscripsit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēduxit, et in ūlteriōrem Galliam cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit.

Caesar Surprises and Routs One Canton of the Helvetii at the River Arar.

IX. Helvētiī jam per angustiās¹⁰ et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trānsduxerant, et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant.¹¹ Flūmen est Arar, quod¹² per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit. Id Helvētiī trānsībant.¹³ Ubī Caesar certior factus est, trēs jam cōpiārum partēs¹⁴ Helvētiōs id flūmen¹⁵ trānsduxisse, quartam vērō partem citrā flūmen¹⁵

¹ *Sua sponte, of themselves.*

² 334, 517.

³ *Eō dēprecātōre, by his intercession; literally, he being an intercessor.*

⁴ 119, 497.

⁵ *Plūrimū poterat: had very great influence.*

⁶ *In mātīmōnium duxerat: had married.*

⁷ *Rem suscēpit: he undertook the service.*

⁸ *Facere: subject of esse.*

⁹ *Supply esse.*

¹⁰ *The narrow pass between the Jura and the Rhone.*

¹¹ *'Had come,' i. e. during Caesar's absence.*

¹² *The antecedent is flūmen.*

¹³ *Observe the force of the tense: 'were crossing.'*

¹⁴ *See 275, sentence 19.*

¹⁵ *Citrā flūmen: on this side of the river, i. e. on the east side.*

Ararim reliquam esse, cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs aggrēssus māgnam eōrum partem concidit; reliquī fugae sēsē mandārunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, patrum nostrōrum memoriā,¹ Lūcium Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat, et ējus exercitum sub jugum mīserat. Ita quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea² princeps poenās persolvit.³

Caesar Crosses the Arar, and Receives a Second Embassy from the Helvetii.

X. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī pōsset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrāvit, atque ita exercitum trānsduxit. Helvētīi ējus adventū commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum misērunt, cūjus lēgatiōnis Divicō princeps fuit. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit:⁴ Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētīis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibī futūrōs⁵ Helvētiōs, ubī eōs Caesar esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī⁶ persevērāret,⁷ reminiscerētur et veteris incommodī⁸ populi Rōmāni et pristināe virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Caesar respondit: Sī⁹ obsidēs ab iis sibi darentur, utī ea,¹⁰ quae pollicerentur, factūrōs intellegeret, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum. Divicō

¹ Patrum . . . memoriā: within the memory of our fathers; 93, 429.

² Render as if it read, *ea pars civitātis Helvētiae quae . . . intulerat*.

³ Princeps persolvit: was the first to pay.

⁴ Ita ēgit: discoursed as follows. The words following, *Sī . . . Helvētiōrum*, are in Indirect Discourse. The Direct Discourse would be: *Sī . . . faciet, . . . ibunt . . . erunt Helvētīi, ubī eōs esse volueris; sīn . . . persevērābis, reminiscere*, etc. Explain the changes; 262, 523, 524.

⁵ Ibī futūrōs: would remain there. Supply *esse*.

⁶ Persequī; supply *eōs*.

⁷ The subject is Caesar.

⁸ Incommodī: 307, 406. This refers to the defeat of Cassius.

⁹ Sī . . . factūrūm is in Indirect Discourse. The Direct Discourse would be: *Sī . . . mihi dabuntur . . . polliceantur, . . . intellegam, (ego) . . . faciam*; 262, 523, 524.

¹⁰ Ea: object of *factūrōs (esse)*, the subject of which is (*eōs*), referring to the Helvetii.

respondit: Helvëtiôs â mājōribus suis Institūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuēssent;¹ ējus rēi populum Rōmānum esse testem.² Hōc respōnsō³ datō discēssit.

The Helvetii proceed on their March, followed by the Roman Army. A Cavalry Skirmish, in which the Helvetii are Successful.

XI. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movērunt.⁴ Idem fēcit Caesar, equitātumque omnem praemisit, quī vidērent,⁵ quās in partēs hostēs iter facerent.⁶ Quī cupidius⁷ novissimum agmen insecūtī, aliēnō locō⁸ cum equitātū Helvëtiōrum proelium commisērunt, et paucī dē nostrīs⁹ cecidērunt. Quō proeliō¹⁰ sublātī Helvëtiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus¹¹ tantam multitudinē equitum prōpulerant,¹² audācius subsistere, nōnnūquam ex novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs â proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat¹³ in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs,¹⁴ pābulatiōnibus, populatiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs¹⁵ circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum¹⁶ nōn amplius¹⁷ quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus¹⁸ passuum interesset.¹⁸

¹ *Cōsuēssent*, contracted from *cōsuēvissent*. In this verb the Perfect has the sense of a Present, and therefore the Pluperfect of an Imperfect.

² *Ējus . . . testem*: that the Roman people were witnesses of this, alluding to the hostages given by the survivors after the defeat and death of Cassius.

³ Ablative Absolute.

⁴ The subject is *Helvëtiī* to be supplied.

⁵ 119, 497.

⁶ 127, 529.

⁷ See 275, sentence 3.

⁸ 185, 425, 2.

⁹ *Paucī dē nostrīs*: a few of our men; see 125, sentence 8.

¹⁰ 78, 420.

¹¹ Is this the reason of Caesar, or of the Helvetii? See 334, 516.

¹² The object is the clause *hostem . . . prohibēre*. ¹³ 158, 413.

¹⁴ 98, 379.

¹⁵ *Primum*: supply *agmen, our van*.

¹⁶ *Amplius*: subject of *interesset*.

¹⁷ *Quīnīs milibus*; 88, 417. The Distributive implies that the statement is true for each of the fifteen days; 97, 172.

¹⁸ 123, 500.

Caesar Plans an Attack upon the Camp of the Helvetii.

XII. Caesar ab explorātōribus certior factus, hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse¹ milia² passuum ab ipsius castris octo, dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum, cum duābus legiōnibus summum jugum montis ascendere jūssit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit. Pūblius Cōnsīdius, quī rēi militāris³ peritissimus habēbātur, cum explorātōribus praemissus est.

Caesar's Plan Defeated by the Mistake of Considius.

XIII. Primā lūce,⁴ cum summus mōns ā Titō Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset,⁵ neque aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset,⁶ Cōnsīdius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dixit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluisset,⁶ ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armīs cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subduxit, aciem instrūxit. Labiēnus, ut erat ēī praeceptum⁷ ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae⁸ prope hostium castra visae essent,⁶ ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspēctābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō denique diē⁹ per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et montem ā suis tenērī, et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse, et Cōnsīdium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō visō sibi renūntiāsse.¹⁰ Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervallō,¹¹ hos-

¹ See 301, sentence 1. ² 98, 379. ³ 307, 399. ⁴ 93, 429.

⁵ *Abesset* and *cōgnitus esset*, as well as *tenērētur*, depend upon *cum*; 341, 521. ⁶ 127, 529, II.

⁷ The subject of *erat praeceptum* is the clause *nē . . . committeret*, which also expresses purpose; 119, 497.

⁸ *Ipsius cōpiae*: his own (Caesar's) forces.

⁹ *Multō diē*: late in the day, though only relatively to *primā lūce*.

¹⁰ *Quod . . . renūntiāsse*: had reported to him what he had not seen, as if seen, literally, for seen. The antecedent of *quod* is the omitted object of *renūntiāsse*.

¹¹ *Quō . . . intervallō* = *intervallō quō cōnsuērat*: at the usual distance. See above, XI., last line.

tēs secūtus est, et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra sua posuit.

To secure Supplies, Caesar turns aside from the Pursuit of the Helvetii. The Helvetii change their Route and follow the Roman Army.

XIV. Postridiē, quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum cōpiōssimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum octōdecim aberat, rēi frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit,¹ iter ab Helvētiis āvertit, ac Bibracte² ire contendit.³ Ea rēs per fugitivōs hostibus nūntiātum est. Helvētiī, seu⁴ quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, sive quod rē⁵ frūmentāriā interclūdī pōsse⁶ cōfiderent, itinere conversō, nostrōs⁷ ā novissimō agmine⁸ Insequi ac lacessere coepērunt.

Caesar Prepares for a General Engagement.

XV. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in prōximum collem subduxit, equitātumque, quī sustinēret⁹ hostium impetum, mīsīt. Ipse interim in colle mediō¹⁰ triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārū; sed in summō jugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī iussit. Helvētiī, cum omnibus suis carris secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōfertissimā aciē, rejectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem succēssērunt.

¹ Rēi . . . existimāvit: he thought that he ought to provide supplies. With prōspiciendum supply esse; 281, 301; 54, 384.

² 277, 380.

³ Āvertit ac contendit: no conjunction is expressed, connecting these verbs with existimāvit; we may supply and accordingly.

⁴ Seu . . . cōfiderent: either because they thought, etc., or because they trusted, etc.; 334, 516.

⁵ 158, 413.

⁶ Pōsse: supply eōs, referring to the Romans.

⁷ See 125, sentence 8.

⁸ Ā . . . agmine: on the rear.

⁹ 119, 497.

¹⁰ In . . . mediō: midway up the hill.

In a fierce Battle the Helvetii are totally Defeated and put to Flight.

XVI. Caesar cohortātus suos proelium commisit. Militēs, ē locō superiōre pīlis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā¹ disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs² impetum fēcērunt. Diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est.³ Nam hōc tōtō proeliō,⁴ cum⁵ ab hōrā septimā⁶ ad vesperum pūgnātum esset, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem⁷ etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod prō vallō carrōs objēcērant, et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs⁸ tēla cōiciēbant, et nōnnūlli inter carrōs. rotāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum,⁹ impedimentis¹⁰ castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ex eō proeliō circiter mīlia hominum centum et trīgintā superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem¹¹ noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt, cum, et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīdium¹² morātī, eōs sequī nōn potuissent.¹³ Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent,¹⁴ sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum.¹⁴ Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

¹ Ea refers to *phalangem*.

² Eōs refers to *hostium*.

³ Pūgnātum est: they fought, 281, 301.

⁴ 185, 421, 1.

⁵ 254, 515.

⁶ As the Romans divided the day from sunrise to sunset into twelve hours, the seventh hour would be about one o'clock.

⁷ Ad . . . noctem: far into the night.

⁸ In . . . venientēs: against our men who were advancing.

⁹ 341, 521.

¹⁰ 258, 421.

¹¹ 98, 379.

¹² 334, 517.

¹³ Qui sī iūvissent: if they should aid; 127, 529, II.

¹⁴ Sē . . . habitūrum: 'that he should regard them as in the same situation as the Helvetii.' Sē habitūrum (*esse*) depends upon the verb implied in litterās . . . mīsit. Supply, as the object of habitūrum, eōs, referring to Lingonēs. Helvētiōs is the object of habēret, to be supplied.

The Helvetii submit to Caesar's Terms, and return to their Country. One Canton unsuccessfully Attempts to take Refuge in Germany.

XVII. Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mīserunt. Caesar obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent,¹ poposcit. Dum ea² conquiruntur³ et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter⁴ hominum mīlia sex ējus pāgī, quī Verbigēnus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti,⁵ nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō adficerentur,⁶ sive spē salutis inductī, primā nocte⁷ ex castris Helvētiōrum ēgrēssi, ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt. Quod ubī Caesar rescit,⁸ quōrum⁹ per finēs ierant, hīs¹⁰ utī conquirerent et reducerent imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit;¹¹ reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī jūssit, et Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent;¹² ipsōs¹³ oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere jūssit. Id eā māximē ratiōne¹⁴ fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discēsserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trāsfirent, et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae essent.

¹ 123, 503.

² *Ea* : these, — literally, these things.

³ See 339, sentence 10.

⁴ *Circiter* : an adverb, modifying *sex*.

⁵ *Perterriti* agrees with *mīlia* by a construction according to sense.

⁶ *Nē . . . adficerentur* depends upon *timōre*. 'with fear lest,' etc.; 119, 497.

⁷ See 191, foot-note.

⁸ 337, 518.

⁹ *Quōrum* : the antecedent is *hīs*.

¹⁰ *Hīs* depends on *imperāvit*; 54, 384.

¹¹ *Reductōs . . . habuit* : when they were brought back, he treated them as enemies: literally, had them in the number of enemies. They were probably sold as slaves.

¹² *Ut . . . facerent* : to furnish a supply, etc.; 119, 498.

¹³ *Ipsōs* : them, emphatic, in distinction from *Allobrogibus*.

¹⁴ *Eā . . . ratiōne* : principally for this reason, explained by *quod nōluit*, etc.

The Numbers of the Helvetii before and after their Disastrous Enterprise.

XVIII. In castris Helvëtiôrum tabulae repertae sunt quibus in tabulis ratiô cōfecta erat, quī numerus¹ domô² exisset.³ Summa erat Helvëtiôrum milia ducenta et sexagintā tria. Eôrum, quī domum redierunt, cēnsū habitō, repertus est numerus milium centum et decem.

CAESAR'S FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN, 55 B. C.⁴

Caesar's Reasons for the Expedition.

I. Caesar in Britanniam proficiscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis⁵ hostibus nostris inde subministrata⁶ auxilia intellegēbat; et si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum⁷ dēficeret,⁸ tamen māgnō sibi ūsu⁹ fore¹⁰ arbitrābatur, si modo insulam adisset⁸ et genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque his ipsis¹¹ quicquam, praeter ōram maritimam atque eas regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercatōribus,¹² neque quanta esset¹³ insulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incoleant, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent, neque quī essent ad nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs, reperire poterat.

Preparations for the Expedition.

II. Ad haec cōgnōscenda⁷ Gāium Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemisit. Huic mandavit, utī explorātis omnibus

¹ *Ratiô, qui numerus*: an account showing what number.

² 212, 412, 1.

³ *Qui . . . exisset* is in apposition with *ratiô*; 127, 529, I.

⁴ From Caesar's "Commentaries on the Gallic War," IV., 20-36.

⁵ 93, 429. ⁶ Supply *esse*. ⁷ 291, 543. ⁸ 127, 529, II.

⁹ 281, 390. ¹⁰ 140, 204, 2. ¹¹ *His ipsis*, i.e. *mercatōribus*.

¹² *Vocātis . . . mercatōribus*, Ablative Absolute; although he summoned, etc. ¹³ *Quanta esset*: object of *reperire*; 127, 529, I.

rēbus¹ ad sē quam primum² reverterētur.³ Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs profectus est, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus et, quam⁴ superiōre aestāte effēcerat, clāssē jūssit convenire. Volusēnus, perspēctis regiōnibus¹ omnibus, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertit, quaeque ibi perspēxisset⁵ renūtiāvit.

Caesar crosses the Channel.

III. Caesar nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum⁶ tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā⁷ solvit, et hōrā diēi circiter quartā⁸ cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cūjus loci haec erat nātūra, utī ex locis superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī pōset.⁹ Hunc ad ēgrediendum⁶ nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, circiter mīlia¹⁰ passuum septem ab eō locō prōgrēssus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.¹¹

The Britons Oppose the Landing of the Romans.

IV. At barbari, praemissō equitatū¹ et essedariis, reliquis cōpiis subsecuti, nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum speciēs erat barbaris inūsitatior, paulum removēri ab onerariis nāvibus, et rēmis incitārī, et ad latus apertum¹² hostium cōstitui, atque inde fundis,¹³ sagittis, tormentis, hostēs prōpelli ac submovēri

¹ Ablative Absolute.

² *Quam primum*: as soon as possible.

³ 119, 497.

⁴ *Quam*: the antecedent is *clāssē*.

⁵ 127, 529, I.

⁶ 291, 542.

⁷ 93, 429.

⁸ About ten o'clock in the morning, probably on the 26th of August. See page 291, foot-note 4.

⁹ 123, 500.

¹⁰ 98, 379.

¹¹ *Apertō . . . cōstituit*: he anchored off an open and level shore; probably on the coast of Deal; 185, 425, 1.

¹² The exposed flank was the right flank, as the shield was carried on the left arm.

¹³ 78, 420.

jūssit: quae res māgnō ūsuī nostrīs¹ fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā² et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsītātō genere tormentōrum permōtī, barbarī cōstitērunt ac paulum pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs militibus³ cunctantibus, māximē propter altitudinem maris, quī⁴ decimae legiōnis aquilam⁵ ferēbat: “Dēsilitē,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: ego certē meum rēi publicae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō.” Hōc cum māgnā vōce dixisset,⁷ sē ex nāvi prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī ūniversī ex nāvi dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex prōximīs nāvibus cum cōspēxissent,⁷ subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

The Romans Effect a Landing, and put the Britons to Flight.

V. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācritēr. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere poterant,⁸ māgnō opere perturbābantur. Hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs,⁸ ubī aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvi ēgredientēs cōspēxerant,⁹ incitātīs equīs,⁸ adoriēbantur; plūrēs¹⁰ paucōs circumstēbant; aliī in ūniversōs¹¹ tēla cōiciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset⁷ Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium militibus complērī jūssit, et quōs labōrantēs cōspēxerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī simul⁹ in āridō cōstitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.

The Britons Sue for Peace.

VI. Hostēs, proeliō¹² superātī, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt. Caesar obsidēs imperāvit, quōrum illī

¹ 281, 390.

² 153, 413.

³ Ablative Absolute.

⁴ Qui, he who.

⁵ The eagle was the standard of the legion.

⁶ The loss of the eagle was regarded as a great disgrace.

⁷ 341, 521.

⁸ Caesar's reason; 334, 516, I.

⁹ 337, 518.

¹⁰ Plūrēs: several, i.e. of the enemy.

¹¹ In ūniversōs: against our assembled forces, opposed to aliquōs singulārēs.

¹² 185, 425, 1.

partem statim dedērunt, partem paucis diēbus¹ sēsē datūrōs dixērunt.

The Roman Fleet seriously Damaged by a high Tide and a Storm.

VII. Hīs rēbus pāce² cōfirmātā, post diem quartum, quam³ est in Britanniam ventum,⁴ accidit, ut esset lūna plēna,⁵ quī diēs⁶ maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit; nostrisque id⁷ erat incōgnitum. Ita tūc tempore¹ et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in aridum subduxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās adflētābat. Complūribus nāvibus² frāctīs, magna tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī pōssent,⁸ et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre,⁹ frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

The British Chieftains plot a Renewal of Hostilities.

VIII. Quibus rēbus² cōgnitis, prīncipēs¹⁰ Britanniae, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent,¹¹ et paucitatem militum ex castrōrum exiguitate cōgnōscerent, optimum factū¹² esse duxērunt, rebellione² factā, frūmentō¹³ commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre, et rem in hiemem prōducere,¹⁴ quod, hīs² superātis aut reditū¹³ interclūsīs, nēminem

¹ 93, 429.

² Ablative Absolute.

³ *Post . . . quam*: on the fourth day after; *diem* is in the Accusative with the preposition *post*, and *quam* is here used as a conjunction with the force of *postquam*; literally, *after the fourth day, after, etc.*

⁴ 281, 301.

⁵ This was on the 30th of August.

⁶ *Qui diēs*: which period, or a period which.

⁷ *Id*: that = this fact, i.e. the fact expressed in *quī . . . cōsuēvit*.

⁸ 123, 500, I.

⁹ *Cōnstābat . . . oportēre*: *hiemārī*, used impersonally, is the subject of *oportēre*; 281, 301; *oportēre* is the subject of *cōnstābat*.

¹⁰ Subject of *duxērunt*.

¹¹ 334, 517.

¹² 246, 547.

¹³ 158, 413.

¹⁴ *Rem . . . prōducere*: to protract the war.

postea belli inferendi¹ causā in Britanniam transiturum² confidebant.

Caesar Suspects the Plot of the Britons, and Prepares to Meet it.

IX. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen fore³ id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferbat, et quae gravissimè adfectae erant naves, earum⁴ materiā⁵ atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas¹ utebantur, et quae ad eas res erant usui,⁶ ex continentī comportari jubebat. Itaque, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari posset,⁷ effecit.

The Britons Surprise a Roman Foraging Party. Caesar Hastens to the Rescue.

X. Dum ea geruntur,⁸ legione una frumentatum⁹ missa, neque illā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesarī nuntiaverunt pulverem majorem, quam consuetudo ferret,¹⁰ in eā parte videri, quam in partem¹¹ legio iter fecisset. Caesar suspicatus aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii,¹² cohortes, quae in stationibus erant,¹³ secum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes succedere,¹⁴ reliquas ar-

¹ 291, 543.

² Supply *esse*.

³ See 140, 204, 2.

⁴ Quae naves, earum = earum navium, quae.

⁵ 258, 421.

⁶ 281, 390; one of the two Datives, as here, is often omitted, when it would be some word like *alicui*, to any one.

⁷ Ut . . . posset is the object of *effecit*, 'he made it possible to sail with the rest'; 123, 501. *Navigari*, used impersonally, is the subject of *posset*; 281, 301.

⁸ See 339, sentence 10.

⁹ 166, 546.

¹⁰ Quam consuetudo ferret: than usual; literally, than custom bore.

¹¹ Quam in partem; render as if it were in quam.

¹² Aliquid . . . consilii; *aliquid* is subject of *initum (esse)*; *consilii* is Partitive Genitive after *aliquid*; 81, 397.

¹³ One cohort guarded each of the four gates of a Roman camp.

¹⁴ Ex . . . succedere: two of the other (six) cohorts to take their place on guard. He could spare only two, instead of four, to guard the gates.

māri et cōfestim sēsē subsequi jūssit. Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcēssisset,¹ suōs² ab hostibus premi, atque aegrē sustinēre animadvertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus dēmēssō frūmentō,³ pars ūna⁴ erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs, noctū in silvis dēlituerant; tum dispersōs,⁵ dēpositis armis,⁶ in metendō⁷ occupātōs subitō adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquōs perturbāverant; simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The Use of War-chariots by the Britons.

XI. Genus hōc est⁷ ex essedīs pūgnae: primō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla cōiciunt, atque ipsō terrōre equōrum⁸ et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt,⁹ ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proeliō excēdunt, atque ita currūs collocant, ut, si illi¹⁰ ā multitūdine hostium premantur,¹¹ expeditum ad suōs² receptum habeant.¹² Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant.

Caesar Rescues his Foraging Party. Storms interfere with Military Operations.

XII. Quibus rēbus¹³ perturbātis nostris² tempore¹⁴ optimissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ejus adventū¹⁵ nostrī² sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō³ factō, ad committendum

¹ 341, 521, II.

² See 125, sentence 8.

³ Ablative Absolute.

⁴ *Pars ūna*: only one part, i.e. only one place from which grain could be obtained.

⁵ *Dispersōs*; this participle, like *occupātōs*, agrees with *nostrōs*, to be supplied as the object of *adorti*; while scattered, etc.

⁶ 291, 542.

⁷ *Hōc est*: is as follows.

⁸ *Ipsō . . . equōrum*: by the very terror caused by their horses.

⁹ 341, 521, I.

¹⁰ *Illi*, i.e. the warriors, in distinction from the drivers, *aurigae*.

¹¹ 127, 529, II.

¹² 123, 500, II.

¹³ 78, 420.

¹⁴ 93, 429.

¹⁵ 185, 423, 1.

proelium¹ aliĕnum esse tempus arbitrātus, brevī tempore² intermissō in castra legiōnēs reduxit. Secūtæ sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs³ tempestātēs, quæ et nostrōs in castris continērent,⁴ et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent.

The Britons Combine, and March upon the Roman Camp, but Suffer a total Defeat.

XIII. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmiserunt, paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis prædicāvērunt, et quanta in perpetuum sui liberandī⁵ facultās darētur,⁶ si Rōmānōs castris⁷ expulissent,⁸ dēmōstravērunt. His rēbus⁹ celeriter māgnā multitudīne² peditātis equitātisque coactā, ad castra vērunt. Caesar legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit. Commissō proeliō,² nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuerunt, ac terga vertērunt. Quōs secūtī, complūrēs ex iis occidērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis² incēnsis, sē in castra recēperunt.

The Britons Sue for Peace. Caesar Returns to the Continent.

XIV. Eōdem diē¹⁰ lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vērunt. His¹¹ Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem adducī iussit. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus nāvēs solvit, quæ omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervērunt.

¹ 291, 543.

² Ablative Absolute.

³ 98, 379.

⁴ 123, 500, I.

⁵ *Sui liberandī*: of freeing themselves; literally, of the freeing of themselves. *Sui* is in the Genitive plural after *liberandī*, according to Rule XVI., 31, 395. The Gerund usually governs the same case as the verb, but sometimes, by virtue of its substantive nature, it governs the Genitive, especially the Genitive of personal pronouns, *mei*, *nostrī*, *tui*, *vestri*, and *sui*.

⁶ 127, 529, I.

⁷ 153, 413.

⁸ 127, 529, II.

⁹ 78, 420.

¹⁰ 93, 429.

¹¹ 54, 384, II.

SUGGESTIONS ON EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION.

No exercises for Translation into Latin are given in connection with these passages of connected narrative, but it is not intended that this important subject should be neglected. The pupil may now begin Part II. of the "Introduction to Latin Composition"; but an exercise as often as once a week or once a fortnight is recommended, to be prepared *by the teacher*, and based upon some passage of the Latin which the pupils have read. At first the pupils may be permitted to make their translation with the aid of the Latin; but the plan should be adopted early, of assigning the passage to be *committed to memory* by the pupil, and then requiring the translation into Latin within the hour assigned for the exercise, with no aid but the pupil's memory and the knowledge that he has acquired of the language. The following exercise, based upon paragraph II., page 282, is given simply as an illustration.

Translate into Latin.

Caesar says that in the consulship of Messala, Orgetorix, a chieftain (*princeps*¹) of very high birth and of great wealth, persuaded the Helvetii to emigrate from their country. The territory of this tribe (*gens*) was very limited for its population, and it was separated from the adjacent countries (*terra*) by high mountains and deep rivers. The Rhine hemmed them in on one side, Mount Jura on another, and on a third the Lake of Geneva and the Rhone. Thus (*itaque*) the warlike (*bellicōsus*) Helvetii were not able readily to carry on war against their neighbors.

¹ Words not occurring in the Latin passage may be furnished to the pupil, but in general he should be expected to give familiar words without aid.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

I. THE preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves—

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin words.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case, number, mood, tense*, etc., and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark those properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mēsa*, a table, but not of *mēnsārum*, of tables; the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *ārum*.

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will readily distinguish from one another not only the different parts of speech, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.
2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case, number, voice, mood, tense*, etc.

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means you will discover not only the relation of the words to one another, but also an important part of their meaning, that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (14, 347) will be found in the simple subject and predicate, i. e. in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will in most instances enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates; as, *audiō*, I hear, the ending *tō* showing that the subject is *ego*; *auditis*, you hear, the ending *itis* showing that the subject is *vōs*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject, i. e. adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i. e. (1) Oblique cases, Accusatives, Datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (14, 348, 349), discover first the connectives which unite the several mem-

bers, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are to look, not for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nominative Singular of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Person Singular, Present Indicative Active of Verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nominative Singular.

If *vōbīs* occurs, you must remember that the Nominative Singular is *tū*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nominative Singular.

Thus, *mēnsibus*: stem *mēnsi*, Nominative Singular *mēnsis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *ducem*, *duc*, *ducs*, *dux*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active.

Thus, *amābat*: stem *amā*, First Person Singular Present Indicative Active *amō*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *amāvērunt*; First Person Perfect *amāvī*, Perfect stem *amāv*, Verb stem *amā*; *amō*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

Model.

VIII. Themistoclēs imperātor servitūte tōtam Graeciam liberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their forms,

1) That *Themistoclēs* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nominative Singular,

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Ablative Singular,

3) That *tōtam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accusative Singular,

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Active voice, Indicative mood, Perfect tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistoclēs* is the name of an eminent Athenian general: THEMISTOCLES.

2) That *liberō*, for which you must look, not for *liberāvit*, means to liberate: LIBERATED.

Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperātor* means commander; THE COMMANDER.

Themistocles, the commander, liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country: GREECE.

Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *tōtus* means the whole, all: ALL.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servitūs* means servitude: FROM SERVITUDE.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing* it and *parsing* the words which compose it.

Analysis.

X. Tell whether the sentence is simple, complex, or compound.

XI. In analyzing a Simple sentence (14, 347), name,

1. The Subject and Predicate, (1) in the simple form, and (2) in the complex form (14, 356, 357).

2. The Modifiers of the Subject, (1) in the simple form, and (2) in the complex form.

3. The Modifiers of the Predicate, (1) in the simple form, and (2) in the complex form.

If the Modifiers are complex, the analysis may be continued till all complex elements are explained.

Model.

XII. In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rēx, moritur. *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.*

1. This is a simple sentence.

2. *Cluilius* is the simple subject, and *moritur*, the simple predicate. *Cluilius, Albānus rēx*, is the complex subject, and *in his castris moritur* is the complex predicate.

3. *Rēx* is the simple modifier of the subject *Cluilius*, and *Albānus rēx*, the complex modifier, as *rēx* is modified by *Albānus*, an adjective agreeing with it.

4. *In castris* is the simple modifier of the predicate *moritur*, showing where he dies, and *in his castris* is the complex modifier, as *castris* is modified by *his*.

XIII. In analyzing a Complex sentence (14, 348),

1. Name the sentence or clause used as an element in it, with its connective.

2. Analyze the sentence as a whole, like a simple sentence.

3. Analyze the subordinate clause (14, 348, note 2).

Model.

XIV. Dōnec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs. *So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends.*

1. This is a complex sentence.

2. *Dōnec eris fēlix*, is a clause introduced as a modifier of *numerābis*, showing when you will number.

3. *Tū*, implied in *numerābis*, is the subject; *numerābis* is the simple predicate, *dōnec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs* is the complex predicate.

4. *Amīcōs* is the simple object of the predicate *numerābis*, and *multōs amīcōs* the complex object. *Dōnec eris fēlix* is the adverbial modifier of the predicate.

5. *Dōnec eris fēlix* is a simple sentence, with the connective *dōnec*, a conjunction connecting *numerābis* and *eris*. *Tū*, implied in *eris*, is the subject, and *eris fēlix*, the predicate, *eris* being the copula, and *fēlix* the predicate adjective.

XV. In analyzing a Compound sentence (14, 349),

1. Separate it into its members and name the connectives.

2. Analyze each member as a separate sentence.

Model.

XVI. Sōl ruit et montēs umbrantur. *The sun hastens to its setting, and the mountains are shaded.*

1. This is a compound sentence (14, 349).
2. The members are *sōl ruit* and *montēs umbrantur*, connected by the conjunction *et*.
3. The members are simple sentences, and are analyzed accordingly.

Parsing.

XVII. In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech (Noun, Adjective, etc.) to which it belongs.
2. Inflect¹ it, if capable of inflection.
3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.²
4. Give its Syntax and the Rule for it.³

Model.

XVIII. Rōmānī ab arātrō abduxērunt Cincinnātum, ut dictātor esset. *The Romans took Cincinnatus from the plough, that he might be dictator.*

1. *Rōmānī* is an adjective: *Rōmānus*, *a*, *um*; STEM, *Rōmāno*; decline. It is in the *Nominative Plural Masculine*, is used substantively, and is the *subject* of *abduxērunt*. Give Rule III.

2. *Abduxērunt* is an active verb: *ab-dūcō*, *ab-dūcere*, *ab-duxī*, *ab-ductum*, compounded of *ab* and *dūcō*; STEM, *ab-duc*, PERFECT STEM, *ab-dux*. Give *synopsis* of the mood. Inflect the *tense*, i. e. the *Indicative Perfect Active* (207, 209). It is in the *Active* voice, *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *Third* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with *Rōmānī*. Give Rule XXXVI.

¹ Inflect, i. e. decline, compare, or conjugate.

² That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

³ No special Rule is deemed necessary for Prepositions, Conjunctions, or Interjections. Prepositions are provided for by the rule for *Cases with Prepositions*. Conjunctions are mere connectives, and are quite fully explained under *Moods*. Interjections are only expressions of emotion, or mere marks of address, explained under *Cases*.

3. *Cincinnātum* is a Proper noun (6, 39, 1), of the Second Declension; STEM *Cincinnāto*; decline, used only in the singular. It is *Masculine*, in the *Accusative Singular*, and is the *direct object* of *abduxērunt*. Give Rule V.

4. *Ab* is a preposition used with the Ablative *arātrō*.

5. *Arātrō* is a noun of the Second Declension; STEM *arātro*; decline. It is of the *Neuter Gender*, in the *Ablative Singular*, and is used with the Preposition *ab*. Give Rule XXXIII.

6. *Ut* is a conjunction of purpose (119, 497), connecting *abduxērunt* and *esset*.

7. *Esset* is an intransitive verb: *sum, esse, fui* (140, 204). Give *synopsis* of the *mood*, and inflect the *tense*, i. e. Subjunctive Imperfect. It is in the *Subjunctive mood*, *Imperfect tense*, *Third person*, *Singular number*, and agrees with the pronoun *is*, *he*, implied in the ending. Give Rule XXXVI.

8. *Dictātor* is a noun of the Third Declension; STEM *dictātōr*; decline (58, 60). It is *Masculine*, in the *Nominative Singular*, and agrees, as Predicate noun, with the omitted subject of *esset*. Give Rule I.

TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

In many important idioms of the Latin, a literal translation not only would fail to do justice to the original, but also would be a gross perversion of the mother-tongue. The following suggestions are intended to aid the pupil in disposing of such cases; but even in these, it is earnestly recommended that he should first construe literally, in order that he may be made to feel the force of the Latin construction before attempting a translation.

Participles.

XX. These are much more extensively used in Latin than in English; hence the frequent necessity, in translating them, of deviating from the Latin construction. They may generally be rendered in some one of the following ways¹ (291, 549).

¹ The pupil must early learn to determine from the context the appropriate rendering in each instance.

1. Literally :

Pyrrhus proeliō fūsus ā Tarentō recēssit, *Pyrrhus having been defeated in battle withdrew from Tarentum.*

2. By a Relative Clause :

Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs improbi sunt, *all who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.*

3. By a Clause with a Conjunction :

1) With a Conjunction of Time, — *while, when, after, etc.*

Ūva mātūrāta dulcescit, *the grape when it has ripened (having ripened), becomes sweet.*

2) With a Conjunction of Cause, Reason, Manner, — *as, for, since, etc.*

Millitēs perfīdīam veritī revertērunt, *the soldiers returned, because they feared perfidy.*

3) With a Conjunction of Condition, — *if.*

Accūsātus damnābitur, *if he is accused he will be condemned.*

4) With a Conjunction of Concession, — *though, although.*

Urbem ācerrimē dēfēnsam cēpit, *he took the city, though it was valiantly defended, or though valiantly defended.*

4. By a Verbal Noun :

Ad Rōmā conditā, *to the founding of Rome; literally, to Rome founded.* Ab urbe conditā, *from the founding of the city.* Post rēgēs exāctōs, *after the expulsion of the kings.*

5. By a Verb :

Rēx ēi benignē receptō fillam dedit, *the king received him kindly and gave him his daughter; literally, gave his daughter to him kindly received.*

XXI. Participles with *nōn* or *nihil* are sometimes best rendered by *Participial* nouns dependent upon *without* :

Nōn ridēns, *without laughing.*

XXII. Future Participles are sometimes best rendered by *Infinitives*, or by *Participial Nouns* with *for the purpose of* :

Rediit belli cāsum tentātūrus, *he returned to try (about to try) the fortune of war.*

XXIII. The Ablative Absolute is sometimes best rendered (1) by a *Clause with*—*when, while, after, for, since, if, though, etc.*, (2) by a *Noun with a Preposition*,—*in, during, after, by, from, through, etc.*, or (3) by an *Active Participle with its Object*:

Serviō rēgnante, *while Servius reigned, or in the reign of Servius* (literally, *Servius reigning*). Duce Fabiō, *under the command of Fabius* (literally, *Fabius being commander*).

Sometimes, as in the last example, a word denoting the *doer* of an action can be best rendered by the word which denotes the *thing done*. Thus, instead of *commander, consul, king, we have command, consulship, reign*.

Subjunctive.

XXIV. This may be rendered as follows:

1. With the *Potential* signs, *may, might, would, should* (322, 485):

Forsitan quaerātis, *perhaps you may inquire*. Hōc nēmō dixerit, *no one would say this*.

2. By the English Indicative. This is generally the best rendering

1) In clauses denoting Cause or Time (334, 517, 341, 521):

Cum vita metūs plēna sit, *since life is full of fear*. Cum Rōmam vēnisset, *when he had come to Rome*.

2) In Indirect Questions (127, 529, I.):

Quaeritur, cūr dissentiant, *it is asked why they disagree*.

3) In the Subjunctive in Indirect Clauses (127, 529, II.):

Vereor, nē, dum minuere velim labōrem, augeam, *I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it*.

4) In the Subordinate Clauses of Indirect Discourse (262, 524):

Hippiās glōriātus est ānulum quem habēret sē suā manū cōnfēcisse, *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore (had)*.

5) In Relative Clauses defining indefinite antecedents, and sometimes in clauses denoting *result* (123, 503, 500, 501):

Sunt qui putent, there are some who think. Ita vixit ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus, he so lived, that he was very dear to the Athenians.

6) Sometimes in Conditional and Concessive clauses, and in clauses with *Quin* and *Quōminus* (250, 560, 254, 515, 123, 500, II., 119, 497, II.):

Dum metuant, if (provided) they fear. Sī voluisset, dimicasset, if he had wished, he would have fought. Ut desint virēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās, though the strength fails, still the will should be approved. Adest nēmō, quin videat, there is no one present who does not see.

8. By the Infinitive.¹ This is often the best rendering

1) In Clauses denoting Purpose (119, 497):

Contendit ut vincat, he strives to conquer (that he may conquer). Decemviri creati sunt qui lēgēs scriberent, decemvirs were appointed to prepare the laws (who should prepare).

2) In Clauses denoting Result: hence after *dignus, indignus, idōneus, aptus*, etc. (123, 500, 503):

Nōn is sum qui his ūtar, I am not such a one as to use (he who may use) these things. Fābulae dignae sunt quae legantur, the fables are worthy to be read (which, or that they, should be read).

Infinitive.

XXV. The Infinitive has a much more extensive use in Latin than in English. The following points require notice.

1. The Infinitive with a Subject is rendered by a *Finite* verb with *that*:

Dixit sē rēgem vīdisse, he said that he had seen the king.

2. The Historical Infinitive² is rendered by the Imperfect Indicative:

Irām pater dissimulāre, the father concealed his anger.

¹ Observe, however, that the Infinitive here is not the translation of the Subjunctive alone, but of the Subjunctive with its subject and connective; *ut vincat, to conquer* (literally, *that he may conquer*); *qui ūtar, as to use* (literally, *who should or may use*).

² In lively descriptions the Present Infinitive is sometimes used for the Imperfect or the Perfect Indicative. It is then called the Historical Infinitive, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative.

8. The Infinitive is sometimes best rendered by a *Participial noun* with *of*, *with*, etc.

Īnsimulātur mystēria violāsse, he is accused of having violated the mysteries.

Miscellaneous Idioms.

XXVI. The following Miscellaneous Idioms are added :

1. *Certiōrem facere* should be rendered, *to inform*, and *certior fieri*, *to be informed* :

Caesar certior factus est, Caesar was informed.

2. *Inter sē*, literally *between themselves*, is often best rendered, *from each other, from one another, to each other, to one another, together.*

Omnēs inter sē differunt, they all differ from one another.

3. *Nē* — *quidem*, with one or more words between the parts, should be rendered, *not even*, or *even — not* :

Nē nōmen quidem, not even the name.

4. When two or more verbs stand together in the same compound tense, the copula (*sum*) is generally expressed with the last only, but in rendering, the copula should be expressed with the first only :

Captus et in vincula cōjectus est, he was taken and thrown into chains.

5. *Quantō* — *tantō*, literally, *by as much as — by so much*, is often best rendered before comparatives, *the — the* :

Quantō diūtius cōsiderō, tantō rēs vidētur obscurior, the longer (by as much as the longer) I consider the subject, the more obscure (by so much the more obscure) does it appear.

6. A Clause with *quōminus*, ‘by which the less,’ or ‘that the less,’ may generally be rendered by a *Clause* with *that*, by the *Infinitive*, or by a *Participial noun* with *from*.

Per eum stetit quōminus dimicārētur, it was owing to him (stood through him) that the engagement was not made. Nōn recūsāvit quōminus poenam subiret, he did not refuse to submit to punishment. Rēgem impediit quōminus pugnāret, he prevented the king from fighting.

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	ablative.
acc.	accusative.
adj.	adjective.
adv.	adverb.
comp.	comparative.
conj.	conjunction.
f.	feminine.
gen.	genitive.
impers.	impersonal.
indef.	indefinite.
interj.	interjection.
interrog.	interrogative.
lit.	literally.

m.	masculine.
n.	neuter.
nom.	nominative.
p.	page.
part.	participle.
pers.	personal.
pl.	plural.
pos.	positive.
prep.	preposition.
pron.	pronoun.
sing.	singular.
sup.	superlative.
w.	with.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A.

Ā, ab, prep. w. abl. *From; by, in the direction of; on.*

Abeō, ire, ii, itum. *To go away, depart.*

Abstineō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To abstain, refrain.* **ABSTAIN.**¹

Absum, esse, āfui. *To be absent, distant.* **ABSENT.**

Abundō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To abound, to be well supplied with.* **ABOUND.**

Āc, conj. *And.*

Acceptus, a, um, part and adj. *Acceptable.* **ACCEPT.**

Accidō, ere, i. *To fall to, befall, happen; accidit, it happens, comes to pass; 281, 301.* **ACCIDENT.**

Accipio, ere, cēpi, ceptum. *To accept, receive, take, admit.* **ACCEPT.**

Accommodātus, a, um, part. and adj. *Fitted, adapted.* **ACCOMMODATE.**

Accurrō, ere, curri and cucurri, cursum. *To run to, hasten to.*

Accūsātiō, ōnis, f. *Accusation.*

Accūsātor, ōris, m. *Accuser.* **ACCUSATION.**

Accūsō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To accuse, censure, upbraid.* **ACCUSE.**

Ācer, ācris, ācre. *Sharp, severe.*

Acies, eī, f. *Edge, line; line of battle; aciem instruere, to form the line of battle.*

Ācriter, adv. *Sharply, briskly, severely, vigorously, violently, harshly; ācriter pugnatur, a severe battle is fought; 281, 301.*

Acūtus, a, um, part. and adj. *Sharpened, sharp.*

Ad, prep. w. acc. *To, toward, for; at, on, near, in the vicinity of; according to.*

Adamō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To be greatly pleased with, to like very much.*

Adducō, ere, duxi, ductum. *To lead to, lead, bring, induce.* **ADDUCE.**

Adeō, ire, ii, itum. *To go to, arrive at, reach, visit.*

Adequitō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To ride toward, ride.*

Adficiō, ere, fēci, sectum. *To affect, visit.* **AFFECT.**

¹ The words thus added to the definition in **SMALL CAPITALS** are such as from their form readily suggest the corresponding Latin word.

- Adfinitās, ātis, f.** *Connection, relationship.* **AFFINITY.**
- Adflictō, āre, āvi, ātum.** *To trouble; to strand.* **AFFLICT.**
- Adfigō, ere, flixi, flictum.** *To crush, damage.* **AFFLICT.**
- Adhūc, adv.** *Hitherto, as yet, thus far.*
- Adigō, ere, ēgi, āctum.** *To drive, impel, hurl, throw.*
- Aditus, ūs, m.** *Approach.*
- Adjungō, ere, junxi, junctum.** *To join, add, unite.* **ADJOIN.**
- Administrō, āre, āvi, ātum.** *To administer, manage, execute, direct, perform.* **ADMINISTER.**
- Admittō, ere, misi, missum.** *To send to, send on, let go, admit; to commit; equō admissō, with his horse at full speed.* **ADMIT.**
- Adorior, iri, ortus sum.** *To rise upon, attack.*
- Aduātuci, ōrum, m. pl.** *The Aduatuci, a tribe of northern Gaul.*
- Adulēscēns, entis, m. and f.** *Youth, young man, young woman.* **ADOLESCENCE.**
- Adventus, ūs, m.** *Approach, arrival.* **ADVENT.**
- Aedificium, ii, n.** *Building, house.* **EDIFICE.**
- Aedificō, āre, āvi, ātum.** *To build.* **EDIFICE.**
- Aedui, ōrum, m. pl.** *The Aedui or Aeduans, a tribe of central Gaul.*
- Aeduius, a, um.** *Aeduan; Aeduus, I, m., an Aeduan, one of the Aedui.*
- Aegrē, adv.** *With difficulty, hardly, scarcely.*
- Aequitās, ātis, f.** *Fairness, calmness, kindness.* **EQUITY.**
- Aes, aeris, n.** *Bronze, copper.*
- Aestās, ātis, f.** *Summer.*
- Aestus, ūs, m.** *Tide.* **ESTUARY.**
- Aetās, ātis, f.** *Age.*
- Agendicum, i, n.** *Agendicum, a town in central Gaul.*
- Ager, agri, m.** *Field; agri, pl., fields, lands, country.*
- Aggredior, i, grēssus sum.** *To attack, assail.* **AGGRESSION.**
- Agmen, inis, n.** *Army on the march, line of march; extrēmum agmen, the extremity of the line, the rear; novissimum agmen, the rear; primum agmen, the van.*
- Agō, ere, ēgi, āctum.** *To lead, drive; to do, act, perform; to treat, plead, discourse, argue; grātiās agere, to return thanks, thank.* **ACT.**
- Agricola, ae, m.** *Husbandman, farmer.* **AGRICULTURE.**
- Alcēs, is, f.** *Elk.*
- Alesia, ae, f.** *Alesia, a town in central Gaul.*
- Aliēnus, a, um.** *Another's; unfavorable, unsuitable.* **ALIEN.**
- Aliquamdiū, adv.** *For a time.*
- Aliquis, qua, quid and quod.** *Any, any one.*
- Alius, a, ud. 42, 151.** *Other, another.* **ALIAS.**
- Allobrogēs, um, m. pl., sing.** *Allobrox, ogis. The Allobroges, a tribe of southeastern Gaul.*
- Alō, ere, alui, alitum and altum.** *To nourish, support.*
- Alpēs, ium, f. pl.** *Alps.*

Alter, *tera, terum*. 42, 151. *The other of two, second.*

Altitudō, *inis, f.* *Height, depth.*

Amicitia, *ae, f.* *Friendship.*

Amicus, *a, um.* *Friendly; amicus, i, m., friend.* AMICABLE.

Amittō, *ere, misi, missum.* *To lose.*

Amō, *āre, āvi, ātum.* *To love.*

Amor, *ōris, m.* *Love.*

Amplus, *a, um.* *Ample, much.*

AMPLE.

An, *conj.* *Or.*

Anceps, *ancipitis.* *Double, two-fold; doubtful, undecided.*

Ancora, *ae, f.* *Anchor.*

Angustiae, *arum, f. pl.* *Narrowness; narrow pass, defile.*

Angustus, *a, um.* *Narrow; limited, contracted; steep.*

Animadvertō, *ere, i, sum.* *To turn the attention to, observe, notice.* ANIMADVERT.

Animal, *ālis, n.* *Animal.*

Animus, *i, m.* *Mind, heart, soul.*

Annus, *i, m.* *Year.* ANNUAL.

Annuus, *a, um.* *Annual, yearly, annually, for a year.* ANNUAL.

Ante, *adv., and prep. w. acc.* *Before; ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs, the 25th of March.*

Anteā, *adv.* *Before, formerly, previously.*

Antequam, *conj.* *Before.*

Antiquus, *a, um.* *Ancient, old, former.* ANTIQUE.

Ānulus, *i, m.* *Ring.*

Apertus, *a, um, part. and adj.* *Open, exposed.*

Appellō, *āre, āvi, ātum.* *To call.* APPEAL.

Appetō, *ere, ivi or li, itum.* *To seek after, seek.* APPETITE.

Appropinquō, *āre, āvi, ātum.* *To approach.*

Aprilis, *e.* *Of April; ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs, the 28th of March.*

Apud, *prep. w. acc.* *In the presence of, near, among, in, with, in the vicinity of; in the works of.*

Aquila, *ae, f.* *Eagle, the standard of the legion.*

Aquillēa, *ae, f.* *Aquileia, a town in northern Italy.*

Aquillifer, *eri, m.* *Standard-bearer.*

Aquitāni, *orum, m. pl.* *The Aquitani or Aquitanians, the inhabitants of the southwestern division of Gaul.*

Arar, *aris, m.* 128. *The Arar, a river in southeastern Gaul, now the Saône.*

Arbitror, *ārī, ātus sum.* *To think.* ARBITRATE.

Arcessō, *ere, sivi or sli, situm.* *To summon, invite.*

Ārdeō, *ēre, ārsi, ārsu.* *To burn; to be ardent, be eager.* ARDOR.

Āridum, *i, n.* *Dry land.* ARID.

Ariovistus, *i, m.* *Ariovistus, a king of the Germans.*

Arma, *orum, n. pl.* *Arms.*

Armō, *āre, āvi, ātum.* *To arm.*

Arō, *āre, āvi, ātum.* *To plough.*

Arrogantia, *ae, f.* *Arrogance.*

Artē, *adv.* *Closely; soundly.*

Artemisia, *ae, f.* *Artemisia, queen of Caria.*

Artificium, *ii, n.* *Artifice.*

Arvernī, *orum, m. pl.* *The Arverni, a tribe of southern Gaul.*

Arx, arcis, f. Citadel.

Ascendō, ere, i, cēsum. To ascend.

Athēnae, ārum, f. pl. Athens.

Athēniēnsia, is, m. and f. Athenian.

Atque, conj. And.

Atticus, i, m. Atticus, a Roman name.

Attingō, ere, tigī, tāctum. To touch, reach.

Auctor, ōris, m. Author, advocate.

Auctōritās, ātis, f. Authority, influence, reputation.

Audācia, ae, f. Audacity, boldness. AUDACITY.

Audācter, adv. Boldly. AUDACITY.

Audeō, ēre, ausus sum. 319. To dare.

Audiō, ire, iui or ii, itum. To hear, hear of. AUDIENCE.

Augeō, ēre, auxi, auctum. To augment, increase.

Aureus, a, um. Golden, gold.

Auriga, ae, m. Charioteer, driver.

Aurum, i, n. Gold.

Aut, conj. Either, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.

Autem,¹ conj. But.

Auxillum, ii, n. Aid, help; auxilia, pl., auxiliaries.

Avāritia, ae, f. Avarice.

Āvertō, ere, i, sum. To turn aside, turn away; āversus, turned away, in retreat, retreating.

AVERT.

Avis, is, f. Bird.

Avus, i, m. Grandfather.

B.

Barbarus, a, um. Barbarous, rude; barbarus, i, m., a barbarian. BARBAROUS.

Beātus, a, um. Blessed, happy, prosperous.

Belgae, ārum, m. pl. The Belgae or Belgians, the inhabitants of the northern division of Gaul.

Bellicōsus, a, um. Warlike.

Bellō, āre, āvi, ātum. To war, wage war, carry on war.

Bellovaci, ōrum, m. pl. The Bellovaci, a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

Bellum, i, n. War.

Beneficium, ii, n. Benefit, favor. BENEFICE.

Bibracte, is, n. Bibracte, the chief town of the Aedui.

Bibrax, actis, n. Bibrax, a town of the Remi.

Biennium, ii, n. Two years, space of two years. BIENNIAL.

Biturigēs, um, m. pl. The Bituriges, a tribe of central Gaul.

Boli, ōrum, m. pl. The Boii, a tribe of central Gaul.

Bonitās, ātis, f. Goodness, excellence.

Bonus, a, um, comp. melior, sup. optimus. Good.

Breviter, adv. Briefly.

Britanni, ōrum, m. pl. Britons.

Britannia, ae, f. Britain.

Brūtus, i, m. Brutus, a Roman name.

¹ *Autem* is postpositive, i. e. it is placed after one or more words in its clause.

C.

Cabillōnum, i, n. *Cabillonum*, a town in eastern Gaul.

Cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsum. *To fall.*

Caedēs, is, f. *Slaughter.*

Caesar, aris, m. *Caesar*, the celebrated general, statesman, and author.

Calamitās, ātis, f. *Calamity, disaster.* CALAMITY.

Cantium, ii, n. *Kent.*

Cantus, ūs, m. *Singing, song.*

Capillus, i, m. *Hair.* CAPILLARY.

Capiō, ere, cēpi, captum. *To take; cōsilium capere, to take counsel, form a plan.*

Captivus, i, m. *Captive.*

Caput, itis, n. *Head.* CAPITAL.

Cāria, ae, f. *Caria*, a country in Asia Minor.

Carina, ae, f. *Keel, bottom of a vessel.*

Carō, carnis, f. *Flesh.* CARNAL.

Carrus, i, m. *Cart, wagon.*

Cārus, a, um. *Dear.*

Cassius, ii, m. *Cassius*, a Roman name.

Castellum, i, n. *Redoubt.* CASTLE.

Casticus, i, m. *Casticus*, a Sequanian chieftain.

Castra, ōrum, n. pl. *Camp.*

Cāsus, ūs, m. *Accident, occurrence, emergency, vicissitude, fortune.*

Catēna, ae, f. *Chain.*

Catō, ōnis, m. *Cato*, a Roman name.

Causa, ae, f. *Cause, reason.* CAUSE.

Cecidi. *See cadō.*

Celeritās, ātis, f. *Celerity, speed.* CELERITY.

Celeriter, adv. *Quickly, speedily.* CELERITY.

Celtae, ārum, m. pl. *Celts*, the inhabitants of the central division of Gaul.

Cēnsus, ūs, m. *Census, enumeration.*

Centum, indeclinable. *Hundred.*

Centuriō, ōnis, m. *Centurion.*

Certē, adv. *Certainly, at least.* CERTAIN.

Certus, a, um. *Certain, fixed, appointed; certiōrem facere, to make more certain; to inform.* CERTAIN.

Cevenna, ae, m. *Cevenna*, a mountain range in southern Gaul, now the *Cévennes*.

Cicerō, ōnis, m. *Cicero*; (1) the celebrated orator; (2) a lieutenant under Caesar.

Circiter, adv., and prep. w. acc. *About.*

Circum, prep. w. acc. *Around, about, near, in the vicinity or neighborhood of.*

Circumdō, are, dedi, datum. *To place around; to surround.*

Circumsistō, ere, stiti. *To stand around, surround.*

Cis, prep. with acc. *On this side of.*

Citerior, us, comp. adj., sup. citimus. *Nearer; Gallia citerior, the Roman province of Gaul south of the Alps, Cisalpine Gaul.*

Citrā, prep. w. acc. *On this side of.*

Civis, is, m. and f. *Citizen.*

- Civitas, ātis, f. State; citizens; citizenship.*
Clāmitō, āre, āvi, ātum. To exclaim, cry out.
Clāmor, ōris, m. Shout.
Clārus, a, um. Clear; illustrious, renowned. CLEAR.
Clāssis, is, f. Fleet.
Claudō, ere, si, sum. To close, shut. CLOSE.
Clēmētia, ae, f. Clemency, mercy. CLEMENCY.
Cliēns, entis, m. and f. Client, dependant. CLIENT.
Coēmō, ere, ēmi, ēptum. To buy up, buy, purchase, obtain by purchase.
Coepi, isse.¹ To begin.
Coērcēō, ēre, ui, itum. To restrain, control. COERCE.
Cōgnōscō, ere, nōvi, itum. To ascertain.
Cōgō, ere, ēgi, āctum. To drive together, bring together, collect; to force, compel.
Cohors, ortis, f. Cohort, a tenth of a legion.
Cohortātiō, ōnis, f. Exhortation, encouragement.
Cohortor, āri, ātus sum. To exhort, encourage.
Cōiciō,² ere, jēci, jectum. To throw, hurl, cast.
Collis, is, m. Hill.
Collocō, āre, āvi, ātum. To place, station. COLLOCATE.
Colloquium, ii, n. Conversation, conference, interview. COLLOQUY.
- Colōnia, ae, f. Colony.*
Combūrō, ere, ūssi, ūstum. To burn up, burn. COMBUSTION.
Comes, itis, m. and f. Companion.
Commeātus, ūs, m. Supplies, provisions.
Commemorātiō, ōnis, f. Mentioning, mention, remembrance. COMMEMORATION.
Commemorō, āre, āvi, ātum. To mention; to speak. COMMEMORATE.
Commeō, āre, āvi, ātum. To go back and forth, resort.
Commilitō, ōnis, m. and f. Fellow-soldier.
Committō, ere, misi, missum. To commit; proelium committere, to engage in battle.
Commius, ii, m. Commius, a chieftain of the Atrebatas.
Commovēō, ēre, mōvi, mōtum. To move, disturb, alarm. COM-MOTION.
Commūnīō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. To wall around, encompass, surround.
Commūnis, e. Common, general; commūnis rēs, common interest.
Comparō, āre, āvi, ātum. To prepare, raise.
Compello, ere, puli, pulsum. To drive. COMPEL.
Compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētum. To fill, cover. COMPLETE.
Complūrēs, plūra or plūria. Very many, many, several.

¹ Not used in the Present system.

² Pronounced as if spelled *cōjiciō*.

Comportō, āre, āvī, ātum. To bring together, gather.

Cōnātus, ūs, m. Undertaking, attempt, purpose.

Concēdō, ere, cēssi, cēssum. To concede, grant, permit. CONCEDE.

Concidō, ere, ī. To fall.

Concidō, ere, ī, sum. To cut down, destroy, kill, slay.

Conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum. To win, secure. CONCILIATE.

Concilium, īi, n. Council, meeting. COUNCIL.

Conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum. To shout, call out.

Concursus, ūs, m. Running together, running about, running to and fro, agitation. CONCOURSE.

Condonō, āre, āvī, ātum. To condone, pardon, forgive. CONDONE.

Conducō, ere, duxī, ductum. To lead together. CONDUCT.

Cōnferō, ferre, contulī, collātum. To carry together, bring together, gather, collect. CONFERR.

Cōnfertus, a, um. Dense, crowded, compact.

Cōnfestim, adv. Hastily, speedily.

Cōnficiō, ere, fecī, fectum. To make out, make, complete, accomplish, finish, bring to a close.

Cōnfidō, ere, fīsus sum.¹ To trust, be confident; to have confidence in, rely upon. CONFIDE. (Fol-

lowed by the Ablative or by the Dative.)

Cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum. To confirm, strengthen, establish, assure, fix; to comfort. CONFIRM.

Cōnfigō, ere, fīxī, fīctum. To contend, fight. CONFLICT.

Conjungō, ere, junxī, junctum. To join, unite. CONJOIN.

Conjux, ugis, m. and f. Spouse; husband; wife.

Conjūrātiō, ōnis, f. Conspiracy.

Conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum. To conspire.

Cōnor, āri, ātus sum. To attempt, try.

Conquirō, ere, sivi or sii, situm. To search for, seek.

Cōnscius, a, um. Conscious, aware. CONSCIOUS.

Cōnscribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum. To enrol, enlist. CONSCRIPT.

Cōnsequor, ī, secūtus sum. To pursue, follow, overtake.

Cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātum. To save, preserve, spare. CONSERVE.

Cōnsidius, īi, m. Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.

Cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sēssum. To sit down, settle, post one's self, encamp.

Cōnsillium, īi, n. Counsel, plan. COUNSEL.

Cōnsimilis, e. Similar, like.

Cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitum. To get a footing, stand firm. CONSIST.

Cōnspēctus, ūs, m. Sight, view. CONSPICUOUS.

Cōspiciō, ere, spēxi, spēctum.
To behold. CONSPICUOUS.

Cōstanter, adv. Consistently,
uniformly. CONSTANT.

Cōstantia, ae, f. Constancy,
steadfastness. CONSTANCY.

Cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtum. To sta-
tion, place; to determine, de-
cide. CONSTITUTE.

Cōnstō, āre, stitī, stātum. To
stand firm; to be established,
be evident, be plain, be mani-
fest, be admitted. CONSTANT.

Cōnsuēscō, ere, suēvi, suētum.
To become accustomed; cōn-
suēvi, I have become accus-
tomed, I am accustomed.

Cōnsuētūdō, inis, f. Custom,
usage.

Cōnsul, ulis, m. Consul, one of
the two presidents of the Ro-
man commonwealth.

Cōnsulō, ere, uī, sultum. To con-
sult.

Cōnsultō, āre, āvi, ātum. To con-
sult.

Cōnsultum, ī, n. Decree.

Contendō, ere, ī, tentum. To
contend; to hasten. CONTEND.

Contentus, a, um. Content, con-
tented, satisfied. CONTENT.

Continēns, entis, f. Continent,
mainland. CONTINENT.

Continenter, adv. Continually,
incessantly.

Contineō, ēre, uī, tentum. To
retain, restrain, confine, keep,
enclose, surround. CONTAIN.

Continuus, a, um. Continuous,
successive. CONTINUOUS.

Contrā, adv., and prep. w. acc.
Against, contrary to, over

against, opposite, in opposi-
tion. CONTRARY.

Contrahō, ere, traxī, tractum.
To contract.

Contrōversia, ae, f. Controversy,
dispute. CONTROVERSY.

Conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum. To
come together, meet, come.
CONVENE.

Conventus, ūs, m. Convention,
meeting, assembly, council.
CONVENTION.

Convertō, ere, ī, sum. To turn,
change. CONVERT.

Convocō, āre, āvī, ātum. To call
together, assemble. CONVOKE.

Cōpia, ae, f. Abundance, supply,
number; pl., supplies; forces,
troops. COPIOUS.

Cōpiōsus, a, um. Well-supplied,
wealthy. COPIOUS.

Corōna, ae, f. Crown, garland.
CROWN.

Cotidiānus, a, um. Daily.

Cotidiē, adv. Daily.

Cotta, ae, m. Cotta, a lieutenant
under Caesar.

Crassus, ī, m. Crassus, a Roman
name.

Crēber, bra, brum. Frequent.

Crēdō, ere, didī, ditum. To be-
lieve. CREED. (Followed by
the Dative.)

Creō, āre, āvi, ātum. To create,
make, appoint, elect. CREATE.

Crūdēlis, e. Cruel.

Crūdēliter, adv. Cruelly.

Culpa, ae, f. Fault, blame. CUL-
PABLE.

Cultus, ūs, m. Cultivation, re-
finement, civilization.

Cum, prep. w. abl. With.

Cum, conj. *When, while; since, as; although.*

Cunctor, āri, ātus sum. *To hesitate.*

Cupidē, adv. *Eagerly.*

Cupidus, a, um. *Desirous.*

Cuplō, ere, ivi or ii, itum. *To desire.*

Cūr, conj. *Why.*

Cūra, ae, f. *Care.*

Cūrō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To care, care for; aliquid faciendum cūrō, to have a thing done.*

Currus, ūs, m. *Chariot.*

Custōdiō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. *To guard.* CUSTODY.

Cŷrus, i, m. *Cyrus, king of Persia.*

D.

Dē, prep. w. abl. *Of, from; about, in regard to, concerning; in the course of; for.*

Dēbeō, ēre, ui, itum. *To owe; ought.* DEBT.

Decem, indeclinable. *Ten; decem novem, nineteen.*

Dēcernō, ere, crēvi, crētum. *To decide, decree.*

Dēcertō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To contend, struggle, fight.*

Declmus, a, um. *Tenth.* DECIMAL.

Dēcrētum, i, n. *Decree, decision.*

Dēducō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To lead forth, conduct.* DEDUCE.

Dēfendō, ere, i, fēsum. *To defend.*

Dēfēnsor, ōris, m. *Defender.*

Dēfessus, a, um. *Tired, exhausted, weary.*

Dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To fail, to be insufficient.* DEFICIENT.

Deinde, adv. *Then, in the next place.*

Dēlētō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To delight, please.*

Dēleō, ēre, ēvi, ētum. *To destroy.*

Dēliberō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To deliberate.*

Dēligō, ere, lēgi, lētum. *To choose, elect, select.*

Dēligō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To fasten, moor.*

Dēlītēscō, ere, lītui. *To hide.*

Dēmetō, ere, messui, messum. *To cut down, reap.*

Dēminuō, ere, ui, ūtum. *To diminish, lessen.*

Dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To demonstrate, show.* DEMONSTRATE.

Dēmum, adv. *At length.*

Dēnique, adv. *Finally, at length.*

Dēpōnō, ere, posui, positum. *To lay down, lay aside.* DEPOSE.

Dēpōpolor, āri, ātus sum. *To ravage, lay waste.* DEPOPULATE.

Dēprecātor, ōris, m. *Pleader, spokesman, agent; eō dēprecātōre, by his intercession.* DEPRECATE.

Dēsignō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To designate, indicate.* DESIGNATE.

Dēsiliō, ire, ui, sultum. *To leap out, leap forth, leap down.*

Dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitum. *To desist, cease.* DESIST.

Dēstringō, ere, strinxī, strictum. *To unsheathe, draw.*

Dēsum, esse, fui. *To be wanting, to fail.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Dētarreō, ēre, uī, itum. *To deter.*

Dētineō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To detain.*

Dētrimentum, ī, n. *Detriment, loss, disadvantage.* DETRIMENT.

Dicō, ere, dixī, dictum. *To say, speak, mention, state; to appoint; causam dicere, to plead a cause, make a defence.*

Diēs, ēī, m. *Day; time; multō diē, long after sunrise; ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs, the 28th of March.*

Difficilis, e. *Difficult.*

Difficultās, ātis, f. *Difficulty.*

Diligenter, adv. *Diligently, attentively.* DILIGENT.

Diligentia, ae, f. *Diligence, carefulness.* DILIGENCE.

Dionysius, ii, m. *Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse.*

Discēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum. *To withdraw, depart, swerve.*

Discipulus, ī, m. *Pupil.* DISCIPLE.

Disiciō,¹ ere, jēcī, jectum. *To break asunder, separate.*

Dispergō, ere, sī, sum. *To scatter, disperse.* DISPERSE.

Dissentiō, ōnis, f. *Dissension, disagreement.* DISSENSION.

Distineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum. *To keep apart, separate.*

Diū, adv., comp. diūtius, sup. diūtissimē. *Long, for a long time.*

Dives, itis, comp. divitior or ditior, sup. divitissimus or ditissimus. *Rich, wealthy.*

Divicō, ōnis, m. *Divico, an Helvetian chieftain.*

Dividō, ere, visi, visum. *To divide, separate.* DIVIDE.

Divinus, a, um. *Divine, religious.* DIVINE.

Divitiacus, ī, m. *Divitiacus, an Aeduan chieftain.*

Dō, dare, dedi, datum. *To give; in fugam dare, to put to flight.*

Doceō, ēre, uī, dōctum. *To teach, inform.*

Dōctrina, ae, f. *Learning.* DOCTRINE.

Dōctus, a, um, part. and adj. *Learned.*

Dolor, ōris, m. *Pain, grief.*

Domus, ūs, f. *House; home; domī, at home.*

Dōnō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To present.*

Dōnum, ī, n. *Gift, present.*

Dormiō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. *To sleep.* DORMANT.

Druidēs, um, m. pl. *Druids, the priests of the Gauls.*

Dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To doubt, hesitate.*

Ducentī, ae, a. *Two hundred.*

Dūcō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To lead.* DUCT.

Dum, conj. *While; until.*

Dumnorix, igis, m. *Dumnorix, an Aeduan chieftain.*

Duo, ae, o. 97, 175. *Two.*

Duodecim, indeclinable. *Twelve.*

Duodēquadrāgintā, indeclinable. *Thirty-eight.*

¹ Pronounced as if spelled *disjiciō*.

Duplex, icis. *Double.*
 Duplicō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To double.*
 DUPLICATE.
 Dux, ducis, m. and f. *Leader.*

E.

Ē, prep. w. abl. See *Ex.*
 Ēducō, ere, duxi, ductum. *To lead out.* EDUCE.
 Effeminō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To effeminate, enervate.* EFFEMINATE.
 Efficō, ere, feci, fectum. *To make, construct, effect, produce, occasion, bring about.* EFFECT.
 Ego, mei, pers. pron. 102, 184. *I, myself.*
 Ēgredior, i, grēssus sum. *To go out, go forth, depart, disembark.* EGRESS.
 Ēgregiā, adv. *Excellently.* EGREGIOUS.
 Ēgregius, a, um. *Distinguished.* EGREGIOUS.
 Ēiciō,¹ ere, jēci, jectum. *To cast out, drive out, expel.* EJECT.
 Enim,² conj. *For.*
 Ēnūtiō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To announce, report, disclose.*
 Eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. 277, 295. *To go.*
 Epistula, ae, f. *Letter, epistle.* EPISTLE.
 Eques, itis, m. *Horseman; pl., horsemen, cavalry.*
 Equester, tris, tre. *Equestrian; equestre proelium, cavalry engagement.*

Equitātus, ūs, m. *Cavalry.*
 Equus, i, m. *Horse.*
 Eram. See *Sum.*
 Ērigō, ere, rēxi, rēctum. *To erect, raise; sē ērigere, to lift one's self, rise.* ERECT.
 Ērudiō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. *To instruct.* ERUDITE.
 Esseda, ae, f. *War-chariot, chariot.*
 Essedārius, ii, m. *Chariot-fighter, a warrior who fought in a war-chariot.*
 Et, conj. *And; et . . . et, both . . . and.*
 Etiam, adv. *Also, even.*
 Etsi, conj. *Although.*
 Ēvocō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To summon forth, call out.* EVOKE.
 Ex, ē, prep. w. abl. *Out of, from, of.*
 Excēdō, ere, cēssi, cēssum. *To withdraw.*
 Excitō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To excite, arouse.* EXCITE.
 Exeruciō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To torture.* EXCRUCIATING.
 Excursiō, ōnis, f. *Sally, sortie.* EXCURSION.
 Excūsō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To excuse.*
 Exemplum, i, n. *Example.*
 Exeō, ire, ii, itum. *To go out, go forth, depart.* EXIT.
 Exercitus, ūs, m. *Army.*
 Exigō, ere, ēgī, āctum. *To complete, finish, end.* EXACT.
 Exiguitās, ātis, f. *Smallness, small size.*

¹ Pronounced as if spelled *ējiciō*.

² *Enim* is postpositive; see page 316, foot-note.

Exiguus, a, um. *Restricted, limited, scanty, small, brief.*

Existimō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To think.*

Expeditus, a, um, part. and adj.

Unembarrassed, ready, quick.

EXPEDITE.

Expellō, ere, puli, pulsum. *To expel, drive out.* **EXPUL.**

Explorātor, ōris, m. *Scout.* **EXPLORER.**

Explorō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To explore, investigate.* **EXPLORE.**

Expōnō, ere, posui, positum. *To expose, arrange.* **EXPOSE.**

Expūgnō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To take by storm, storm.*

Exspectō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To expect, await.* **EXPECT.**

Exspoliō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To rob, deprive.*

Exsul, ulis, m. and f. *Exile.*

Exterus, a, um, comp. exterior, sup. extrēmus and extimus. *Outer; extrēmus, extreme; outermost extremity of.*

Extrā, prep. w. acc. *Beyond, outside of.*

Exūrō, ere, ūssi, ūstum. *To burn up, burn.*

F.

Fabius, ii, m. *Fabius, a celebrated general.*

Fābula, ae, f. *Fable, story.* **FABLE.**

Facile, adv. *Easily.* **FACILE.**

Facilis, e, comp. facillior, sup. facillimus. *Easy.* **FACILE.**

Facinus, oris, n. *Misdeed, crime.*

Faciō, ere, fēci, factum. *To do, make; iter facere, to march; vim facere, to use force.* **FACT.**

Facultās, ātis, f. *Ability, opportunity, means; pl., means, wealth.* **FACULTY.**

Falsus, a, um. *False.*

Familiāris, e. *Domestic, private; rēs familiāris, private property.*

FAMILIAR.

Faveō, ēre, fāvi, fautum. *To favor. (Followed by the Dative.)*

Fēliciter, adv. *Happily, successfully.* **FELICITOUS.**

Fēlix, icis. *Happy, fortunate.*

Ferāx, ācis. *Productive, fertile.*

Ferē, adv. *Almost, nearly.*

Ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum. 269, 292. *To bear, carry, present, bring; to endure; lēgem ferre, to propose a law.*

Fertilis, e. *Fertile.*

Fertilitās, ātis, f. *Fertility.*

Ferus, a, um. *Fierce, savage.*

Fidēlis, e. *Faithful.* **FIDELITY.**

Fidēs, ēi, f. *Faith, confidence, trust; pledge.*

Fidus, a, um. *Faithful.*

Figūra, ae, f. *Figure, form, shape.* **FIGURE.**

Filia, ae, f. *Daughter.* **FILIAL.**

Filius, ii, m. 36, 51, 5. *Son.* **FILIAL.**

Fingō, ere, finxi, fictum. *To form, fashion; vultum fingere, to control the countenance.*

Finiō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. *To bound, limit, end.* **FINAL.**

Finis, is, m. and f. *End, limit; finēs, m. pl., boundaries; territory.*

Finitimus, a, um. *Neighboring.*

Fiō, fieri, factus sum. 277, 294. *To be made; to happen, come to pass.*

Firmiter, adv. *Firmly.*

Flaccus, i, m. *Flaccus, a Roman name.*

Flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To demand.*

Flūctus, ūs, m. *Wave.* **FLUCTUATE.**

Flūmen, inis, n. *Stream, river.*

Fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum. *To flow.*

Fore. See 140, 204, 2.

Forsitan, adv. *Perhaps.*

Fortis, e. *Brave.*

Fortiter, adv. *Bravely, courageously.*

Fortitūdō, inis, f. *Fortitude, courage.* **FORTITUDE.**

Fortūna, ae, f. *Fortune.*

Fōssa, ae, f. *Ditch, moat.* **Foss.**

Frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum. *To break, crush, wreck.* **FRACTURE.**

Frāter, tris, m. *Brother.* **FRA-TERNAL.**

Fremitus, ūs, m. *Din, noise.*

Frētus, a, um. *Relying on, trusting to.*

Frūmentārius, a, um. *Pertaining to grain; rēs frūmentāria, grain, supplies.*

Frūmentātiō, ōnis, f. *Foraging, provisioning.*

Frūmentor, āri, ātus sum. *To gather grain, forage.*

Frūmentum, i, n. *Grain.*

Fuga, ae, f. *Flight; in fugam dare, to put to flight.*

Fugitīvus, i, m. *Runaway, deserter.* **FUGITIVE.**

Funda, ae, f. *Sling.*

Futūrus, a, um. See *Sum.*

G.

Gabinus, ii, m. *Gabinus, a Roman name.*

Gāius, ii, m. *Gaius, a Roman name.*

Galba, ae, m. *Galba, a lieutenant under Caesar.*

Gallia, ae, f. *Gaul.*

Gallicus, a, um. *Gallic.*

Gallus, i, m. *Gaul, a Gaul.*

Gemma, ae, f. *Gem.*

Genāva, ae, f. *Geneva.*

Gener, erī, m. *Son-in-law.*

Gēns, gentis, f. *Race, tribe, nation.*

Genus, eris, n. *Kind, class.*

Germānia, ae, f. *Germany.*

Germānus, a, um. *German; Germānus, i, m., a German.*

Gerō, ere, gessi, gestum. *To bear, conduct, carry on, wage, do; to hold.*

Gladus, ii, m. *Sword.*

Glōria, ae, f. *Glory.*

Gnaeus, i, m. *Gnaeus, a Roman name.*

Graecia, ae, f. *Greece.*

Graecus, a, um. *Greek, Grecian.*

Grātia, ae, f. *Gratitude, favor; pl., thanks.* **GRACE.**

Grātulor, āri, ātus sum. *To congratulate; to thank. (Followed by the Dative.)*

Grātus, a, um. *Acceptable, pleasing.*

Gravis, e. *Heavy, severe, grave.* **GRAVE.**

Graviter, adv. *Severely, grievously.*

Gubernātor, ōris, m. *Pilot.* **GUBERNATORIAL.**

H.

Habeō, ēre, uī, itum. *To have, hold, regard, regard as.*
 Habitō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To reside, live, dwell.*
 Hannibal, alis, m. *Hannibal, a celebrated Carthaginian general.*
 Harūdēs, um, m. pl. *The Harudes, a tribe of southwestern Germany.*
 Helvētīi, ōrum, m. pl. *The Helvetii or Helvetians, a people inhabiting Switzerland.*
 Helvētius, a, um. *Helvetian.*
 Hērēditās, ātis, f. *Inheritance.*
 Hērōdotus, i, m. *Herodotus, a Greek historian.*
 Hiberna, ōrum, n. pl. *Winter quarters.*
 Hīc, haec, hōc. 102, 186. *This, this one, the latter, he, she, it.*
 Hiemō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To winter, pass the winter.*
 Hiems, emis, f. *Winter.*
 Historia, ae, f. *History.*
 Homō, inis, m. and f. *Man, human being, person.*
 Honor, ōris, m. *Honor.*
 Hōra, ae, f. *Hour.*
 Hortor, āri, ātus sum. *To exhort, urge.*
 Hospes, itis, m. and f. *Guest; host.*
 Hostis, is, m. and f. *Enemy.*
 Hūc, adv. *Hither; to this place.*
 Hūmānitās, ātis, f. *Culture, refinement. HUMANITY.*
 Hūmānus, a, um. *Humane; civilized. HUMANE.*

I.

Ibī, adv. *There.*
 Idem, eadem, idem. 102, 186. *Same, the same.*
 Idōneus, a, um. *Suitable, fit, proper.*
 Idūs, uum, f. pl. *Ides, the 15th day of March, May, July, and October; in other months the 13th.*
 Ieram. See Eō.
 Igitur, conj. *Therefore.*
 Ignis, is, m. *Fire.*
 Ii. See Eō.
 Ille, a, ud. 102, 186. *That, that one, the former, he, she, it.*
 Illō, adv. *Thither, to that place.*
 Impedimentum, i, n. *Impediment, hinderance, embarrassment; pl., hinderances; baggage of an army. IMPEDIMENT.*
 Impediō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. *To impede, hinder, embarrass. IMPEDE.*
 Impeditus, a, um, part. and adj. *Impeded, hindered, embarrassed; entangled. IMPEDED.*
 Impendeō, ēre. *To overhang. IMPEND. (Followed by the Dative.)*
 Imperātor, ōris, m. *General, commander.*
 Imperātum, i, n. *Order, bidding, command; imperātum facere, to do one's bidding, execute one's order.*
 Imperitus, a, um. *Unskilful, ignorant.*
 Imperium, ii, n. *Command, sway, government, empire.*
 ignoro

Imperō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To order, command.*

Impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To obtain one's request.*

Impetus, ūs, m. *Attack, charge.*
IMPETUOUS.

Importō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To bring in, import.* IMPORT.

Improbis, a, um. *Wicked, unprincipled.*

Imprōvisus, a, um. *Unforeseen, unexpected; dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly, suddenly.*

In, prep. w. acc. and abl.; see page 58, foot-note 1. *In, into, to; for; over, across.*

Incendium, ii, n. *Fire, burning, conflagration.* INCENDIARY.

Incendō, ere, i, cēsum. *To set on fire, fire, burn.* INCENSE.

Incitō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To impel, urge on, urge forward.*
INCITE.

Incōgnitus, a, um. *Unknown.*

Incolō, ere, uī, cultum. *To inhabit, dwell.*

Incolūmis, e. *Unharmed, safe.*

Incommodum, i, n. *Misfortune, disaster, defeat.*

Incrēdibilis, e. *Incredible.*

Inde, adv. *Thence, from that place.*

Indicō, ere, dixī, dictum. *To appoint.*

Indignus, a, um. *Unworthy.*

Inducō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To lead into, lead on, induce.* INDUCE.

Ineō, ire, ii, itum. *To go into, enter upon, begin, initiate, undertake.*

Inermis, a, um. *Unarmed.*

Infēlix, icis. *Unhappy, unfortunate.*

Infērō, ferre, intuli, illātum. *To bear into, wage into, wage against, wage upon, wage; to inflict upon, inflict.*

Inficiō, ere, fēci, fectum. *To stain, color, dye.*

Influō, ere, fluxī, fluxum. *To flow into, empty, flow.*

Ingrātus, a, um. *Ungrateful, unpleasant, disagreeable.*

Inimicus, i, m. *Enemy.* 296.
INIMICAL.

Iniquus, a, um. *Unequal; unfair, unjust; unfavorable, disadvantageous.*

Initium, ii, n. *Beginning.* INITIATE.

Injūria, ae, f. *Injury, wrong.*
INJURY.

Inopia, ae, f. *Lack, want, need, scarcity.*

Inquam.¹ *I say; inquit, present: he says; perfect: he said, said he.*

Insequor, i, secūtus sum. *To follow close upon, follow up, follow, pursue.*

Insignis, e. *Marked, signal, remarkable.*

Insimulō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To accuse.*

Insinuō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To introduce, insinuate; sē insin-*

¹ *Inquam* is a defective verb. It is used in a few parts only of the active voice.

- uāre, *to make one's way, force one's self.* **INSINUATE.**
- Īnsistō, ere, stitī. *To stand, get a foothold.* **INSIST.**
- Īnstituō, ere, uī, ūtum. *To begin, proceed; to train, instruct.* **INSTITUTE.**
- Īnstō, āre, stitī, stātum. *To be near, be at hand.* **INSTANT.**
- Īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum. *To construct, draw up, array; aciem instruere, to form the line of battle.*
- Īnsuetus, a, um. *Unaccustomed.*
- Īnsula, ae, f. *Island.*
- Integritās, ātis, f. *Integrity, uprightness.* **INTEGRITY.**
- Intellegō, ere, lēxi, lēctum. *To understand.* **INTELLECT.**
- Inter, prep. w. acc. *Among; inter sē, among themselves; with each other, with one another, together; inter sē dare, to exchange.*
- Intercēdō, ere, cēssi, cēssum. *To come between, intervene.* **INTERCEDE.**
- Interclūdō, ere, si, sum. *To cut off.*
- Interdicō, ere, dixi, dictum. *To forbid, prohibit, exclude.* **INTERDICT.** See 332, foot-note 2.
- Intereā, adv. *Meantime, in the meanwhile.*
- Intereō, ire, īi, itum. *To perish.*
- Interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To kill, slay, put to death.*
- Interim, adv. *Meanwhile, in the mean time.*
- Interior, us, comp. adj. 86, 166. *Interior, inner.*
- Intermittō, ere, misi, missum. *To send between; to intermit, interrupt; passa, to be brought between, to intervene.* **INTERMIT.**
- Interpōnō, ere, posui, positum. *To interpose, suggest, present.* **INTERPOSE.**
- Intersum, esse, fui. *To be between, intervene; interest, impersonal, it interests, concerns.* **INTEREST.**
- Intervallum, i, n. *Interval, space between.*
- Inūsitātus, a, um. *Unwonted, unfamiliar, strange.*
- Inūtilis, e. *Useless.*
- Inuitus, a, um. *Unwilling.*
- Ipsē, a, um. 102, 186. *Self, he, she, it.*
- Īracundus, a, um. *Passionate, violent.*
- Īre. See eō.
- Irrumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptum. *To break in, rush in.* **IRRUPTION.**
- Is, ea, id. 102, 186. *That, this, that one, this one, he, she, it.*
- Iste, a, ud. 102, 186. *That of yours, that, that one, he, she, it.*
- Ita, adv. *So, in such a way, thus.*
- Ītalia, ae, f. *Italy.*
- Itaque, conj. *And so, therefore.*
- Item, adv. *Also, likewise.*
- Iter, itineris, n. *March, journey; way, route; māgna itinera, forced marches; iter facere, to march.*

J.

- Jaciō, ere, jēci, jactum. *To throw.*
 Jam, adv. *Already, now.*
 Jubeō, ēre, jūssi, jūssum. *To order, command.*
 Jūdex, icis, m. and f. *Judge.*
 Jūdicium, ii, n. *Judgment, decision.*
 Jūdicō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To judge.*
 Jugum, i, n. *Yoke; ridge, height.*
 Jumentum, i, n. *Draught animal, beast of burden.*
 Jūra, ae, m. *Jura, a mountain range in western Gaul.*
 Jūssi. See *jubeō.*
 Jūstitia, ae, f. *Justice.*
 Juvenis, is, m. and f. *Youth, a youth.* JUVENILE.
 Juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtum. *To aid, help, assist.*

K.

- Kalendae, ārum, f. pl. *Calends, the first day of the month; ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs, the 28th of March.* CALENDAR.
 Karthāgō, inis, f. *Carthage.*

L.

- Labiēnus, i, m. *Labienus, a lieutenant under Caesar.*
 Labor, ōris, m. *Labor, toil, effort, exertion.*
 Labōrō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To labor, struggle, to be in trouble.* LABOR.
 Laccessō, ere, sivi or sili, situm. *To harass, provoke, assail, attack.*
 Lacrima, ae, f. *Tear.*

Lacrimō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To weep.*

Lacus, ūs, m. *Lake.*

Lapis, idis, m. *Stone.*

Largior, iri, itus sum. *To bestow, make gifts.*

Largiter, adv. *Largely, widely, extensively; largiter pōsse, to have extensive influence.*

Lātē, adv. *Widely; longē lātēque, far and wide.*

Latinus, i, m. *Latinus, king of the Laurentians in central Italy.*

Latinus, a, um. *Latin.*

Lātitudō, inis, f. *Width, breadth.*

LATITUDE.

Latrō, ōnis, m. *Robber, brigand.*

Lātus, a, um. *Broad, wide, extensive.*

Latus, eris, n. *Side.*

Laudō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To praise.*

LAUD.

Lāvinia, ae, f. *Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus.*

Lēgātiō, ōnis, f. *Embassy.*

Lēgātus, i, m. *Ambassador; lieutenant.* LEGATE.

Legiō, ōnis, f. *Legion.*

Legō, ere, lēgi, lēctum. *To read.*

Lemannus, i, m. *Lemannus, Lemman, Lake of Geneva.*

Lēnitās, ātis, f. *Smoothness, gentleness.*

Leō, ōnis, m. *Lion.*

Levitās, ātis, f. *Levity, fickleness, impulsiveness.* LEVITY.

Lēx, lēgis, f. *Law.*

Libenter, adv. *Willingly, gladly.*

Liber, bri, m. *Book.*

Liber, era, erum. *Free.*

Liberālitās, ātis, f. *Liberality.*

Liberi, ōrum, *m. pl.* *Children.*
Liberō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To liberate, free.* **LIBERATE.**
Libertās, ātis, *f.* *Liberty, freedom.* **LIBERTY.**
Liceor, ēri, itus sum. *To bid at auction.*
Licet, ēre, licuit, *impers.* *It is lawful, is permitted, one may.*
Ligārius, ii, *m.* *Ligarius, a prominent Roman in whose behalf Cicero pleaded before Caesar.*
Liger, is, *m.* *The Liger, a river in southwestern Gaul, now the Loire.*
Lingonēs, um, *m. pl.* *The Lingones, a tribe of central Gaul.*
Lingua, ae, *f.* *Tongue, language.*
Liscus, i, *m.* *Liscus, a chieftain of the Aedul.*
Litavicus, i, *m.* *Litavicus, an Aeduan chieftain.*
Littera, ae, *f.* *Letter; pl., letters; a letter, epistle.*
Litus, oris, *n.* *Shore.*
Locus, i, *m.*, *pl. loca*, ōrum, *n.* *Place, position.* **LOCAL.**
Longē, adv. *Long, far, by far.* **LONG.**
Longinquus, a, um. *Distant, remote.*
Longus, a, um. *Long.*
Lūcius, ii, *m.* *Lucius, a Roman name.*
Lūna, ae, *f.* *Moon.* **LUNAR.**
Lutetia, ae, *f.* *Lutetia, a town in central Gaul, now Paris.*
Lūx, lūcis, *f.* *Light, daylight; prima lūx, daybreak.*

M.

Magistrātus, ūs, *m.* *Magistracy; magistrate.*
Māgnitūdō, inis, *f.* *Size, magnitude, height.* **MAGNITUDE.**
Māgnus, a, um, *comp. māior, sup. māximus.* *Great, large; numerous; loud; mājorēs, m. and f. pl., elders; ancestors, forefathers.*
Maleficium, ii, *n.* *Mischief, harm.*
Mālō, mälle, mālui. 273, 293. *To prefer.*
Mandō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To commission, order, entrust, consign, commit, betake.* **MANDATE.**
Maneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsu. *To remain.* **MANSE.**
Manus, ūs, *f.* *Hand; band; in manibus, in hand; at hand, close at hand.*
Mārcus, i, *m.* *Marcus, a Roman name.*
Mare, is, *n.* *Sea.*
Maritimus, a, um. *Maritime, pertaining to the sea; ōra maritima, sea-coast.* **MARITIME.**
Matara, ae, *f.* *Javelin, pike.*
Māter, tris, *f.* *Mother.*
Māteria, ae, *f.* *Timber.* **MATERIAL.**
Matiscō, ōnis, *m.* *Matisco, a town in southwestern Gaul.*
Mātrimōnium, ii, *n.* *Marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, to marry.* **MATRIMONY.**
Mātūrē, adv. *Early, promptly.* **MATURE.**

Mätürö, äre, ävi, ätum. *To hasten.* **MATURE.**

Mätürus, a, um. *Early.* **MATURE.**

Mausölus, i, m. *Mausolus, king of Caria.*

Mäximē, sup. adv. *Most, very greatly, chiefly, especially.*

Mäximus, a, um. *See mägnus.*

Medius, a, um. *Middle, middle of; 191, foot-note.*

Melodünüm, i, n. *Melodunum, a town in central Gaul.*

Memoria, ae, f. *Memory, recollection.* **MEMORY.**

Menapii, örüm, m. pl. *The Menapii, a tribe of northern Gaul.*

Mēns, mentis, f. *Mind, intellect.* **MENTAL.**

Mēnsis, is, m. *Month.*

Mercātor, öris, m. *Merchant, trader.*

Meridiēs, ēi, m. *Midday, noon.* **MERIDIAN.**

Meritö, adv. *Deservedly.* **MERIT.**

Messälla, ae, m. *Messala, a Roman name.*

Mētiör, iri, mēnsus sum. *To measure, allot.*

Metö, ere, messui, messum. *To reap, harvest, gather grain.*

Meus, a, um. 185. *My, mine.*

Miles, itis, m. and f. *Soldier.* **MILITIA.**

Militäris, e. *Military; res militäris, military affairs.*

Mille, pl. milia, ium, n. 247, foot-note. *Thousand; mille passüs, a thousand paces, a (Roman) mile.*

Minus, comp. adv. *Less; sup. minimē, least, very little, by no means.*

Mittö, ere, misi, missum. *To send.* **MISSION.**

Möbilitäs, ätis, f. *Mobility, rapidity.* **MOBILITY.**

Modestē, adv. *Modestly.* **MODEST.**

Modo, adv. *Only.*

Modus, i, m. *Measure; manner.*

Molestē, adv. *With trouble; molestē ferre, to be vexed at, annoyed at.*

Moneö, ère, ui, itum. *To advise, warn.*

Möns, montis, m. *Mountain.* **MOUNT.**

Morini, örüm, m. pl. *The Morini, a tribe of northern Gaul.*

Moror, äri, ätus sum. *To tarry, delay, wait.*

Mors, mortis, f. *Death.* **MORTAL.**

Mötus, üs, m. *Movement, motion.* **MOTION.**

Moveö, ère, mövi, mötum. *To move, remove.* **MOVE.**

Muller, eris, f. *Woman.*

Multitüdö, inis, f. *Multitude; the multitude, common people, populace.* **MULTITUDE.**

Multö, adv. *By much, by far.*

Multum, adv., comp. plüs, sup. plürimum. *Much.*

Multus, a, um, comp. plüs, n. (pl. plürēs, plüra), sup. plürimus. *Much; many; multö diē, long after day break.*

Müniö, irē, ivi or li, itum. *To fortify.* **MUNITION.**

Münitiö, önis, f. *Fortification; opus münitiönis, fortified work.* **MUNITION.**

Mürus, i, m. *Wall.*

N.

Nactus, a, um. See nanciscor.

Nam, namque, conj. For; for indeed.

Nanciscor, i, nactus sum. To get, obtain, secure.

Narbō, ōnis, m. Narbo, a town in southern Gaul.

Nātiō, ōnis, f. Nation.

Nātūra, ae, f. Nature.

Nauta, ae, m. Sailor.

Nāvālis, e. Naval.

Nāvīgium, ii, n. Vessel, ship.

Nāvīgō, āre, āvi, ātum. To sail. NAVIGATE.

Nāvis, is, f. Ship, vessel; nāvis longa, ship of war; nāvis onerāria, transport vessel, transport. NAVY.

-Ne, conj. Interrogative particle. See 106, 351, 1 and 2.

Nē, adv. and conj. With the Imperative or the Subjunctive of Desire, not; with the Subjunctive of Purpose, that not, lest; after words of fearing, lest, that.

Necesse, 286. Necessary.

Neglegō, ere, lēxi, lēctum. To neglect, disregard.

Negō, āre, āvi, ātum. To deny, refuse; to say not.

Negōtium, ii, n. Business, occupation; negōtium dare, to entrust a task or enterprise.

Nēmō,¹ inis, m. and f. No one, nobody.

Nepōs, ōtis, m. Grandson.

Nēquāquam, adv. By no means. Neque, conj. Neither, nor, and not; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.

Nerviī, ōrum, m. pl. The Nervii, a tribe of northern Gaul.

Nēve, conj. Nor, and not.

Nex, neclis, f. Death, putting to death.

Nihil, indeclinable, nihilum, i, n. Nothing.

Nisi, conj. Unless.

Nōbilis, e. Noble, of high birth. NOBLE.

Nōbilitās, ātis, f. Nobility; the nobility, nobles. NOBILITY.

Noctū, adv. By night.

Nocturnus, a, um. Nocturnal, by night. NOCTURNAL.

Nōlō, nolle, nōlui, 273, 293. To be unwilling, not to be willing, not to wish.

Nōmen, inis, n. Name; suō nōmine, on his own account. NOMINAL.

Nōminō, āre, āvi, ātum. To name. NOMINATE.

Nōn, adv. Not.

Nōndum, adv. Not yet.

Nōnne, conj. Interrogative particle. Not? See 106, 351, note 2.

Nōnnūlli, ae, a. Some.

Nōnnūquam, adv. Sometimes.

Nōnus, a, um. Ninth.

Nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum. To become acquainted with; nōvī, I have become acquainted with = I know.

¹ Nēmō generally wants the Genitive and Ablative; they are supplied by these cases of nūllus.

Noster, tra, trum. 102, 185. *Our, ours.*

Nōtus, a, um, part. and adj. *Known.*

Novem, indeclinable. *Nine; decem novem, nineteen.*

Noviodūnum, i, n. *Noviodunum, a town of northwestern Gaul.*

Novus, a, um. *New; rēs novae, change of affairs, revolution; novissimum agmen, rear.*

Nox, noctis, f. *Night.*

Nūbēs, is, f. *Cloud.*

Nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptum. *To veil one's self; to assume the bridal veil for = to marry.*
NUPTIAL. (Followed by the Dative.)

Nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To bare, expose, strip.*

Nūllus, a, um. 42, 151. *Not any, no, none.*

Num, conj. Interrogative particle. For meaning in direct questions, see 106, 351, 1, note 3; in indirect questions, *whether*.

Numa, ae, m. *Numa, the second of the legendary kings of Rome.*

Numerus, i, m. *Number.*

Nunc, adv. *Now, at this time.*

Nūnquam, adv. *Never.*

Nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To announce.*

Nūntius, ii, m. *Messenger; tidings.*

Nūper, adv. *Recently, of late.*

Nūtrīx, icis, f. *Nurse.*

O.

Ob, prep. w. acc. *On account of, for.*

Obiciō,¹ ere, jēcī, jectum. *To throw against, throw up.* OBJECT.

Observō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To observe, keep, comply with.* OBSERVE.

Obses, idis, m. and f. *Hostage.*

Obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sēssum. *To besiege.*

Obsidiō, ōnis, f. *Siege, blockade.*

Obsignō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To seal, sign and seal.*

Obtineō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To obtain, hold.* OBTAIN.

Occāsus, ūs, m. *Setting; sōlis occāsus, sun-set.*

Occidō, ere, ī, sum. *To kill, slay.*

Occultō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To hide.* OCCULT.

Occupō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To occupy, seize, take possession of; to busy.* OCCUPY.

Ōceanus, i, m. *Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean.*

Octāvus, a, um. *Eighth.* OCTAVE.

Octo, indeclinable. *Eight.*

Octōdecim, indeclinable. *Eighteen.*

Octōdūrus, i, m. *Octodurus, a town of the Veragri, now Martigny.*

Ōdi, isse. 308. *To hate, detest.*

Officium, ii, n. *Duty, allegiance.* OFFICE.

Omniñō, adv. *In all, only.*

Omnis, e. *All.*

¹ Pronounced as if spelled objiciō.

Onerārius, a, um. *Pertaining to burdens, carrying cargoes; onerāria nāvis, a transport vessel, transport.*

Opera, ae, f. *Work; operam dare, to take pains, endeavor.*

Oportet, ēre, uit, impers. *It behooves, is proper, is necessary, is fitting; one ought.*

Oppidum, i, n. *Town.*

Opportūnus, a, um. *Opportune, appropriate. OPPORTUNE.*

Oppugnātiō, ōnis, f. *Assault, attack.*

Oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To assault, attack.*

Optimus, a, um. *See bonus.*

Opus, eris, n. *Work, task; art; operis mūnitiō, fortified work; māgnō opere, greatly.*

Ōra, ae, f. *Coast.*

Ōrātiō, ōnis, f. *Oration, speech. ORATION.*

Ōrātor, ōris, m. *Orator.*

Orbis, is, m. *Circle, circuit; orbis terrae, orbis terrārum, the world. ORB.*

Ōrdō, inis, m. *Rank. ORDER.*

Orgetorix, igis, m. *Orgetorix, an Helvetian chieftain.*

Ōrnāmentum, i, n. *Ornament, honor. ORNAMENT.*

Ōrō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To ask, beg, plead.*

Ostendō, ere, i, tentum or tēsum. *To show, explain, make known, declare.*

P.

Pābulātiō, ōnis, f. *Foraging.*

Pābulum, i, n. *Fodder.*

Paene, adv. *Almost, nearly.*

Paenitet, ēre, uit, impers. *It causes regret; mē paenitet, I repent.*

Pāgus, i, m. *Division, canton.*

Pār, paris. *Equal, a match for.*

Parātus, a, um, part. and adj. *Prepared, ready.*

Parcō, ere, peperci, parsum. *To spare. (Followed by the Dative.)*

Pāreō, ēre, ui, itum. *To obey. (Followed by the Dative.)*

Parō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To prepare.*

Pars, partis, f. *Part, division; quarter, direction. PART.*

Passus, ūs, m. *Pace; mille passus, a (Roman) mile; duo milia passuum, two miles.*

Pāstor, ōris, m. *Shepherd.*

Pater, tris, m. *Father. PATER-NAL.*

Patenter, adv. *Patiently.*

Patior, i, passus sum. *To suffer, permit.*

Patria, ae, f. *Native country, one's country, country.*

Pauci, ae, a. *Few.*

Paucitās, ātis, f. *Fewness, small number.*

Paulātim, adv. *Little by little, by degrees, gradually.*

Paulō, adv. *A little.*

Paulum, adv. *A little, somewhat.*

Pāx, pācis, f. *Peace.*

Pedes, itis, m. *Foot-soldier; pl., foot-soldiers; infantry.*

Peditātus, ūs, m. *Infantry.*

Pedius, ii, m. *Pedius, a lieutenant under Caesar.*

Pellis, is, f. *Skin.*

Pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsum. *To drive, rout.*

- Pendō, ere, pependi, pēsum. *To weigh ; to pay.*
- Per, prep. w. acc. *Through, by, over, by means of ; on account of.*
- Perducō, ere, duxi, ductum. *To lead through, extend, construct.*
- Perequitō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To ride through, ride.*
- Perfacilis, e. *Very easy.*
- Perferō, ferre, tuli, lātum. *To endure.*
- Perficiō, ere, fēci, fectum. *To accomplish. PERFECT.*
- Perfringō, ere, frēgi, frāctum. *To break through.*
- Perfuga, ae, m. *Deserter, fugitive.*
- Perfugiō, ere, fūgi. *To flee for refuge, flee, escape.*
- Periculōsus, a, um. *Perilous, dangerous. PERILOUS.*
- Periculum, i, n. *Peril, danger. PERIL.*
- Peritus, a, um. *Skilful, skilled, expert.*
- Permaneō, ēre, mānsi, māsum. *To continue to remain, to remain. PERMANENT.*
- Permoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtum. *To move, induce, influence ; to disturb, daunt, alarm.*
- Perpetuus, a, um. *Perpetual, endless, uninterrupted ; in perpetuum, for ever. PERPETUAL.*
- Perrumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptum. *To break through, force a passage, force one's way.*
- Persequor, i, secūtus sum. *To follow up, pursue, persecute ; to avenge. PERSECUTE.*
- Perseverō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To persevere, persist. PERSEVERE.*
- Persolvō, ere, i, solūtum. *To pay.*
- Perspiciō, ere, spēxi, spēctum. *To examine, investigate, perceive. PERSPICUOUS.*
- Persuadeō, ēre, si, sum. *To persuade.*
- Perterreō, ēre, ui, itum. *To terrify greatly, terrify, frighten.*
- Pertineō, ēre, ui, tentum. *To pertain, tend ; to extend, reach. PERTAIN.*
- Perturbātiō, ōnis, f. *Disturbance, agitation. PERTURBATION.*
- Perturbō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To disturb, throw into confusion. PERTURB.*
- Pervenīō, ire, vēni, ventum. *To arrive, come, reach.*
- Pēs, pedis, m. *Foot ; pedibus, on foot ; pedem referre, to retreat. PEDAL.*
- Petō, ere, ivi or li, itum. *To seek, request, ask.*
- Phalanx, angis, f. *Phalanx, line.*
- Pilum, i, n. *Javelin, spear.*
- Pisistratus, i, m. *Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.*
- Pisō, ōnis, m. *Piso, a Roman name.*
- Placeō, ere, ui, itum. *To please. (Followed by the Dative.)*
- Plāntiēs, ēi, f. *Plain.*
- Plānus, a, um. *Flat, level. PLANE.*
- Platō, ōnis, m. *Plato, a celebrated Greek philosopher.*
- Plēbs, ēbis, f. *The common people, populace. PLEBEIAN.*
- Plēnus, a, um. *Full.*

- Plērumque, adv.** *As a general thing, generally.*
- Plērusque, aque, umque.** *The larger or greater part, the most.*
- Plūrēs, a.** See **plūs.**
- Plūrimum, adv.** See **plūs.**
- Plūs, plūris, n., pl. plūrēs, plūra, comp. of multus.** *More; several. PLURAL.*
- Plūs, adv., comp. of multum, sup. plūrimum.** *More; plūs pōsse, to have greater power or influence; plūrimum pōsse, to have very great power or influence.*
- Pœna, ae, f.** *Penalty, punishment, satisfaction.*
- Pœta, ae, m.** *Poet.*
- Polliceor, ēri, itus sum.** *To promise.*
- Pompēius, ii, m.** *Pompey, a celebrated general and statesman.*
- Pōns, pontis, m.** *Bridge.*
- Populātiō, ōnis, f.** *Ravaging, devastating, laying waste.*
- Populus, i, m.** *People, a people.*
- Porta, ae, f.** *Gate. PORTAL.*
- Portō, āre, āvi, ātum.** *To carry, bring, take.*
- Portōrium, ii, n.** *Tax, toll, duty on imports or exports.*
- Portus, ūs, m.** *Port, harbor. PORT.*
- Poscō, ere, poposci.** *To demand.*
- Possūm, pōsse, potul. 269, 290.** *To be able; can; multum pōsse, to have great power or influence.*
- Post, adv.** *After, afterward.*
- Post, prep. w. acc.** *After, behind.*
- Posteā, adv.** *Afterward.*
- Posteāquam, conj.** *After.*
- Posterus, a, um, comp. posterior, sup. postrēmus and postumus.** *Subsequent, following, next.*
- Postquam, conj.** *After.*
- Postridiē, adv.** *On the following day.*
- Postulō, āre, āvi, ātum.** *To demand.*
- Potēns, entis.** *Powerful. POTENT.*
- Potentātus, ūs, m.** *Power, dominion, control.*
- Potentia, ae, f.** *Power, influence. POTENCY.*
- Poteram.** See **possum.**
- Potestās, ātis, f.** *Power.*
- Potior, iri, itus sum.** *To gain — take — obtain possession of, to obtain.*
- Potul.** See **possum.**
- Praecēdō, ere, cēssi, cēssum.** *To surpass. PRECEDE.*
- Praecept, ipitis.** *Precipitate, headlong. PRECIPITATE.*
- Praeciplot, ere, cēpi, ceptum.** *To enjoin upon, direct. PRECEPT.*
- Praecipitō, āre, āvi, ātum.** *To precipitate, throw, hurl. PRECIPITATE.*
- Praedicō, āre, āvi, ātum.** *To assert, state. PREDICATE.*
- Praeficiō, ere, fēci, fectum.** *To place in command of, in charge of, over. (Followed by the Dative.)*
- Praemittō, ere, misi, missum.** *To send on — ahead — forward — in advance.*
- Praemium, ii, n.** *Reward. PREMIUM.*
- Praepōnō, ere, posui, positum.** *To place over or in command of. (Followed by the Dative.)*

Praesēns, entis. Present.

Praesentia, ae, f. Presence ; in praesentia, at present, for the present.

Praesidium, ii, n. Garrison, defence, guard, safeguard, protection.

Praestō, āre, stitī, stitum or stātum. To stand before, excel ; to furnish, discharge, fulfil, present, manifest, show, put forth.

Praesum, esse, fui. To be in charge or command of, to superintend. (Followed by the Dative.)

Praeter, prep. w. acc. Except.

Praeterquam, adv. Except.

Praetor, ōris, m. Praetor, a Roman magistrate.

Premō, ere, pressī, pressum. To press, press hard, distress. PRESS.

Pretiōsus, a, um. Precious, valuable. PRECIOUS.

Pretium, ii, n. Price.

Primō, adv. First, at first. PRIME.

Primum, sup. adv., pos. wanting, comp. prius. First. PRIME.

Primus, a, um, sup., pos. wanting, comp. prior. First ; the first part of ; primum agmen, the van ; prima lux, daybreak. PRIME.

Princeps, ipis. First ; princeps, ipis, m., leader, chief, chieftain. PRINCIPAL.

Principātus, ūs, m. Sovereignty, dominion.

Prior, us, comp. adj., pos. wanting, sup. primus. Former.

Pristinus, a, um. Ancient, pristine. PRISTINE.

Prius, comp. adv., pos. wanting, sup. primum. Before, sooner ; prius quam, sooner than, before.

Priusquam, conj. Before.

Privātum, adv. Privately, in a private capacity. PRIVATE.

Privātus, a, um, part and adj. Private ; privātus, i, m., private citizen. PRIVATE.

Privō, āre, āvī, ātum. To deprive.

Prō, prep. w. abl. For ; in proportion to, considering ; before.

Probō, āre, āvī, ātum. To prove ; to approve. PROBATE.

Prōcēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum. To proceed, advance. PROCEED.

Procillus, i, m. Procillus, a prominent Gaul.

Prōditiō, ōnis, f. Treason.

Prōditor, ōris, m. Traitor.

Prōdō, ere, didi, ditum. To betray.

Prōdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum. To lead forth, lead on ; to protract. PRODUCE.

Proellior, āri, ātus sum. To fight.

Proelium, ii, n. Battle, engagement.

Profectiō, ōnis, f. Departure, starting, setting out.

Prōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. To accomplish, effect.

Proficiscor, i, profectus sum. To start, set out, depart, proceed.

Profugiō, ere, fūgī. To flee away, flee, escape.

Prōgredior, i, grēssus sum. To go forward, advance. PROGRESS.

Prohibeō, ēre, ui, itum. *To prohibit, check, prevent, keep.* PROHIBIT.

Prōiciō,¹ ere, jēci, jectum. *To cast forth, throw forward, throw down.* PROJECT.

Prōmissus, a, um, part. and adj. *Hanging down, long.*

Prōnūtiō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To proclaim, state.* PRONOUNCE.

Prope, adv., comp. propius, sup. prōximē. *Near.*

Prope, prep. w. acc. *Near.*

Prōpellō, ere, ulī, ulsum. *To drive forward, repulse, rout.* PROPEL.

Propior, us, comp. adj., pos. want- ing, sup. prōximus. *Nearer.*

Prōponō, ere, posui, positum. *To set forth.* PROPOSE.

Propter, prep. w. acc. *On account of.*

Propterea, adv. *For this reason; propterea quod, for this reason, that; because.*

Prōpulsō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To repulse.*

Prōra, ae, f. *Prow.*

Prōsequor, i, secūtus sum. *To fol- low up, pursue.* PROSECUTE.

Prōspiciō, ere, spēxi, spēctum. *To look forward; to look out for. (Followed by the Dative.)* PROSPECT.

Prōvideō, ēre, vidī, vīsum. *To look out for, provide. (Fol- lowed by the Dative.)* PRO- VIDE.

Prōvincia, ae, f. *Province.*

Prōximē, sup. adv., pos. prope. *Most recently, last.*

Prōximus, a, um, sup. adj., pos. want- ing, comp. propior. *Near- est, next, adjacent.*

Publicus, a, um. *Public.*

Pūblius, ii, m. *Publius, a Ro- man name.*

Pudor, ōris, m. *Shame, respect.*

Puella, ae, f. *Girl.*

Puer, eri, m. *Boy.* PUERILE.

Pūgna, ae, f. *Fight, fighting, battle.*

Pūgnō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To fight.*

Pulcher, chra, chrum. *Beautiful.*

Pulsus, a, um. *See pellō.*

Pulvis, eris, m. *Dust.*

Putō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To think.*

Q.

Quaerō, ere, sivi or sli, situm. *To inquire, ask, seek.* QUEST.

Quam, adv. *How; w. sup., as ... as possible; quam primum, as soon as possible.*

Quam, conj. *Than.*

Quantus, a, um. *How great; as great.*

Quārē, conj. *Wherefore, why.*

Quartus, a, um. *Fourth; quar- tus decimus, fourteenth.*

Quattuor, indeclinable. *Four.*

-Que, conj. enclitic. 103. *And.*

Queror, i, questus sum. *To com- plain.*

Quī, quae, quod. 106, 187. *Who, that, which.*

Quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam. 106, 190. *A certain, a certain one, some.*

Quin, conj. *That not, but, that.*

¹ Pronounced as if spelled *prōjiciō*.

Quindecim, indeclinable. *Fifteen.*

Quingenti, æ, a. *Five hundred.*

Quini, æ, a. 97, 172, 3. *Five by five, five each, five.*

Quinque, indeclinable. *Five.*

Quintus, a, um. *Fifth*; ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs, the 28th day of March.

Quintus, i, m. *Quintus*, a Roman name.

Quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron. 106, 188. *Who, what, which?*

Quis, quae, quid, indef. pron. 106, 190. *One, any one, anything.*

Quisquam, quaequam, quicquam, indef. pron. *Any, anyone.*

Quisque, quaeque, quodque and quidque, indef. pron. *Each, every, each one, every one.*

Quō, adv. *Whither, to which place, to what place.*

Quō, conj. *That; quō minus, that not, so that not.* 327.

Quoad, conj. *Until.*

Quod, conj. *That; because.*

Quoque, adv. *Also.*

Quot, indeclinable. *How many.*

R.

Rapina, æ, f. *Robbery, pillaging.* RAPINE.

Ratiō, ōnis, f. *Reasoning, reason; account, reckoning; method, way.*

Rebelliō, ōnis, f. *Rebellion.*

Receptus, ūs, m. *Retreat.*

Recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptum. *To recover, retake, betake; to re-*

ceive; sē recipere, to retire, return, betake one's self.

Recūsō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To reject.*

Reddō, ere, didi, ditum. *To give back, restore, return.*

Redeō, ire, ii, itum. *To go back, return.*

Redimō, ere, ēmi, emptum. *To buy up, buy, purchase.* REDEEM.

Reditiō, ōnis, f. *Going back, return.*

Reditus, ūs, m. *Return.*

Reducō, ere, duxi, ductum. *To lead back.*

Referō, ferre, rettuli, relatum. *To draw back, bring back; pedem referre, to retreat.*

Reficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To repair.*

Refugiō, ere, fūgi. *To flee back, flee.* REFUGE.

Rēgina, æ, f. *Queen.*

Regiō, ōnis, f. *Direction; region.* REGION.

Rēgnō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To reign, rule.* REIGN.

Rēgnum, i, n. *Kingdom, regal power.* REIGN.

Regō, ere, rēxi, rēctum. *To rule.*

Rēlclō,¹ ere, jēcī, jectum. *To drive back, repulse.* REJECT.

Relinquō, ere, liqui, lictum. *To leave.* RELINQUISH.

Reliquus, a, um. *Remaining, the rest of, the other, left.*

Remaneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsum. *To remain.*

Rēmī, ōrum, m. pl. *The Remi, a tribe of northern Gaul.*

¹ Pronounced as if spelled rējiciō.

Reminiscor, i. *To remember.* **REMINISCENCE.**

Removeō, ēre, mōvi, mōtum. *To remove.*

Rēmus, i, m. *Oar.*

Renovō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To renew.* **RENOVATE.**

Renūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To report.* **RENOUNCE.**

Repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsum. *To drive back, repel, repulse.*

REPEL.

Reperiō, ire, repperi, repertum. *To find, discover.*

Repetō, ere, ivi, or ii, itum. *To seek, exact.* **REPEAT.**

Reportō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To carry back.* **REPORT.**

Rēs, rēi, f. *Thing, affair; reason; rēs militāris, military affairs.*

Resciscō, ere, scivi or scii, scitum. *To learn, ascertain.*

Respiciō, ere, spēxi, spēctum. *To regard, look upon.* **RESPECT.**

Respondeō, ēre, i, spōnsum. *To answer.* **RESPOND.**

Restituō, ere, ui, ūtum. *To restore.* **RESTITUTION.**

Retineō, ēre, ui, tentum. *To retain, keep.* **RETAIN.**

Rettuli. See *referō*.

Revertor, i, reverti, reversum.¹ *To return.* **REVERT.**

Rēx, rēgis, m. *King.* **REGAL.**

Rhēnus, i, m. *The Rhine.*

Rhodanus, i, m. *The Rhone.*

Ripa, ae, f. *Bank.* **RIPARIAN.**

Rōbur, oris, n. *Oak.*

Rogō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To ask.*

Rōma, ae, f. *Rome.*

Rōmānus, a, um. *Roman; Rōmānus*, i, m., *a Roman.*

Rōmulus, i, m. *Romulus*, the legendary founder of Rome.

Rota, ae, f. *Wheel.* **ROTATE.**

Rūmor, ōris, m. *Rumor, report.*

Rūrsus, adv. *Again.*

S.

Sabinus, i, m. *Sabinus*, a lieutenant under Caesar.

Sacrificium, ii, n. *Sacrifice.*

Saepe, adv. *Often.*

Sagitta, ae, f. *Arrow.*

Salūs, ūtis, f. *Safety, salvation, escape.*

Santonēs, um, m. pl. *The Santones* or *Santoni*, a tribe of central Gaul.

Sānus, a, um. *Sound, sane.* **SANE.**

Sapiēns, entis. *Wise.*

Sapienter, adv. *Wisely.*

Sapientia, ae, f. *Wisdom.*

Satis, adv. *Enough; satis habere* or *dūcere*, *to regard it as sufficient.*

Scapha, ae, f. *Skiff, boat.*

Schola, ae, f. *School.*

Scientia, ae, f. *Knowledge, skill.* **SCIENCE.**

Sciō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. *To know.*

Scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum. *To write.* **SCRIBE.**

¹ *Revertor* is deponent in the present system. The other forms are in the active voice.

Secundus, a, um. *Second.*
 Sed, conj. *But.*
 Sēdēs, is, f. *Seat, abode; locus*
ac sēdēs, place of abode. SEAT.
 Sēditiosus, a, um. *Seditious.*
 Segusiāni, ōrum, m. pl. *The Se-*
gusiani, a tribe of southeastern
Gaul.
 Sēmentis, is, f. *Sowing, planting.*
 Semper, adv. *Always, ever.*
 Senātus, ūs, m. *Senate.*
 Sēni, ae, a. 97, 172, 3. *Six by six,*
six each, six.
 Senonēs, um, m. pl. *The Senones,*
a tribe of central Gaul.
 Sententia, ae, f. *Thought, opinion,*
plan. SENTENCE.
 Sentiō, ire, sēnsi, sēnsū. *To*
think. SENSE.
 Septem, indeclinable. *Seven.*
 Septimus, a, um. *Seventh.*
 Sepultūra, ae, f. *Burial. SEPUL-*
TURE.
 Sēquani, ōrum, m. pl. *The Se-*
quani or Sequanians, a tribe of
eastern Gaul.
 Sēquanus, a, um. *Sequanian;*
Sēquanus, i, m., a Sequanian,
one of the Sequani.
 Sequor, i, secūtus sum. *To fol-*
low. SEQUENCE.
 Sermō, ōnis, m. *Discourse, con-*
versation. SERMON.
 Serviō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. *To*
serve, subserve, be devoted to.
SERVE.
 Servitūs, ūtis, f. *Servitude, slav-*
ery. SERVITUDE.
 Servō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To keep,*
preserve.
 Servus, i, m. *Slave. SERVE.*
 Sēsē. See 102, 184, 4.

Seu, conj. *Or if; seu . . . sive,*
either . . . or.
 Severus, a, um. *Severe.*
 Sex, indeclinable. *Six.*
 Sexāgintā, indeclinable. *Sixty.*
 Sextus, a, um. *Sixth.*
 Si, conj. *If.*
 Sicilia, ae, f. *Sicily.*
 Significō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To*
signify, indicate. SIGNIFY.
 Signum, i, n. *Standard; signa*
ferre, to carry the standards =
to advance. SIGN.
 Silva, ae, f. *Wood, forest. SYL-*
VAN.
 Similis, e. *Like. SIMILAR.*
 Simpliciter, adv. *Simply.*
 Simul, simul atque, conj. *As*
soon as.
 Sin, conj. *But if.*
 Sincērē, adv. *Truthfully. SIN-*
CERE.
 Sine, prep. w. abl. *Without.*
 Singulāris, e. *Single, singly, in-*
dividual, separate; singular,
remarkable. SINGULAR.
 Sive, conj. *Or if; sive . . .*
sive, either . . . or.
 Socer, erī, m. *Father-in-law.*
 Sōcratēs, is, m. *Socrates, a cele-*
brated Greek philosopher.
 Sōl, sōlis, m. *Sun.*
 Solum, adv. *Only, alone.*
 Solvō, ere, i, solūtum. *To loose;*
with nāvēs expressed or under-
stood, to set sail. SOLVE.
 Spatium, ii, n. *Space, interval,*
distance; time. SPACE.
 Speciēs, ēi, f. *Look, appearance.*
 Spēs, spēi, f. *Hope.*
 Spiritus, ūs, m. *Breath; pl., airs,*
haughtiness. SPIRIT.

Spoliō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To de-spoil, rob, deprive.* SPOIL.

Spōns, spontis, *f.* *Used in gen. and abl. sing. only.* Sponte, suā sponte, *by one's own agency, by one's self, unassisted.*

Stabilitās, ātis, *f.* *Stability, firmness.* STABILITY.

Statim, *adv.* *Immediately.*

Statiō, ōnis, *f.* *Station, post, guard.* STATION.

Statuō, ere, uī, ūtum. *To determine, decide.*

Stipendium, ii, *n.* *Tax, tribute.* STIPEND.

Stō, āre, steti, stātum. *To stand.*

Streptus, ūs, *m.* *Din, noise.*

Studeō, ēre, uī. *To desire.* STUDY. (Followed by the Dative.)

Studium, ii, *n.* *Desire, zeal.* STUDY.

Sub, *prep. w. acc. and abl.* *Under, up to, towards.*

Subducō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To draw up; to withdraw, lead off.*

Subeō, ire, ii, itum. *To undergo.*

Subiciō,¹ ere, jēci, jectum. *To throw under, cast under, throw, thrust; to subject.* SUBJECT.

Subitō, *adv.* *Suddenly.*

Sublātus, a, um. *See tollō.*

Sublevō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To assist, support.*

Subministrō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To furnish, supply.*

Submittō, ere, misi, missum. *To send up to, send.* SUBMIT.

Submoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtum. *To remove, dislodge.*

Subsequor, i, secūtus sum. *To follow close upon, follow.* SUBSEQUENT.

Subsidium, ii, *n.* *Support, reënforcement, aid.* SUBSIDIARY.

Subsistō, ere, stiti. *To make a stand; audācius subsistere, to make a bolder stand.* SUBSIST.

Subveniō, ire, vēni, ventum. *To come to the help of, succor, aid.*

Succēdō, ere, cēssi, cēssum. *To go up, come up, approach, succeed.* SUCCEED.

Sudēs, is, *f.* *Stake.*

Suēbi, ōrum, *m. pl.* *The Suebi, Sueti or Suabians, a powerful German tribe.*

Suessiōnēs, um, *m. pl.* *The Suessiones, a tribe of northern Gaul.*

Sui. 102, 184. *Of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves, of him, of her, of it, of them.*

Sulla, ae, *m.* *Sulla, a celebrated Roman general and statesman.*

Sulpicius, ii, *m.* *Sulpicius, a lieutenant under Caesar.*

Sum, esse, fui. 140, 204. *To be.*

Summa, ae, *f.* *Sum, sum total, total.* SUM.

Summus, a, um, *sup. of superus.* *Highest, greatest; the summit of, top of.*

Sūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum. *To take.* *See 328, sentence 9.*

Sūmptus, ūs, *m.* *Expense.*

Superbus, a, um. *Proud.* SUPERB.

Superior, us, *comp. of superus.* *Upper, higher; superior; previous.*

¹ Pronounced as if spelled *subjiciō*.

Superō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To surpass; to conquer.*
 Supersum, esse, fui. *To survive.*
 Superus, a, um, comp. superior, sup. suprēmus and summus. *Upper.* See superior and summus.
 Supplicātiō, ōnis, f. *Thanksgiving.*
 Supplicium, ii, n. *Punishment.*
 Suprā, adv. *Above.*
 Suscipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptum. *To take up, undertake.*
 Suspiciō, ōnis, f. *Suspicion.*
 Suspikor, āri, ātus sum. *To suspect.*
 Sustineō, ēre, ui, tentum. *To sustain, resist, withstand.* SUSTAIN.
 Suus, a, um. *His, her, hers, its, their.*

T.

Tabula, ae, f. *Table, tablet, record, document.* TABLE.
 Taceō, ēre, ui, itum. *To be silent, to keep silent.* TACIT.
 Tam, adv. *So, to such an extent.*
 Tamen, adv. *Yet, still, nevertheless.*
 Tamesis, is, m. *Thames.*
 Tametsi, conj. *Although.*
 Tantus, a, um. *So great; as great.*
 Tardō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To retard, check, hinder, impede.* TARDY.
 Tēlum, i, n. *Dart, weapon.*
 Temerārius, a, um. *Rash.*
 Temere, adv. *Rashly, unnecessarily.*

Temperantia, ae, f. *Temperance, self-control.* TEMPERANCE.
 Tempestās, ātis, f. *Weather; tempest, storm.* TEMPEST.
 Templum, i, n. *Temple.*
 Tempus, oris, n. *Time.*
 Teneō, ēre, ui, tentum. *To hold.*
 Tentō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To try.*
 Tenuis, e. *Thin; feeble.*
 Tergum, i, n. *Back; terga vertere, to turn the back = to retreat, flee.*
 Terra, ae, f. *Earth; land.*
 Terreō, ēre, ui, itum. *To terrify, frighten.* TERROR.
 Terror, ōris, m. *Terror, dread.*
 Tertius, a, um. *Third.*
 Testāmentum, i, n. *Will.* TESTAMENT.
 Testis, is, m. and f. *Witness.*
 Tigurinus, i, m. *Tigurinus, one of the four cantons of the Helvetii.*
 Timeō, ēre, ui. *To fear.* TIMID.
 Timor, ōris, m. *Fear.* TIMID.
 Titūrius, ii, m. *Titurius, a lieutenant under Caesar.*
 Titus, i, m. *Titus, a Roman name.*
 Tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātum. *To lift up; to remove, take away; to exalt, encourage.*
 Tolōsa, ae, f. *Tolosa, a town in southern Gaul.*
 Tormentum, i, n. *A military engine for throwing heavy missiles.*
 Tōtus, a, um. 42, 151. *All, the whole of.* TOTAL.
 Trādō, ere, didi, ditum. *To give up, surrender.* TRADITION.
 Trāgula, ae, f. *Javelin, dart.*

Trājectus, ūs, m. *Passage, crossing.*
 Trānō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To swim across.*
 Trāns, prep. w. acc. *Across, over, beyond.*
 Trānsducō, ere, duxi, ductum. *To lead across, lead, conduct.*
 Trānseō, ire, ii, itum. *To go over, cross.* TRANSIT.
 Trānsiciō,¹ ere, jēci, jectum. *To pierce, transact.*
 Trānsportō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To carry over, take over, bring over, transport.* TRANSPORT.
 Trēs, tria. 97, 175. *Three.*
 Trēveri, ōrum, m. pl. *The Treveri, a tribe of northeastern Gaul.*
 Tribūnus, i, m. *Tribune, one of the six principal officers of the legion.*
 Triduum, i, n. *Three days, space of three days.*
 Trigintā, indeclinable. *Thirty.*
 Trinī, ae, a. 97, 172, 3. *Three by three, three each, threefold, triple, three.*
 Triplex, icis. *Threefold, triple.* TRIPLE.
 Tū, tui. 102, 184. *Thou, you.*
 Tullia, ae, f. *Tullia, a Roman name.*
 Tum, adv. *Then.*
 Turma, ae, f. *Troop.*
 Turris, is, f. *Tower.*
 Tūtō, adv. *Safely.*
 Tūtus, a, um. *Safe.*
 Tuus, a, um. 102, 185. *Thy, thine, your, yours.*
 Tyrannus, i, m. *Tyrant.*

U.

Ubi, adv. and conj. *Where; when.*
 Ubii, ōrum, m. pl. *The Ubii, a tribe of western Germany.*
 Ulciscor, i, ultus sum. *To take vengeance on, punish; to avenge.*
 Ūllus, a, um. 42, 151. *Any, any one.*
 Ūltior, us, comp. adj. 86, 166. *Farther; Gallia Ūltior, Farther Gaul, Transalpine Gaul.*
 Ūnā, adv. *Together.*
 Unde, adv. *Whence, from which place, from which.*
 Ūndecimus, a, um. *Eleventh.*
 Undique, adv. *On every side, on all sides; from every side, from all sides.*
 Ūniversus, a, um. *All, all together.* UNIVERSE.
 Ūnquam, adv. *Ever, at any time.*
 Ūnus, a, um. 97, 175. *One, single.* UNIT.
 Urbs, urbis, f. *City.* URBANE.
 Usipetēs, um, m. pl. *The Usipetes, a tribe of northwestern Germany.*
 Usque, adv. *Even.*
 Ūsus, ūs, m. *Use, usage, experience; advantage.* USE.
 Ut, uti, conj. *That, in order that.*
 Ut, adv. *As.*
 Uter, tra, trum. 42, 151. *Which (of two).*
 Uterque, utraque, utrumque, *inflected like uter. Each; both.*
 Ūtilis, e. *Useful.* UTILITY.

¹ Pronounced as if spelled trānsjiciō.

Ūtillās, ātis, *f.* *Usefulness; interest, expediency.* UTILITY.
 Utinam, interj. *O that! would that!*
 Ūtor, ī, ūsus sum. *To use.*
 Utrum, conj. *Whether; utrum . . . an, whether . . . or.*
 Uxor, ōris, *f.* *Wife.*

V.

Vacō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To be without, be free from; to be vacant, empty, unoccupied.* VACATE.
 Vacuus, a, um. *Vacant, empty, deserted, abandoned.*
 Vadum, ī, *n.* *Ford; shoal.*
 Valeō, ēre, uī, itum. *To avail, prevail, have force or influence.*
 Vallum, ī, *n.* *Rampart.*
 Vastō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To lay waste.*
 -Ve, conj. *enclitic.*¹ *Or.*
 Vectigal, ālis, *n.* *Tax; revenue.*
 Vel, conj. *Either; or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or.*
 Vellem. *See volō.*
 Venetī, ōrum, *m. pl.* *The Venetī, a tribe of western Gaul.*
 Venetia, ae, *f.* *Venetia, the country of the Venetī.*
 Veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum. *To come, arrive.*
 Ventus, ī, *m.* *Wind.*
 Vēr, vēris, *n.* *Spring.* VER-
 NAL.
 Veragrī, ōrum, *m. pl.* *The Veragrī, a tribe of southeastern Gaul.*
 Verbigēnus, ī, *m.* *Verbigēnus,*

one of the four cantons of the Helvetii.
 Verbum, ī, *n.* *Word.* VERB.
 Vercingetorix, igis, *m.* *Vercingetorix, a Gallic chieftain.*
 Vergobretus, ī, *m.* *Vergobretus, the title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.*
 Vērō, *adv. and conj.* *In truth, indeed; but.*
 Versor, āri, ātus sum. *To be busied, occupied, engaged.*
 VERSED.
 Vertō, ere, ī, sum. *To turn; terga vertere, to turn the back = to retreat, flee.*
 Vērūm, ī, *n.* *Truth.*
 Vērus, a, um. *True.*
 Vesontiō, ōnis, *m.* *Vesontio, a town in eastern Gaul, now Besançon.*
 Vesper, erī, *m.* *Evening.*
 Vester, tra, trum. 102, 185. *Your, yours.*
 Vēstiō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. *To clothe.*
 Veterānus, a, um. *Veteran.*
 Vetus, eris. *Old, ancient; former.*
 Via, ac, *f.* *Way.*
 Viātor, ōris, *m.* *Traveller.*
 Vicis, *gen., nom.* *wanting, f. Turn; in vicem, in turn.*
 Victor, ōris, *m.* *Conqueror.*
 Victōria, ae, *f.* *Victory.*
 Victōria, ae, *f.* *Victoria.*
 Vicus, ī, *m.* *Village.*
 Videō, ēre, vidī, visum. *To see.*
 Videor, ēri, visus sum.² *To seem.*
 Vigilia, ae, *f.* *Watch.*³ VIGIL.
 Viginti, *indeclinable.* *Twenty.*

¹ See 103, foot-note 2.² See 274.³ See 278.

Vinciō, ire, vinxi, vinctum. *To bind, confine.*

Vincō, ere, vici, victum. *To conquer.*

Vinculum, i, n. *Fetter, bond, chain.*

Vindex, icis, m. and f. *Defender.*

Vir, viri, m. *Man.*

Virgō, inis, f. *Maiden.* VIRGIN.

Virtūs, ūtis, f. *Virtue, valor, courage, bravery.* VIRTUE.

Vis, vis, f. *Force, violence; vim facere, to use violence; virēs, ium, pl., strength.*

Visus, a, um. *See videō.*

Vita, ae, f. *Life.* VITAL.

Vitō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To avoid, shun.*

Vitrum, i, n. *Woad, a plant used for dyeing blue.*

Vivō, ere, vixi, victum. *To live.*

Vocō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To call, summon.*

Volō, velle, volui. 273, 293. *To wish, to be willing.*

Voluntās, ātis, f. *Wish, goodwill, consent.* VOLUNTARY.

Volusēnus, i, m. *Volusenus, an officer in Caesar's army.*

Vōx, vōcis, f. *Voice, utterance.* VOICE.

Vulgō, adv. *Commonly, as a general thing, universally.*

Vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To wound.*

Vulnus, eris, n. *Wound.*

Vultus. *See volō.*

Vultus, ūs, m. *Countenance, face; vultum fingere, to control the countenance.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

A. See page 18, foot-note 4.

Able, to be able. *Possum, pōsse, potuī.* 269, 290.

About, concerning. *Dē*, prep. w. abl. About, around, *circum*, prep. w. acc.

Above. *Suprā*, adv.

Acceptable. *Grātus, a, um; acceptus, a, um.*

Accomplish. *Perficiō, ere, fecī, sectum; cōficiō, ere, fecī, sec-tum.*

Accordance, in accordance with. Often expressed by the Ablative. 158, 413.

Accuse. *Accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum; insimulō, āre, āvī, ātum.* 285, 400.

Across, over, a bridge across or over a river. *In*, prep. w. abl. To lead across, *trānsdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum.* See 275, sentence 19.

Adopt. *Capiō, ere, cēpī, captum; ineō, ire, īī, itum.*

Advise. *Moneō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Aedul. *Aedui, ōrum, m. pl.*

Affair. *Rēs, rēī, f.; military af-fairs, rēs militāris.*

After. *Post*, adv.; *posteaquam, postquam*, conj. 337, 518.

Against. *Contrā*, prep. w. acc.; *in*, prep. w. acc.; to wage against, *inferō, ferre, intulī, illātum.*

Ahead, to send ahead. *Prae-mittō, ere, misī, missum.*

Aid. *Auxilium, īī, n.* To aid, *juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum.*

All. *Omnis, e; tōtus, a, um, 42, 151; universus, a, um; on all sides, undique.*

Alone. *Solum*, adv.

Already. *Jam*, adv.

Also. *Etiam*, adv. and conj.; *quoque*, adv.

Although. *Etsi, tametsi*, conj. 254, 515.

Always. *Semper*, adv.

Ambassador. *Lēgātus, īī, m.*

Among. *Apud*, prep. w. acc.; *in*, prep. w. acc. and abl.

An. See page 18, foot-note 4.

Ancient. *Pristinus, a, um; an-tiquus, a, um.*

And. *Et; que, 103; atque, ac; conj.*

Animal. *Animal, ālis, n.*

Announce. *Nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Answer. *Respondeō, ēre, i, spōnsum.*

Any. *Ūllus, a, um, 42, 151; anything, n. of quis or aliquis, 106, 190.*

Appoint. *Indicō, ere, dixi, dictum.*

Approach. *Adventus, ūs, m. To approach, succēdō, ere, cēssi, cēssum.*

Approve. *Probō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Aquitani. *Aquitāni, ōrum, m. pl.*

Arar. *Arar, aris, m. 128*

Arlovistus. *Arlovistus, i, m.*

Arms. *Arma, ōrum, n. pl.*

Army. *Exercitus, ūs, m.*

Arouse. *Excitō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Arrival. *Adventus, ūs, m.*

Arrogance. *Arrogantia, ae, f.*

Art, work. *Opus, eris, n.*

Artemisia. *Artemisia, ae, f.*

As. *Ut; as not to, ut nōn, 123, 500; as soon as, simul, simul atque, conj. 337, 518.*

Ascend. *Ascendō, ere, i, scēsum.*

Ascertain. *Cōgnōscō, ere, nōvi, nītum.*

Ask. *Rogō, āre, āvi, ātum; to ask for, rogō.*

Assail. *Aggredior, i, grēssus sum.*

Assault. *Oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Assemble, come together. *Conveniō, ire, vēni, ventum.*

Assist. *Juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtum.*

Assure. *Cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

At. *Ad, prep. w. acc.; in, prep. w. abl.; often expressed by the Locative or by the Locative Ablative, 185, 425; at length, dēnum, adv.*

Attack. *Impetus, ūs, m. To attack, oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātum; aggredior, i, grēssus sum.*

Attempt. *Cōnātus, ūs, m. To attempt, cōnor, āri, ātus sum.*

Audacity. *Audācia, ae, f.*

Authority. *Auctōritās, ātis, f.*

Avail. *Valeō, ēre, ui, itum.*

Avoid. *Vitō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Avenge. *Persequor, i, secūtus sum.*

Awail. *Exspēctō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

B.

Back, to lead back. *Redūcō, ere, duxi, ductum; to drive back, repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum; repulsō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Band. *Manus, ūs, f.*

Bank. *Ripa, ae, f.*

Barbarian. *Barbarus, i, m.*

Barbarous. *Barbarus, a, um.*

Battle. *Proelium, ii, n.; pūgna, ae, f.; line of battle, aciēs, ēi, f.; a battle takes place, pūgnātur.*

Be. *Sum, esse, fui, 140, 204; to be able, possum, pōsse, potuī, 269, 290; to be eager, ārdeō, ēre, ārsi, ārsus; to be free from, vacō, āre, āvi, ātum; to be from, to be distant from, absum, abesse, āfui; to be greatly pleased with, adamō, āre, āvi, ātum; to be in command of, praesum, esse, fui; to be silent, taceō, ēre, ui, itum; to be unwilling, nōlō, nolle, nōlui, 273, 293; to be well supplied, abundō, āre, āvi, ātum; to be willing, volō, velle, voluī, 273, 293.*

Bear. *Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.*
269, 292.

Beautiful. *Pulcher, chra, chrum.*

Because. *Quod, conj.* 334, 516.

Before. *Ante, adv., and prep.*
w. acc.; *prō, prep.* w. abl.;
antequam, priusquam, conj.
341, 520.

Beg. *Ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum; rogō,*
āre, āvī, ātum.

Beginning. *Initium, īī, n.*

Behind. *Post, prep.* w. acc.

Belgae, Belgians. *Belgae, ārum,*
m. pl.

Believe. *Crēdō, ere, didī, ditum.*
(Followed by the Dative of the
person.)

Besiege. *Obseidō, ēre, sēdī, sēs-*
sum.

Betake one's self. *Sē mandō,*
āre, āvī, ātum; sē recipiō, ere,
cēpī, ceptum.

Beyond, across. *Trāns, prep.* w.
acc.

Bid. *Liceor, ērī, itus sum.*

Bird. *Avīs, is, f.*

Bituriges. *Biturigēs, um, m. pl.*

Blame. *Culpa, ae, f.*

Book. *Liber, brī, m.*

Boundary, natural boundaries.
Nātūra loci.

Boy. *Puer, erī, m.*

Brave. *Fortis, e.*

Bravely. *Fortiter, adv.*

Bravery. *Virtūs, ūtis, f.*

Bridge. *Pōns, pontis, m.*

Bring. *Portō, āre, āvī, ātum;*
to bring over, *transportō, āre,*
āvī, ātum; to bring to an end,
cōnflciō, ere, fecī, sectum.

Britons. *Britannī, ōrum, m. pl.*

Brother. *Frāter, tris, m.*

Build. *Aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum;*
to make, *faciō, ere, fecī, fac-*
tum.

Burn. *Exūrō, ere, ūssi, ūstum;*
combūrō, ere, ūssi, ūstum; to
set on fire, *incendō, ere, ī, cēn-*
sum.

But. *Autem, conj.,* see foot-note,
p. 316; *sed, conj.*

Buy up. *Redimō, ere, emī, emp-*
tum.

By. *Ā, ab, prep.* w. abl.; often
expressed by the Ablative alone;
78, 420; by far, *longē, multō,*
adv.

C.

Caesar. *Caesar, aris, m.*

Calamity. *Calamitās, ātis, f.*

Call, name. *Appellō, āre, āvī,*
ātum; *nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum;*
to call together, *convocō, āre,*
āvī, ātum.

Camp. *Castra, ōrum, n. pl.*

Can. *Possum, pōsse, potuī.* 269,
290.

Canton. *Pāgus, ī, m.*

Captive. *Captivus, ī, m.*

Carry, take. *Portō, āre, āvī, ātum;*
to bear, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum;*
to carry over, *transportō, āre,*
āvī, ātum.

Carthage. *Karthāgō, inis, f.*

Cassius. *Cassius, īī, m.*

Cause. *Causa, ae, f.*

Celts. *Celtae, ārum, m. pl.*

Censure. *Accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Centurion. *Centuriō, ōnis, m.*

Check. *Tardō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Chief. *Princeps, ipis; summus,*
a, um; a chief, chieftain, prin-
ceps, ipis, m.

Cicero. *Cicerō, ōnis, m.*
 Citizen. *Civis, is, m.*
 City. *Urbs, urbis, f.*
 Civilization. *Hūmānitās, ātis, f.*
 Civilized. *Hūmānus, a, um.*
 Close. *Claudō, ere, si, sum.*
 Clothe. *Vēstiō, ire, iui or ii, itum.*
 Cloud. *Nūbēs, is, f.*
 Collect. *Cōgō, ere, coēgi, coāctum.*
 Come. *Veniō, ire, vēni, ventum.*
 Command. *Jubeō, ēre, jūssi, jūsum; imperō, āre, āvi, ātum; to be in command, praesum, esse, fui; to place in command, praeficiō, ere, feci, sectum; under one's command, dux in Ablative Absolute.*
 Commander. *Imperātor, ōris, m.*
 Commit. *Admittō, ere, misi, missum.*
 Companion. *Comes, itis, m. and f.*
 Compel. *Cōgō, ere, coēgi, coāctum.*
 Concerning. *Dē, prep. w. abl.*
 Conduct. *Dēducō, ere, duxi, ductum.*
 Confidence. *Fidēs, ēi, f.*
 Congratulate. *Grātulor, āri, ātus sum. (Followed by the Dative.)*
 Conquer. *Superō, āre, āvi, ātum; vincō, ere, vici, victum.*
 Conqueror. *Victor, ōris, m.*
 Consider, think. *Putō, āre, āvi, ātum; arbitror, āri, ātus sum; existimō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
 Conspire. *Conjūrō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
 Consul. *Cōsul, ulis, m.*
 Consult. *Cōsulō, ere, ui, sultum.*

Contented. *Contentus, a, um.*
 Continually. *Continenter, adv.*
 Contrary to. *Contrā, prep. w. acc.*
 Convention. *Conventus, ūs, m.*
 Conversation. *Sermō, ōnis, m.*
 Council. *Concilium, ii, n.; conventus, ūs, m.*
 Counsel. *Cōsilium, ii, n.*
 Country. *Terra, ae, f.; fields, agri, ōrum, m. pl.; one's country, native country, patria, ae, f.*
 Courage. *Virtūs, ūtis, f.*
 Crassus. *Crassus, i, m.*
 Crime. *Facinus, oris, n.*
 Cross. *Trāseō, ire, ti, itum.*
 Crown. *Corōna, ae, f.*
 Custom. *Mōs, mōris, m.*
 Cut off. *Intercludō, ere, si, sum.*

D.

Daily. *Cotidiē, adv.*
 Danger. *Periculum, i, n.*
 Dare. *Audeō, ēre, ausus sum. See 259, cōfido.*
 Dart. *Tēlum, i, n.*
 Daughter. *Filia, ae, f.*
 Daunt. *Perterreō, ēre, ui, itum.*
 Day. *Diēs, ēi, m. and f.*
 Daybreak. *Prima lūx.*
 Daylight. *Lūx, lūcis, f.*
 Dear. *Cārus, a, um.*
 Death. *Mors, mortis, f.; to put to death, interficiō, ere, feci, sectum.*
 Decide. *Cōstituō, ere, ui, ūtum; statuō, ere, ui, ūtum.*
 Defeat. *Superō, āre, āvi, ātum; vincō, ere, vici, victum.*
 Defence, in defence of. *Prō, prep. w. abl.*

Defend. *Dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsum.*
 Deliberate. *Dēliberō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Deliberation. Gerund of *dēliberō.*
 Delight. *Dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Demand. *Postulō, āre, āvī, ātum; flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Deserter. *Fugitivus, ī, m.*
 Deservedly. *Meritō, adv.*
 Desire. *Studium, īi, n.* To desire, *studeō, ēre, uī* (followed by the Dative); *cupiō, ere, iōi* or *īi, itum.*
 Desirous. *Cupidus, a, um.*
 Detain. *Dētineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*
 Deter. *Dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum.*
 Determine. *Cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtum.*
 Detest. *Ōdī, isse.* See 308.
 Devastate. *Vastō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Difficulty. *Difficultās, ātis, f.*
 Diminish. *Dēminuō, ere, ī, ūtum.*
 Direction. *Pars, partis, f.*
 Disposition. *Animus, ī, m.*
 Distant, to be distant. *Absum, esse, āfui.*
 Distress. *Premō, ere, pressī, pressum.*
 Disturb. *Perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum; commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum.*
 Divide. *Dividō, ere, visī, visum.*
 Divine. *Divinus, a, um.*
 Division. *Pars, partis, f.*
 Divitiacus. *Divitiacus, ī, m.*
 Do. *Faciō, ere, fēcī, factum; gerō, ere, gessi, gestum.*
 Double. *Duplex, icis.*
 Doubt. *Dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Draw up. *Instruō, ere, strūxi, strūctum.*

Drive back. *Repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum;* to drive out, *ēiciō, ere, jēcī, jectum.*
 Druids. *Druidēs, um, m. pl.*
 Dumnorix. *Dumnorix, igis, m.*
 During. Usually expressed by the Accusative. 98, 379.
 Dwell. *Incolō, ere, uī, cultum; habitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

E.

Each. *Uterque, traque, trumque,* inflected like *uter*, 42, 151; with each other, *inter sē.*
 Eager, to be eager. *Ardeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum.*
 Easily. *Facile, adv.*
 Easy. *Facilis, e;* very easy, *perfacilis, e.*
 Eight. *Octo, indeclinable.*
 Eighth. *Octāvus, a, um.*
 Either. *Aut, conj.;* either . . . or, *aut . . . aut.*
 Embassy. *Lēgatiō, ōnis, f.*
 Enclose. *Contineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*
 End, to bring to an end. *Cōficiō, ere, fēcī, factum.*
 Endure. *Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.* 269, 292.
 Enemy. *Hostis, is, m. and f.; inimicus, ī, m.* See 296.
 Enervate. *Effeminō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Enlist, enrol. *Cōscribō, ere, scripsī, scriptum.*
 Entangled. *Impeditus, a, um.*
 Establish. *Cōfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Even. *Etiam, adv.*
 Ever, always. *Semper, adv.*

Excellently. *Ēgregiē*, adv.
 Except. *Praeterquam*, adv. See 279, sentence 17.

Exchange. *Inter sē dō, dare, dedī, datum*.

Exile. *Exsul, ulis, m. and f.*

Expect. *Exspectō, āre, avi, ātum*.

Expense. *Sumptus, ūs, m.*

Experience. *Ūsus, ūs, m.*

Explore. *Explorō, āre, avi, ātum*.

Expose. *Nūdō, āre, avi, ātum*.

F.

Faithful. *Fidus, a, um; fidēlis, e.*

False. *Falsus, a, um.*

Far. *Longē*, adv.

Father. *Pater, tris, m.*

Father-in-law. *Socer, eri, m.*

Favor. *Grātia, ae, f.* To favor, *faveō, ēre, favi, fautum*. (Followed by the Dative.)

Fear. *Timor, ōris, m.* To fear, *timeō, ēre, ui*.

Fertile. *Fertilis, e.*

Fertility. *Fertilitās, ātis, f.*

Few. *Pauci, ae, a.*

Field. *Ager, gri, m.*

Fierce. *Ferus, a, um.*

Fifth. *Quintus, a, um.*

Fight. *Pugnō, āre, avi, ātum*; fighting goes on, *pugnatur*; 281, 301.

Fill. *Compleō, ēre, evi, ētum*.

Find. *Reperiō, īre, repperi, repperitum*.

Finish. *Cōficiō, ere, feci, secutum*.

Fire. *Ignis, is, m*; to set on fire, *incendō, ere, i, cēsum*.

First. *Primus, a, um.*

Five. *Quinque*, indeclinable.

Flight. *Fuga, ae, f.*

Flow. *Fluō, ere, fluxi, fluxum*.

Foe. *Inimicus, i, m.*

Follow. *Sequor, i, secutus sum*.

Foot. *Pēs, pedis, m.*

Foot-soldier. *Pedes, itis, m.*

For. *Prō*, prep. w. abl.; *ad*, prep. w. acc.; for, on account of, *ob*, prep. w. acc.; for is often expressed by the Dative, 54, 384; for, during, *per*, prep. w. acc.; often expressed by the Accusative alone, 98, 379; to ask for, *rogō, āre, avi, ātum*; to wait for, *exspectō, āre, avi, ātum*.

Force. *Cōgō, ere, coēgi, coactum*.

Forced marches. *Magna itinera*.

Forces. *Cōpiae, ārum, f. pl.*

Forest. *Silva, ae, f.*

Form line of battle. *Acie m instruō, ere, struxi, structum*.

Formerly. *Anteā*, adv.

Forth, to go forth. *Exeō, īre, ii, itum*; to lead forth, *educō, ere, duxi, ductum*.

Fortification. *Munitiō, ōnis, f.*

Fortify. *Muniō, īre, iui or ii, itum*.

Fortune. *Fortuna, ae, f.*

Forward, to send forward. *Praemittō, ere, misi, missum*.

Fourteenth. *Quartus decimus, quarta decima, quantum decimum*.

Free. *Liber, era, erum*; to be free from, *vacō, āre, avi, ātum*. To free, *liberō, āre, avi, ātum*.

Freedom. *Libertās, ātis, f.*

Frequent. *Crēber, bra, drum*.

Frequently. *Saepe*, adv.

Friend. *Amicus, i, m.*

Friendly. *Amicus, a, um*.

Friendship. *Amicitia*, *ae*, *f*.
 From. *Ā*, *ab*, *dē*, prep. w. *abl*.;
 to be distant from, *absum*, *esse*,
āfui.
 Front, in front of. *Prō*, prep. w.
abl.
 Future. *Reliquum tempus*; for
 the future, in future, in *reli-*
quum tempus.

G.

Galba. *Galba*, *ae*, *m*.
 Garrison. *Praesidium*, *iī*, *n*.
 Gate. *Porta*, *ae*, *f*.
 Gaul, the country. *Gallia*, *ae*, *f*.
 Gaul, a Gaul, *Gallus*, *i*, *m*.
 Gem. *Gemma*, *ae*, *f*.
 General. *Imperātor*, *ōris*, *m*.
 Geneva. *Genēva*, *ae*, *f*.
 German. *Germānus*, *i*, *m*.
 Gift. *Dōnum*, *i*, *n*.
 Girl. *Puella*, *ae*, *f*.
 Give. *Dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datum*;
 to give up, *trādō*, *ere*, *didī*,
ditum; *reddō*, *ere*, *didī*, *ditum*.
 Glory. *Glōria*, *ae*, *f*.
 Go. *Eō*, *ire*, *ivī* or *iī*, *itum*, **277**,
295; to go forth, *exeō*, *ire*, *iī*,
itum; fighting goes on, *pūgnā-*
tur, **281**, **301**.
 Gold. *Aurum*, *i*, *n*.
 Golden, gold. *Aureus*, *a*, *um*.
 Good. *Bonus*, *a*, *um*, *comp*.
melior, *sup*. *optimus*.
 Grain. *Frūmentum*, *i*, *n*.
 Grandson. *Nepōs*, *ōtis*, *m*.
 Great. *Māgnus*, *a*, *um*; so great,
tantus, *a*, *um*.
 Greatly, to be greatly pleased
 with. *Adamō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
 Greece. *Graecia*, *ae*, *f*.

Greek. *Graecus*, *a*, *um*; a Greek,
Graecus, *i*, *m*.
 Grief. *Dolor*, *ōris*, *m*.
 Guard. *Custōdiō*, *ire*, *ivī* or *iī*,
itum.
 Guest. *Hospes*, *itis*, *m*. and *f*.

H.

Hand. *Manus*, *ūs*, *f*.
 Happen. *Fiō*, *fierī*, *factus sum*.
277, **294**.
 Happily. *Fēliciter*, *adv*.
 Harbor. *Portus*, *ūs*, *m*.
 Harm. *Malefīcium*, *iī*, *n*.
 Hasten. *Contendō*, *ere*, *uī*, *ātum*;
mātūrō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
 Have. *Habeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*; to
 have power, *possum*, *pōsse*,
potuī, **269**, **290**; to have to,
 often expressed by the Gerund-
ive, **266**, **234**.
 He. *Is*, *ea*, *id*; *ille*, *illa*, *illud*;
hīc, *haec*, *hōc*; **102**, **186**; often
 only implied in the ending of
 the verb.
 Hear. *Audiō*, *ire*, *ivī* or *iī*, *itum*.
 Height. *Altitudō*, *inis*, *f*.
 Help. *Auxilium*, *iī*, *n*. To help,
juvō, *āre*, *juvī*, *jūtum*.
 Helvetii. *Helvētīi*, *ōrum*, *m*. *pl*.
 Hesitate. *Dubitō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
 High. *Altus*, *a*, *um*.
 Hill. *Collis*, *is*, *m*.
 Himself. *Suī*, **102**, **184**; *ipse*, *a*,
um, **102**, **186**.
 His. *Suus*, *a*, *um*; sometimes ex-
 pressed by the genitive of *is* or
ille; sometimes not expressed
 in Latin.
 Hold. *Teneō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *tentum*; to
 regard, *habeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*.

Home. *Domus*, ūs, f.; at home, *domi*, 185, 426; homeward, home, *domum*, 277, 380.

Honor, ornament. *Ōrnāmentum*, i, n.

Hope. *Spēs*, spēi, f.

Horse. *Equus*, i, m.

Horseman. *Eques*, itis, m.

Hostage. *Obses*, idis, m. and f.

Hour. *Hōra*, ae, f.

How. *Quā*, adv.; how large, *quantus*, a, um; how many, quot, indeclinable.

Hundred. *Centum*, indeclinable.

Hurl. *Cōiciō*, ere, jēcī, jectum.

I.

I. *Ego*, mei. 102, 184.

If. *Si*, conj. 250, 507.

Implore. *Implōrō*, āre, āvī, ātum.

Import. *Importō*, āre, āvī, ātum.

In. *In*, prep. w. acc. and abl.; in front of, *prō*, prep. w. abl.; in regard to, *dē*, prep. w. abl.; in the vicinity of, *ad*, *apud*, *circum*, prep. w. acc.; to plead in chains, *ex vinculis*; in such a way, *ita*, adv.

Incessantly. *Continenter*, adv.

Inflct. *Inferō*, ferre, intulī, illātum; to inflict punishment, *sūmō*, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum; see 328, sentence 9; literally, to take punishment.

Inform. *Certiōrem factō*, ere, fēcī, factum; to be informed, *certior fieri*.

Inhabit. *Incolō*, ere, uī, cultum; habitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Inhabitant. *Is qui incolit*, literally, he who inhabits.

Inquire. *Quaerō*, ere, sivi or sii, situm.

Intend. *In animō esse*, w. Dative; I intend, *mihi in animō est*; to intend is often expressed by the future active participle, 266, 233.

Intention, it is my intention. *Mihi in animō est*.

Interest, to be for one's interest. *Interest, esse, fuit*. 281, 301.

Interior of. *Interior, us*, in agreement with noun.

Into. *In*, prep. w. acc.

Island. *Insula*, ae, f.

It. *Is, ea, id*; *ille, a, ud*; *hic, haec, hōc*; 102, 186; often only implied in the ending of the verb.

Italy. *Italia*, ae, f.

Its. *Suus, a, um*; sometimes expressed by the genitive of *is* or *ille*; sometimes not expressed in Latin.

J.

Judge. *Jūdex, icis*, m. and f. To judge, *jūdicō*, āre, āvī, ātum.

Justice. *Jūstitia*, ae, f.

K.

Keep. *Teneō*, ēre, uī, tentum; contineō, ēre, uī, tentum; retineō, ēre, uī, tentum; habeo, ēre, uī, itum; to prevent, prohibeo, ēre, uī, itum.

Kent. *Cantium*, īi, n.

King. *Rēx, rēgis*, m.

Know. *Sciō*, īre, ivi or ii, itum; intellegō, ere, lēxi, lēctum.

Knowledge. *Scientia*, ae, f.

L.

- Lake. *Lacus*, ūs, m.
 Land. *Terra*, ae, f.; lands, fields, *agri*, ōrum, m. pl.
 Large. *Magnus*, a, um, comp. *mājor*, sup. *māximus*; how large, *quantus*, a, um.
 Last, nearest. *Prōximus*, a, um.
 Latinus. *Latinus*, i, m.
 Lavinia. *Lāvinia*, ae, f.
 Law. *Lēx*, *lēgis*, f.
 Lay waste. *Vastō*, āre, āvi, ātum.
 Lead. *Dūcō*, ere, *duxī*, *ductum*; to lead across, *trānsdūcō*, ere, *duxī*, *ductum*; to lead back, *redūcō*, ere, *duxī*, *ductum*; to lead out, *ēdūcō*, ere, *duxī*, *ductum*.
 Leader. *Princeps*, *ip̄is*, m. and f.; *dux*, *ducis*, m. and f.
 Learning. *Dōctrina*, ae, f.
 Leave. *Relinquō*, ere, *liquī*, *lictum*.
 Legion. *Legiō*, ōnis, f.
 Lemannus. *Lemannus*, i, m.
 Length, at length. *Dēmum*, adv.
 Letter of the alphabet. *Littera*, ae, f.; letter, epistle, *epistula*, ae, f.; *litterae*, ārum, f. pl.
 Liberty. *Libertās*, ātis, f.
 Lieutenant. *Lēgātus*, i, m.
 Life. *Vita*, ae, f.
 Like very much. *Adamō*, āre, āvi, ātum.
 Line. *Acies*, ēi, f.; line of battle, *acies*; line of march, *agmen*, *inis*, n.
 Listen to. *Audiō*, ire, *ivī* or *īi*, *itum*.
 Live. *Vivō*, ere, *vixī*, *victum*.
 Long. *Longē*, adv.; a long time,

diū, comp. *diūtius*, sup. *diūtissimē*, adv.

Love. *Amor*, ōris, m. To love, *amō*, āre, āvi, ātum.

M.

- Magistrate. *Magistrātus*, ūs, m.
 Make. *Faciō*, ere, *fēcī*, *factum*; to make war, *gerō*, ere, *gessi*, *gestum*; *inferō*, *ferre*, *intulī*, *illātum*.
 Man. *Homō*, *inis*, m. and f.; *vir*, *virī*, m.
 Many, much. *Multus*, a, um; how many, *quot*, indeclinable.
 March. *Iter*, *itineris*, n.; forced marches, *māgna itinera*; line of march, *agmen*, *inis*, n. To march, *iter faciō*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factum*.
 Marcus. *Mārcus*, i, m.
 Match, a match for. *Pār*, *paris*.
 May. *Licet*, ēre, *licuit*, 281, 301.
 Menapil. *Menapii*, ōrum, m. pl.
 Merchant. *Mercātor*, ōris, m.
 Messenger. *Nūntius*, iī, m.
 Midday. *Meridiēs*, ēi, m.
 Mile. *Mille passūs*; 247, foot-note.
 Military. *Militāris*, e; military affairs, *rēs militāris*.
 Mind. *Animus*, i, m.; *mēns*, *mentis*, f.
 Moat. *Fōssa*, ae, f.
 Month. *Mēnsis*, is, m.
 Mother. *Māter*, *tris*, f.
 Mountain. *Mōns*, *montis*, m.
 Much, to like very much, *adamō*, āre, āvi, ātum.
 Must. Often expressed by the Gerundive. 266, 234.

My. *Meus*, *a*, *um*. 102, 185.
 Myself. *Ego*, *mei*, 102, 184; *ipse*,
a, *um*, 102, 188.

N.

Name. *Nōminō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
 Nation. *Gēns*, *gentis*, *f.*; *nātiō*,
ōnis, *f.*
 Natural boundaries. *Nātūra loci*.
 Nature. *Nātūra*, *ae*, *f.*
 Navigate. *Nāvīgō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
 Navigation. Gerund of *nāvīgō*.
 Near. *Apud*, *ad*, prep. *w. acc.*
 Nearer. *Proptor*, *us*.
 Nearly. *Ferē*, *adv.*; *paene*, *adv.*
 Neighbor. *Fīnitimus*, *i*, *m.*
 Neighboring. *Fīnitimus*, *a*, *um*;
prōximus, *a*, *um*.
 Nervil. *Nervī*, *ōrum*, *m. pl.*
 Never. *Nūquam*, *adv.*
 New. *Novus*, *a*, *um*.
 Next. *Prōximus*, *a*, *um*.
 No. *Nūllus*, *a*, *um*, 42, 151; *nihil*
w. Partitive Genitive, 31, 397.
 Noble. *Nōbilis*, *e*.
 Not. *Nōn*, *adv.*; *w. imperative or*
subjunctive of desire, *nē*, *adv.*;
not ? nōnne ? conj., *interroga-*
tive particle; *not yet*, *nōndum*,
adv.
 Number. *Numerus*, *i*, *m.*

O.

Obey. *Pāreō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*. (Fol-
 lowed by the Dative.)
 Observe. *Observō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
 Obtain possession of. *Potior*, *irī*,
itus sum; 258, 421; *to obtain*
one's request, *impetrō*, *āre*, *āvī*,
ātum.

Occupy. *Occupō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
 Octodurus. *Octōdūrus*, *i*, *m.*
 Of. *Dē*, *ē*, *ex*, prep. *w. abl.*; *out*
of, *ē*, *ex*; *in front of*, *prō*, prep.
w. abl.
 Off, to cut off. *Interclūdō*, *ere*,
si, *sum*.
 Often. *Saepe*, *adv.*
 On, at. *Ad*, prep. *w. acc.*; *in*,
 prep. *w. abl.*; *on the side of*,
ā, *ab*, prep. *w. abl.*; *on all sides*,
undique, *adv.*; *fighting goes on*,
pūgnatur, 281, 301.
 One. *Ūnus*, *a*, *um*; 97, 175; *that*
one, *is*, *ea*, *id*; *ille*, *a*, *ud*; 102,
 186.
 Open. *Apertus*, *a*, *um*.
 Opinion. *Sententia*, *ae*, *f.*
 Or. *Aut*, *conj.*; *in questions*, *an*,
conj.
 Oration. *Ōrātiō*, *ōnis*, *f.*
 Orator. *Ōrātor*, *ōris*, *m.*
 Order. *Imperō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*;
jubeō, *ēre*, *jūssī*, *jūssum*; *in*
order that, *ut*, *conj.* 119, 497.
 Other. *Alius*, *a*, *ud*; 42, 151; *the*
remaining, *reliquus*, *a*, *um*;
with each other, *inter sē*.
 Ought. *Dēbeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*;
often expressed by the Gerund-
ive, 266, 234.
 Our. *Noster*, *tra*, *trum*.
 Out of. *Ex*, *ē*, prep. *w. abl.*; *to*
lead out, *ēdūcō*, *ere*, *duxi*, *duc-*
tum; *to set out*, *proficiscor*, *i*,
profectus sum.
 Over. *Per*, *trans*, prep. *w. acc.*;
a bridge over, *in*, prep. *w. abl.*;
to bring over, *carry over*, *trans-*
portō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
 Owe. *Dēbeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*.
 Own. *Suus*, *a*, *um*.

P.

Pain. *Dolor, ōris, m.*

Part. *Part, partis, f.*

Pass the winter. *Hiemō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Passionate. *Irācundus, a, um.*

Patiently. *Patienter, adv.*

Peace. *Pāx, pācis, f.*

Pedius. *Pedius, ii, m.*

Penalty. *Pœna, ae, f.*

People. *Populus, i, m.*

Peril. *Periculum, i, n.*

Perilous. *Periculōsus, a, um.*

Persuade. *Persuādēō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum.* (Followed by the Dative of the person.)

Pisistratus. *Pisistratus, i, m.*

Place. *Locus, i, m., pl. loca, ōrum, n.;* a battle takes place, *pūgnātur.* To place, *pōnō, ere, posuī, positum; collocō, āre, āvi, ātum; cōstituō, ere, uī, ātum;* to place in command, *præficiō, ere, fecī, factum.*

Plan. *Cōsiliū, ii, n.; sententia, ae, f.*

Plato. *Platō, ōnis, m.*

Plead. *Dicō, ere, dixī, dictum; agō, ere, ēgī, āctum.*

Pleased, to be greatly pleased with. *Adamō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Plough. *Arō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Poet. *Pœta, ae, m.*

Pompey. *Pompēius, ii, m.*

Populace. *Plēbs, plēbis, f.*

Position. *Locus, i, m., pl. loca, ōrum, n.*

Possess. *Habēō, ēre, uī, itum; sum, esse, fui in w. abl.;* he possesses wisdom, *sapientia in eo est.*

Possession, to obtain possession of. *Potior, iri, itus sum, 258, 421;* to take possession of, *occupō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Power. *Potentia, ae, f.;* regal power, *rēgnum, i, n.;* to have power, *possum, pōsse, potuī, 269, 290.*

Praise. *Laudō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Prefer. *Mālō, mālle, mālui. 273, 293.*

Prepare. *Parō, āre, āvi, ātum; comparō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Prepared. *Parātus, a, um.*

Present. *Dōnō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Present, for the present. *In præsentiā.*

Prevail. *Valeō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Prevent. *Prohibēō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Previously. *Anteā, adv.*

Price. *Pretium, ii, n.*

Propose a law. *Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, 269, 292.*

Protect, fortify. *Mūniō, ire, iui or ii, itum.*

Protection. *Praesidium, ii, n.*

Provide. *Prōspiciō, ere, spēxi, spēctum; prōvideō, ēre, vidī, visum.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Province. *Prōvincia, ae, f.*

Provisions. *Cibāria, ōrum, n. pl.*

Punishment. *Supplicium, ii, n.*

Pupil. *Discipulus, i, m.*

Purpose. *Cōsiliū, ii, n.; cōnātus, ūs, m.;* for the purpose of, *causā w. Genitive.*

Pursue. *Sequor, i, secūtus sum; insequor, i, secūtus sum; persequor, i, secūtus sum.*

Put to death. *Interficiō, ere, fecī, factum; occidō, ere, i, sum.*

Q.

- Quarters, winter quarters. *Hiberna*, ōrum, n. pl.
 Queen. *Rēgina*, ae, f.
 Quickly. *Celeriter*, adv.

R.

- Rampart. *Vallum*, i, n.
 Rash. *Temerarius*, a, um.
 Rather than. *Quam*, conj.
 Ravage. *Dēpopulor*, āri, ātus sum.
 Reach, arrive at. *Adeō*, ire, tī, itum; *veniō*, ire, *veni*, ventum; *pervenio*, ire, *veni*, ventum; to extend, *pertineō*, ēre, uī, tentum.
 Read. *Legō*, ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum*.
 Readily. *Facile*, adv.
 Ready. *Parātus*, a, um.
 Rear. *Novissimum agmen*, *novissimī agminis*, n.
 Reason. *Causa*, ae, f.; *rēs*, *rēt*, f.
 Recollection. *Memoria*, ae, f.
 Reference, with reference to. *Dē*, prep. w. abl.
 Refinement. *Cultus*, ūs, m.
 Regal power. *Rēgnum*, i, n.
 Regard, to regard as. *Habeō*, ēre, uī, itum *prō* w. abl.; in regard to, *dē*, prep. w. abl.
 Region. *Regiō*, ōnis, f.
 Reject. *Recūsō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Rely upon. *Cōnfidō*, ere, *fisus* -sum. See 259.
 Remain. *Maneō*, ēre, *mānsī*, *mānsūm*; *permaneō*, ēre, *mānsī*, *mānsūm*; *remaneō*, ēre, *mānsī*, *mānsūm*; to remain silent, *taceō*, ēre, uī, itum.

- Remember. *Reminiscor*, i. 307, 406.
 Remi. *Rēmī*, ōrum, m. pl.
 Remove. *Moveō*, ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtum*; *removeō*, ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtum*.
 Renew. *Renovō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Renowned. *Clārus*, a, um.
 Repent. *Paenitet*, ēre, uī; I repent, *mē paenitet*. 281, 301; 285, 409.
 Report. *Rūmor*, ōris, m. To report, *nūntiō*, āre, āvī, ātum; *enūntiō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Repulse. *Prōpulsō*, āre, āvī, ātum; *repellō*, ere, *reppulī*, *repulsum*.
 Reputation. *Auctōritās*, ātis, f.
 Request, to obtain one's request. *Impetrō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Reside. *Habitō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Rest of. *Reliquus*, a, um.
 Restore. *Restituō*, ere, uī, ūtum.
 Retain. *Retineō*, ēre, uī, tentum.
 Retard. *Tardō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Return. *Redeō*, ire, tī, itum; *revertor*, i, *reverti*, *reversum*, deponent in present system.
 Revenue. *Vectigal*, ālis, n.
 Revolution. *Rēs novae*.
 Rhine. *Rhēnus*, i, m.
 Rhone. *Rhodanus*, i, m.
 Ride toward. *Adequitō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 River. *Flūmen*, tnis, n.
 Roman. *Rōmānus*, a, um; a Roman, *Rōmānus*, i, m.
 Rome. *Rōma*, ae, f.
 Romulus. *Rōmulus*, i, m.
 Route. *Iter*, *itineris*, n.
 Rule. *Regō*, ere, *rēxi*, *rēctum*.
 Rumor. *Rūmor*, ōris, m.

S.

Safe. *Tūtus, a, um.*
 Safeguard. *Praesidium, ii, n.*
 Safety. *Salūs, ūtis, f.*
 Same. *Īdem, eadem, idem. 102, 186.*
 Santones. *Santonēs, um, m. pl.*
 Say. *Dicō, ere, dixi, dictum.*
 School. *Schola, ae, f.*
 Scout. *Explōrātor, ōris, m.*
 Sea. *Mare, is, n.*
 Second. *Secundus, a, um.*
 Secure, win. *Conciliō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
 See. *Video, ēre, vidi, visum.*
 Seek. *Petō, ere, iui or ii, itum; quaerō, ere, sivi or sii, situm.*
 Seize. *Occupō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
 Select. *Dēligō, ere, lēgi, lēctum.*
 Senate. *Senātus, ūs, m.*
 Send. *Mittō, ere, misi, missum; to send ahead, send forward, praemittō, ere, misi, missum.*
 Separate. *Dividō, ere, visi, visum.*
 Servitude. *Servitūs, ūtis, f.*
 Set fire to. *Incendō, ere, i, cēsum.*
 Set out. *Proficiscor, i, profectus sum.*
 Setting. *Occāsus, ūs, m.*
 Setting out. *Profectiō, ōnis, f.*
 Settle. *Cōsidō, ere, sēdi, sēssum.*
 Seventh. *Septimus, a, um.*
 Several. *Complūrēs, a or ia, tum.*
 Severe. *Ācer, cris, cre; sevērus, a, um.*
 Severely. *Ācriter, adv.; graviter, adv.*
 Shepherd. *Pāstor, ōris, m.*
 Ship. *Nāvis, is, f.; nāvīgium, ii, n.; ship of war, longa nāvis.*

Shut in. *Contineō, ēre, ui, tentum.*
 Side, part. *Pars, partis, f.; on all sides, undique, adv.*
 Sight. *Cōspēctus, ūs, m.*
 Signal. *Īsignis, e.*
 Silent, to be silent, to remain silent. *Taceō, ēre, ui, itum.*
 Since. *Cum, conj.*
 Singing. *Cantus, ūs, m.*
 Single, one. *Ūnus, a, um. 97, 175.*
 Six. *Sex, indeclinable.*
 Sixth. *Sextus, a, um.*
 Skilful. *Peritus, a, um.*
 Skin. *Pellis, is, f.*
 Slave. *Servus, i, m.*
 Slavery. *Servitūs, ūtis, f.*
 Slay. *Occidō, ere, i, sum; interficiō, ere, feci, sectum.*
 Sleep. *Dormiō, ire, iui or ii, itum.*
 Small. *Parvus, a, um. 86, 165.*
 So, to such an extent. *Tam, adv.; in such a way, ita, adv.; so great, tantus, a, um.*
 Soldier. *Miles, itis, m. and f.*
 Son. *Filius, ii, m. 31, 51, 5.*
 Son-in-law. *Gener, eri, m.*
 Soon, as soon as. *Simul, simul atque, conj. 337, 518.*
 Soul. *Animus, i, m.*
 Soundly. *Artē, adv.*
 Sovereignty. *Principātus, ūs, m.*
 Space. *Spatium, ii, n.; locus, i, m.*
 Spare. *Parcō, ere, pepercī, parsum. (Followed by the Dative.)*
 Speak. *Dicō, ere, dixi, dictum.*
 Speedily. *Celeriter, adv.*
 Spirit. *Animus, i, m.*
 State. *Civitās, ātis, f. To state, say, dicō, ere, dixi, dictum.*

Station. *Collocō, āre, avi, ātum* ;
cōstituō, ere, ui, ūtum.

Stone. *Lapis, idis, m.*

Storm. *Tempestās, ātis, f.* ; to
 take by storm, *expugnō, āre,*
avi, ātum.

Story. *Fābula, ae, f.*

Stricken with fear. *Timōre per-*
territus, a, um.

Strip. *Nūdō, āre, avi, ātum.*

Successfully. *Fēliciter, adv.*

Successive. *Continuus, a, um.*

Such, so great. *Tantus, a, um* ;
 in such a way, *ita, adv.*

Suebi. *Suebī, ōrum, m. pl.*

Suffer. *Pattior, i, passus sum.*

Summer. *Aestās, ātis, f.*

Summon. *Vocō, āre, avi, ātum.*

Sun. *Sōl, sōlis, m.*

Sunset. *Sōlis occāsus, ūs, m.*

Supplied, to be well supplied.
Abundō, āre, avi, ātum.

Supply, supplies. *Commeātus, ūs,*
m. ; supply of grain, supplies,
rēs frumentāria.

Support. *Alō, ere, ui, alitum*
 and *altum.*

Surpass. *Praecēdō, ere, cēssi,*
cēssum ; *praestō, āre, stiti,*
stitum and *stātum.*

Surround. *Contineō, ēre, ui,*
tentum.

Suspicion. *Suspiciō, ōnis, f.*

Sustain. *Sustineō, ēre, ui, ten-*
tum.

T.

Take. *Capiō, ere, cēpi, captum* ;
sūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum ;
 to carry, *portō, āre, avi, ātum* ;
 to take by storm, *expugnō, āre,*
avi, ātum ; to take possession

of, *occupō, āre, avi, ātum* ; to
 take from, *effērō, ferre, extulī,*
elātum ; to take vengeance on,
ulciscor, i, ultus sum ; a battle
 takes place, *pūgnatur, 281, 301.*

Teach. *Doceō, ēre, ui, dōctum.*

Tell. *Dicō, ere, dixi, dictum.*

Temple. *Templum, i, n.*

Ten. *Decem, indeclinable.*

Tend. *Pertineō, ēre, ui, tentum.*

Tenth. *Decimus, a, um.*

Terrify. *Terreō, ēre, ui, itum* ;
 to terrify greatly, *perterreō,*
ēre, ui, itum.

Territory. *Finēs, ium, m. pl.*

Thames. *Tamesis, is, m.*

Than. *Quam, conj.*

That. *Ille, a, ud* ; *is, ea, id* ;
102, 186 ; that of yours, *iste, a,*
ud, 102, 186 ; that, relative, *qui,*
quae, quod, 106, 187 ; that, re-
 peating a previous noun, is often
 not to be rendered into Latin ;
 that, in order that, *ut, quō,*
quōminus, conj. 119, 497.

The. See page 18, foot-note 4.

Their. *Suus, a, um* ; sometimes
 expressed by the genitive of *is*
 or *ille, 102, 186* ; sometimes
 not expressed in Latin.

Then. *Tum, adv.*

There. *Ibi, adv.*

Therefore. *Igitur, conj.*

Thing. *Rēs, rēi, f.*

Think. *Putō, āre, avi, ātum* ;
arbitror, āri, ātus sum ; *exis-*
timō, āre, avi, ātum.

Third. *Tertius, a, um.*

This. *Hic, haec, hōc. 102, 186.*

Thou. *Tū, tui. 102, 184.*

Three. *Trēs, tria. 97, 175.*

Through. *Per, prep. w. acc.*

Throw. *Jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum.*

Tidings. *Nūntius, ī, m.*

Time. *Tempus, oris, n.; diēs, ēī, f.* (although, when meaning day, usually masculine); for a long time, *diū, comp. diūtius, sup. diūtissimē, adv.*

To. *Ad, prep. w. acc.; often expressed by the Dative, 54, 384; with reference to, dē, prep. w. abl.; to set fire to, incendō, ere, ī, cēsum.*

Together. *Ūnā, adv.; to call together, convocō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Top of. *Summus, a, um.*

Toward. *Ad, prep. w. acc.*

Tower. *Turris, is, f.*

Town. *Oppidum, ī, n.*

Traitor. *Prōditor, ōris, m.*

Traveller. *Viātor, ōris, m.*

Treason. *Prōditō, ōnis, f.*

Tribe. *Gēns, gentis, f.*

Tribune. *Tribūnus, ī, m.*

Triple. *Triplex, icis.*

True. *Vērus, a, um.*

Truth. *Vērum, ī, n.*

Try. *Tentō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Tullia. *Tullia, ae, f.*

Two. *Duo, ae, o, 97, 175.*

Tyrant. *Tyrannus, ī, m.*

U.

Under. *Sub, prep. w. acc. and abl.; under the command of, dux, in the Ablative Absolute; under the command of Caesar, Caesare duce.*

Understand. *Intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum.*

Undertake. *Suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum.*

Unfortunate. *Infelix, icis.*

Unite. *Conjungō, ere, junxī, junctum.*

Unless. *Nisi, conj. 250, 507.*

Unskilled. *Imperitus, a, um.*

Until. *Dum, quoad, conj. 337, 519.*

Unwilling, to be unwilling. *Nōlō, nolle, nōlūi. 273, 293.*

Unworthy. *Indignus, a, um.*

Up, to draw up. *Instruō, ere, struxī, strūctum; to give up, tradō, ere, didī, ditum.*

Upbraid. *Accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Upon. *In, prep. w. acc. and abl.; against, in, contrā, prep. w. acc.*

Urge. *Hortor, āri, ātus sum.*

Use. *Ūsus, ūs, m. To use, ūtor, ī, ūsus sum.*

Useful. *Ūtilis, e.*

Usipetes. *Usipetēs, um, m. pl.*

V.

Valor. *Virtūs, ūtis, f.*

Valuable. *Pretiōsus, a, um.*

Venetl. *Venetī, ōrum, m. pl.*

Vengeance, to take vengeance on. *Ulciscor, ī, ultus sum.*

Vergobretus. *Vergobretus, ī, m.*

Very. *Often expressed by the sup.; very easy, perfacilis, e; to like very much, adamō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Vessel. *Nāvis, is, f.*

Vicinity, in the vicinity of. *Apud, ad, circum, prep. w. acc.*

Victoria. *Victōria, ae, f.*

Victory. *Victōria, ae, f.*

Village. *Vicus, ī, m.*

Virtue. *Virtūs, ūtis, f.*

Voice. *Vōx, vōcis, f.*

W.

Wage. *Gerō, ere, gessi, gestum*; to wage against, *inferō, ferre, intuli, illātum*.

Wait for. *Exspectō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Wall. *Mūrus, ī, m*.

Want. *Inopia, ae, f*.

War. *Bellum, ī, n*; ship of war, *nāvis longa*.

Warlike. *Bellicōsus, a, um*.

Warn. *Moneō, ēre, ui, itum*.

Waste, to lay waste. *Vastō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Way, in such a way. *Ita, adv*.

Weaken. *Effeminō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Well, to be well supplied. *Abundō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

What? *Quis, quae, quid*; *quī, quae, quod*. 106, 188.

When. *Cum, conj*. 341, 521.

Whether. *Num*, in a single question; *utrum*, in a double question.

Which, who. *Quī, quae, quod*, 106, 187; which? who? *quis, quae, quid*; *quī, quae, quod*; 106, 188.

Whole. *Omnis, e*; *tōtus, a, um*, 42, 151; *ūniversus, a, um*.

Why. *Quārē, cūr, adv*.

Width. *Lātitudō, intis, f*.

Willing, to be willing. *Volō, velle, volui*. 273, 293.

Winter. *Hiems, emis, f*; winter quarters, *hiberna, ōrum, n. pl*.

To winter, pass the winter, *hiemō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Wisdom. *Sapientia, ae, f*.

Wise. *Sapiēns, entis*.

Wish. *Cupio, ere, iui or ii, itum*; *volō, velle, volui*. 273, 293.

With. *Cum*, prep. w. abl.; among, *apud*, prep. w. acc.; with reference to, *dē*, prep. w. abl.; with each other, with one another, *inter sē*; to be greatly pleased with, *adamō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Withdraw. *Subducō, ere, duxi, ductum*; *reducō, ere, duxi, ductum*; *deducō, ere, duxi, ductum*.

Without. *Sine*, prep. w. abl.

Withstand. *Sustineō, ēre, ui, tentum*.

Witness. *Testis, is, m. and f*.

Word. *Verbum, ī, n*.

Would that. *Utinam*, interj. 114, 483, 1.

Wound. *Vulnus, eris, n*. To wound, *vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Write. *Scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum*.

Wrong. *Injūria, ae, f*.

Y.

Yet, not yet. *Nōndum*, adv.

Yoke. *Jugum, ī, n*.

You, thou. *Tū, tuī*. 102, 184.

Your. *Vester, tra, trum*; thy, *tuus, a, um*.

APPENDIX.

GENERAL RULES OF SYNTAX

Given here in a body, for convenience of reference, in the order and form in which they occur in the standard edition of Harkness's *LATIN GRAMMAR*, together with the numbers of sections in which the Rules are given respectively in this Volume, and their grammatical reference numbers.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns (59).

362. A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in CASE :

Brūtus custōs libertātis fuit, Brutus was the guardian of liberty.

RULE II.—Appositives (31).

363. An appositive agrees in CASE with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies :

Cluilius rēx moritur, Cluilius the king dies.

NOMINATIVE.—VOCATIVE.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative (20).

368. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative :

Servius rēgnāvit, Servius reigned.

RULE IV.—Case of Address (190).

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative :

Perge, Laeli, proceed, Laelius.

ACCUSATIVE.

RULE V.—Direct Object (25).

371. The DIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Accusative :

Deus mundum aedificavit. God made (built) the world.

RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person (153).

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing :

Hamilearem imperatorem fecerunt, they made Hamilcar commander.

RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing (273).

374. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING admit two Accusatives—one of the *person* and the other of the *thing* :

Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me my opinion.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Specification (299).

378. A verb or an adjective may take an Accusative to define its application :

Capita velāmur, we have our heads veiled.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Time and Space (98).

379. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative :

Septem et trigintā regnavit annōs, he reigned thirty-seven years. Quinque milia passuum ambulāre, to walk five miles.

RULE X.—Accusative of Limit (277).

380. The PLACE TO WHICH is designated by the Accusative :

I. Generally with a preposition—*ad* or *in* :

Legiōnēs ad urbem adducit, he is leading the legions to or toward the city.

II. In names of towns without a preposition :

Nūntius Rōmam redit, the messenger returns to Rome.

RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations (299).

381. The Accusative, either with or without an interjection, may be used with Exclamations :

Heu mē miserum, ah me unhappy!

DATIVE.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs (54).

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Dative. It is used—

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs:

Tibi serviō, *I am devoted to you.*

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs, in connection with the DIRECT OBJECT:

Agrōs plēbi dedit, *he gave lands to the common people.*

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which (281).

390. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT OF END FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs:

Malō est hominibus avāritia, *avarice is an evil to men.*

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE:

Quinque cohortēs castris praesidiō reliquit, *he left five cohorts for the defence of the camp.*

RULE XIV.—Dative with Adjectives (141).

391. With adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Omnibus cārum est, *it is dear to all.*

RULE XV.—Dative with Nouns and Adverbs (303).

392. The Dative is used with a few special nouns and adverbs:

I. With a few nouns from verbs which take the Dative:

Iustitia est obtemperatiō lēgibus, *justice is obedience to laws.*

II. With a few adverbs from adjectives which take the Dative:

Congruenter nātūrae vivere, *to live in accordance with nature.*

GENITIVE.

RULE XVI.—Genitive with Nouns (31).

395. Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

Catōnis oratiōnēs, *Cato's orations.*

RULE XVII.—Genitive with Adjectives (307).

399. Many adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

Avidus laudis, *desirous of praise.*

RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive (307).

401. A noun predicated of another noun denoting a different person or thing is put in the Genitive :

Omnia hostium erant, *all things belonged to the enemy.*

RULE XIX.—Genitive with Special Verbs (307).

406. The Genitive is used—

I. With **misereor** and **miserescō** :

Miserere laborum, *pity the labors.*

II. With **recordor**, **memini**, **reminiscor**, and **obliscor** :

Meminit praeteritorum, *he remembers the past.*

III. With **rēfert** and **interest** :

Interest omnium, *it is the interest of all.*

RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive (285).

409. The ACCUSATIVE of the PERSON and the GENITIVE of the THING are used with a few transitive verbs :

I. With verbs of *reminding, admonishing* :

Tē amicitiae commonefacit, *he reminds you of friendship.*

II. With verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting* :

Virōs sceleris arguis, *you accuse men of crime.*

III. With **miseret**, **paenitet**, **pudet**, **taedet**, and **piget** :

Eōrum nos miseret, *we pity them.*

ABLATIVE PROPER.**RULE XXI.—Place from which (277).**

412. The PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the Ablative :

I. Generally with a preposition—**ā**, **ab**, **dē**, or **ex** :

Ab urbe proficiscitur, *he sets out from the city.*

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS without a preposition :

Platōnem Athēnis arcessivit, *he summoned Plato from Athens.*

RULE XXII.—Separation, Source, Cause (158).¹

413. Separation, Source, and Cause are denoted by the Ablative *with* or *without a preposition*:

Caedem a vobis depellō, *I ward off slaughter from you.* Hōc audivi dē parente meō, *I heard this from my father.* Ars utilitāte laudatur, *an art is praised because of its usefulness.*

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives (88).

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, *nothing is more lovely than virtue.*

INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Accompaniment (314).

419. The Ablative is used—

I. To denote ACCOMPANIMENT. It then takes the preposition *cum*:

Vivit cum Balbō, *he lives with Balbus.*

II. To denote CHARACTERISTIC or QUALITY. It is then modified by an Adjective or by a Genitive:

Summā virtūte adulescēns, *a youth of the highest virtue.*

III. To denote MANNER. It then takes the preposition *cum*, or is modified by an Adjective or by a Genitive:

Cum virtūte vixit, *he lived virtuously.*

RULE XXV.—Ablative of Means (78).

420. INSTRUMENT and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative:

Cornibus tauri sē tūtantur, *bulls defend themselves with their horns.*

RULE XXVI.—Ablative in Special Constructions (258).

421. The Ablative is used—

I. With ūtor, fruor, fungor, potlor, vescor, and their compounds:

Plūrimis rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, *we enjoy and use very many things.*

II. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY:

Villa abundat lacte, cāsēō, melle, *the villa abounds in milk, cheese, and honey.*

III. With dignus, indignus, and contentus:

Digni sunt amicitia, *they are worthy of friendship.*

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Price (314).

422. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative :

Vendidit aurō patriam, *he sold his country for gold.*

RULE XXVIII.—Ablative of Difference (236).

423. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative :

Uno diē longiorem mensem, *they make the month one day longer.*

RULE XXIX.—Specification (231).

424. A noun, adjective, or verb may take an Ablative to define its application :

Nomine, nōn potestāte, fuit rēx, *he was king in name, not in power.*

LOCATIVE ABLATIVE :**RULE XXX.—Place in which (185).**

425. The PLACE IN WHICH is denoted—

I. Generally by the *Locative Ablative with the preposition in* :

Hannibal in Italia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.*

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS by the *Locative*, if such a form exists, otherwise by the *Locative Ablative* :

Rōmæ fuit, *he was at Rome.*

RULE XXXI.—Time (93).

429. The TIME of an action is denoted by the Ablative :

Octogēsimo annō est mortuus, *he died in his eightieth year.*

RULE XXXII.—Ablative Absolute (240).

431. A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance :

Serviō regnante viguerunt, *they flourished in the reign of Servius.*

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.**RULE XXXIII.—Cases with Prepositions (64).**

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions :

Ad amicum, *to a friend.* In Italia, *in Italy.*

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, AND VERBS.

RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Adjectives (43).

438. An adjective agrees with its noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE :

Fortūna caeca est, fortune is blind.

RULE XXXV.—Agreement of Pronouns (107).

445. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON :

Animal, quod sanguinem habet, an animal which has blood.

RULE XXXVI.—Agreement of Verb with Subject (20).

460. A finite verb agrees with its subject in NUMBER and PERSON :

Ego rēgēs ejēct, I have banished kings.

USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XXXVII.—Indicative (112).

474. The indicative is used in treating of facts :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made (built) the world.

MOODS AND TENSES IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

RULE XXXVIII.—Subjunctive of Desire, Command (114).

483. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED :

Valeant cives, may the citizens be well.

RULE XXXIX.—Potential Subjunctive (322).

485. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS POSSIBLE :

Hic quaerat quispiam, here some one may inquire.

RULE XL.—Imperative (114).

487. The Imperative is used in COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, and ENTREATIES :

Justitiam cole, practice justice.

MOODS AND TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

RULE XL.—Sequence of Tenses (119).

491. Principal tenses depend upon principal tenses ; historical upon historical :

Entitur ut vincat, he strives to conquer.

RULE XLII.—Purpose (119).

497. The Subjunctive is used to denote PURPOSE—

I. With the relative *qui*, and with relative adverbs, as *ubi*, *unde*, etc. :

Missi sunt qui (= ut ii) cōsulerent Apollinem, they were sent to consult Apollo.

II. With *ut*, *nē*, *quōd*, *quōminus* :

Entitur ut vincat, he strives that he may conquer.

RULE XLIII.—Result (123).

500. The Subjunctive is used to denote RESULT—

I. With the relative *qui*, and with relative adverbs, as *ubi*, *unde*, *cūr*, etc. :

Nōn is sum qui (= ut ego) his ūtar, I am not such a one as to use these things.

II. With *ut*, *ut nōn*, *quān* :

Ita vixit ut Athēniēnsibus esset carissimus, he so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.

RULE XLIV.—Conditional Sentences with *si*, *nisi*, *nī*, *sīn* (250).

507. Conditional sentences with *si*, *nisi*, *nī*, *sīn*, take—

I. The INDICATIVE in both clauses to assume the supposed case :

Si spiritum dūcit, vivit, if he breathes, he is alive.

II. The PRESENT OR PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case as possible :

Dies deficiat, si velim causam defendere, the day would fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.

III. The IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case as contrary to fact :

Plūribus verbis ad te scriberem, si res verba desiderāret, I should write to you more fully (with more words), if the case required words.

RULE XLV.—Conditional Clauses with *dum*, *modo*, &c *sī*, *ut sī*, etc. (330).

513. Conditional clauses take the Subjunctive—

I. With *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, 'if only,' 'provided that'; *dum nō*, *modo nō*, *dummodo nō*, 'if only not,' 'provided that not':

Manent ingenia, modo permaneat industria, mental powers remain, if only industry remains.

II. With *āc sī*, *ut sī*, *quam sī*, *quasi*, *tanquam*, *tanquam sī*, *velut*, *velut sī*, 'as if,' 'than if,' involving an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Perinde habēbō, āc sī scripsissēs, I shall regard it just as if (i. e., as I should if) *you had written.*

RULE XLVI.—Moods in Concessive Clauses (254).

515. Concessive clauses take—

I. Generally the INDICATIVE in the best prose, when introduced by *quamquam*:

Quamquam intellegunt, though they understand.

II. The INDICATIVE or SUBJUNCTIVE when introduced by *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, or *sī*, like conditional clauses with *sī*:

Etsi nihil sciō quod gaudeam, though I know no reason why I should rejoice.

III. The SUBJUNCTIVE when introduced by *licet*, *quamvis*, *ut*, *nō*, *cum*, or the relative *quī*:

Licet irrideat, though he may deride.

RULE XLVII.—Moods with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quando* (334).

516. Causal clauses with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quandō*, generally take—

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason positively on one's own authority:
Quoniam supplicatiō dēcrēta est, since a thanksgiving has been decreed.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason doubtfully, or on another's authority:

Sōcratēs accūsātus est, quod corrumperet juventutē, Socrates was accused, because he corrupted the youth.

RULE XLVIII.—Causal Clauses with *cum* and *quī* (334).

517. Causal clauses with *cum* and *quī* generally take the Subjunctive in writers of the best period:

Cum vitā metūs plēna sit, since life is full of fear.

RULE XLIX.—Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, etc. (337).

518. In temporal clauses with *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *simul atque*, etc., 'after,' 'when,' 'as soon as,' the Indicative is used :

Postquam vidit, etc., *castra posuit*, *he pitched his camp, after he saw*, etc.

RULE L.—Temporal Clauses with *dum*, etc. (337).

519. I. Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of WHILE, AS LONG AS, take the INDICATIVE :

Hæc fecit, dum licuit, *I did this while it was allowed*.

II. Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of UNTIL, take—

1. The INDICATIVE, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT :

Deliberā hōc, dum ego redeō, *consider this until I return*.

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE, when the action is viewed as something DESIRED, PROPOSED, OR CONCEIVED :

Differant, dum dēservēscat ira, *let them defer it till their anger cools*.

RULE LI.—Temporal Clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam* (341).

520. In temporal clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam*—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and Pluperfect is put—

1. In the INDICATIVE, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT :

Priusquam lucet, adsunt, *they are present before it is light*.

2. In the SUBJUNCTIVE, when the action is viewed as SOMETHING DESIRED, PROPOSED, OR CONCEIVED :

Antequam de rē publicā dicam, *before I (can) speak of the republic*.

II. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are put in the SUBJUNCTIVE :

Antequam urbem caperent, *before they took the city*.

RULE LII.—Temporal Clauses with *cum* (341).

521. In temporal clauses with *cum*—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put in the INDICATIVE :

Cum quiescunt, probant, *while they are silent, they approve*.

II. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are put—

1. In the **INDICATIVE**, when the temporal clause **ASSERTS AN HISTORICAL FACT**:

Páruit cum necesse erat, he obeyed when it was necessary.

2. In the **SUBJUNCTIVE**, when the temporal clause simply **DEFINES THE TIME** of the principal action:

Cum epistolam complicárem, while I was folding the letter.

RULE LIII.—Moods in Principal Clauses (262).

523. The principal clauses of the **DIRECT DISCOURSE** on becoming **INDIRECT** take the **INFINITIVE** or **SUBJUNCTIVE** as follows:

I. When **DECLARATIVE**, they take the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*:
Dicēbat animós esse divínós, he was wont to say that souls are divine.

II. When **INTERROGATIVE**, they take—

1. Generally the *Subjunctive*:

Ad postuláta Caesaris respondit, quid sibi vellet, cūr veniret, to the demands of Caesar he replied, what did he wish, why did he come?

2. Sometimes the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*, as in rhetorical questions:

Docēbant rem esse testimonió, etc.; quid esse levius, they showed that the fact was a proof, etc.; what was more inconsiderate?

III. When **IMPERATIVE**, they take the *Subjunctive*:

Scribit Labiēnó cum legiōne veniat, he writes to Labienus to come (that he should come) with a legion.

RULE LIV.—Moods in Subordinate Clauses (262).

524. The subordinate clauses of the **DIRECT DISCOURSE**, on becoming **INDIRECT**, take the *Subjunctive*:

Respondit sē id quod in Nervii fecisset factūrum, he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.

RULE LV.—Moods in Indirect Clauses (127).

529. The *Subjunctive* is used—

I. In indirect questions:

Quæritur, cūr doctissimi hominēs dissentiant, it is a question, why the most learned men disagree.

II. Often in clauses dependent upon an *Infinitive* or upon another *Subjunctive*:

Nihil indignius est quam eum qui culpâ caret supplicio non carere, nothing is more shameful than that he who is free from fault should not be exempt from punishment.

INFINITIVE.

RULE LVI.—Infinitive (132).

533. Many verbs admit an Infinitive to complete or qualify their meaning :

Hæc vitare cupimus, we desire to avoid these things.

RULE LVII.—Accusative and Infinitive (171).

534. Many transitive verbs admit both an Accusative and an Infinitive :

Tē sapere docet, he teaches you to be wise.

RULE LVIII.—Subject of Infinitive (171).

536. The Infinitive sometimes takes an Accusative as its subject :

Platonem Tarentum venisse reperio, I find that Plato came to Tarentum.

SUPINE.

RULE LIX.—Supine in *um* (166).

546. The Supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion to express PURPOSE :

Lēgātī venērunt res repetitum, deputies came to demand restitution.

RULE LX.—Supine in *ū* (246).

547. The Supine in *ū* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification :

Quid est tam jucundum auditū, what is so agreeable to hear (in hearing) ?

ADVERBS.

RULE LXI.—Use of Adverbs (70).

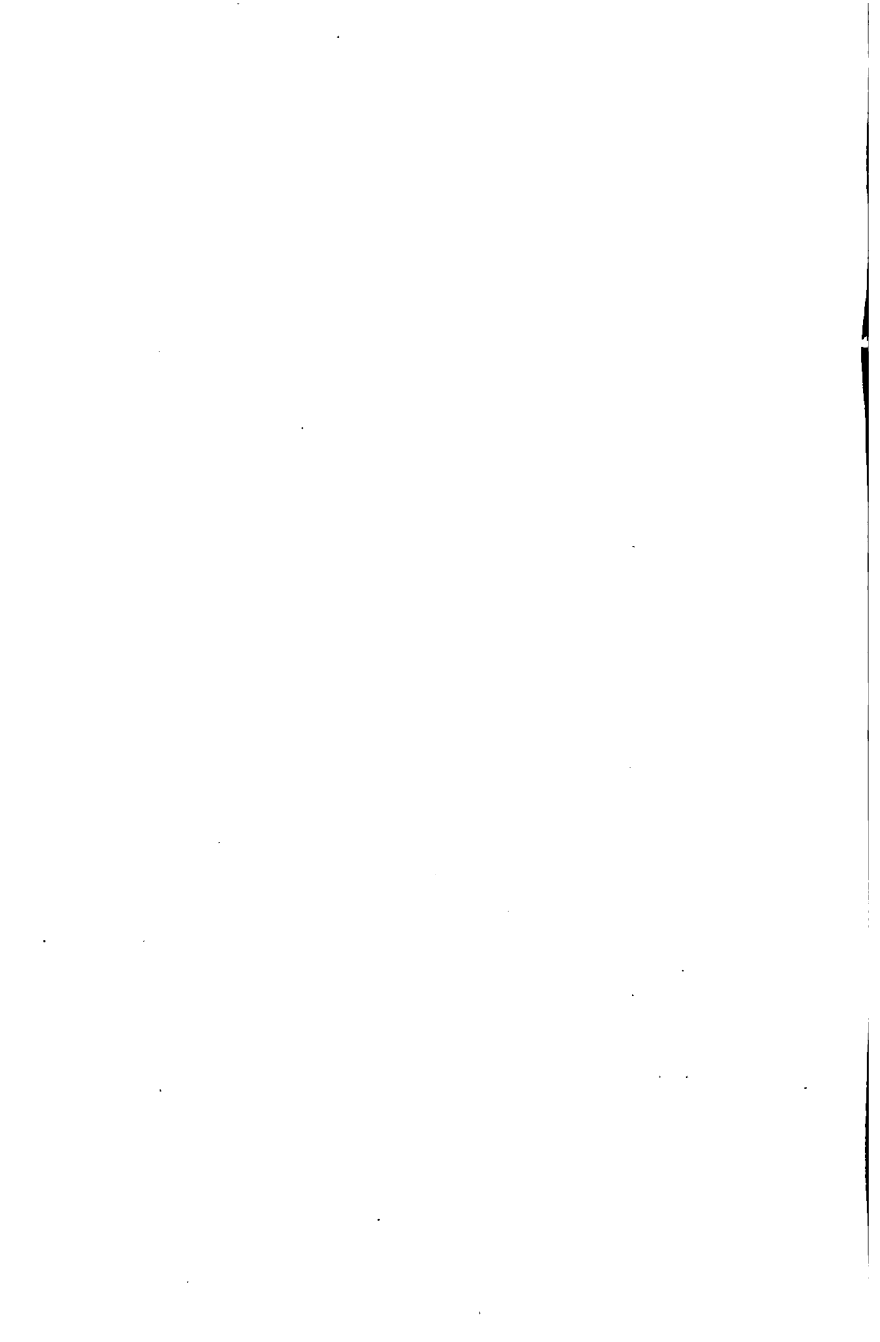
551. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS :

Sapientēs feliciter vivunt, the wise live happily.

TABLE

SHOWING THE ARTICLES IN THIS BOOK CONTAINING ARTICLES
FROM THE LATIN GRAMMAR.

Gram.	Lat. Course.	Gram.	Lat. Course.	Gram.	Lat. Course.
1-4	1	211	227	421	258
5-14	2	212	235	422	314
16-18	4	217, 218	246	423	236
22	1	219	250	424	231
30, 31	1	231, 232	258	425, 426	185
33	1	233, 234	266	429	93
38-42	6	289-292	269	431	240
44	6	293	273	432	65
45	8	294, 295	277	438	43
46-48	10	298	281	440, NN. 1 and 2	191, f. n.
51	35	300, 301	281	445	107
55-58	49	346-349	14	459, 1	324, 16
59	53	351-353	106	460	20
60, 61	58	356, 357	14	465, N. 2	259, f. n.
62-65	63	362	59	467, 4	339, 10
66, 4	63	363	31	474	112
99	64	368	20	483	114
105	64	369	190	485	322
111	64	371	25	487	114
116	92	373	153	489	275, 2
120	92	374	273	491-493	119
146-151	42	376	275, 19	497, 498	119
152-154	82	378	299	500, 501	123
155-157	86	379	98	508	123
160-162	86	380	277	508, 507	250
165, 166	86	381	299	513	330
170	86	384	54	514, 515	254
171, 172	97	385, 2	332, f. n. 2	516, 517	334
174-177	97	390	281	518, 519	337
178	247, f. n.	391	141	520, 521	341
179	97	392	303	522-524	262
182-186	102	395	31	526	262
187-190	106	397	31	529	127
192-195	14	399	307	533	132
196	14 and 111	401	307	534	171
197-200	14	406	307	536	171
201-204	140	409	285	541-544	291
205	152	412	277	546	166
206	170	413	158	547	246
207	181	415	158	548-550	291
208	194	417	88	551	70
209	207	419	314		
210	214	420	78		



PROFESSOR HARKNESS'S LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

A Complete Latin Course for the First Year contains a series of simple exercises progressively arranged, together with numerous exercises and passages intended for practice in *sight-reading* and *composition exercise*; also a Grammatical Outline, in the exact form and language in which they occur in *Harkness's Standard Latin Grammar*. It is designed to serve as a complete introductory book in Latin, no other grammar being required.

Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, with Frequent Practice in Reading at Sight, intended as a companion-book to *Harkness's Standard Latin Grammar*.

This and the preceding contain numerous notes and suggestions, and an adequate Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary.

An Introductory Latin Book. Intended as an Elementary Drill-Book on the Inflections and Principles of the Language. 12mo.

This work gives a distinct outline of the whole grammar, with exercises in translation from each language into the other, suggestions to the learner, notes, and vocabularies, and prepares the way to both the reading and the writing of easy classic Latin.

A Latin Grammar. For Schools and Colleges. Edition of 1874. 12mo.

A Latin Grammar. For Schools and Colleges. Standard edition of 1881. 12mo.

This is a complete, philosophical, and attractive work. It presents a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the language, exhibiting not only the grammatical forms and constructions, but also those vital principles which underlie, control, and explain them.

The Elements of Latin Grammar. For Schools. 12mo.

A New Latin Reader. With Exercises in Latin Composition, intended as a Companion to the Author's Latin Grammar. With References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabularies. 12mo.

The "New Reader" differs from the "Reader" in two respects. The first parts of the two books are wholly different. The New has in this part alternating exercises in translation both ways from one language into the other, with numbered references to the "Grammar" at every step. The second part is substantially the same in both books, except that nine of the Latin sections in the Old are removed, and their places in the New filled with English to be translated into Latin.

[SEE NEXT PAGE.]

PROF. HARKNESS'S LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.—(Continued.)

A Latin Reader. With References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary. 12mo.

A Latin Reader. With Exercises in Latin Composition. 12mo.

This is the "Latin Reader" complete, with which is bound in, Part First—forty-nine pages, notes appended—of the "Practical Introduction to Latin Composition."

A Practical Introduction to Latin Composition. For Schools and Colleges. Part I. Elementary Exercises, intended as a Companion to the Reader. Part II. Latin Syntax. Part III. Elements of Latin Style, with Special Reference to Idioms and Synonyms. 12mo.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. With Notes, Dictionary, Life of Cæsar, Map of Gaul, Plans of Battles, etc. 12mo.

This work is prepared with great care, having full explanatory notes on matters of grammar and style, a complete dictionary, Map of Gaul, plans of battles, and a life of Cæsar. The references to the "Grammar" enable the student to understand constructions not already perfectly familiar to him.

Cicero's Select Orations. 12mo.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Explanatory Notes and a Special Dictionary. 12mo.

The orations are the four "In Catilinam," the "Pro Archia Poëta," "De Imperio Pompeii," "Pro Marcello," "Pro Ligario," "Pro Rege Deiotaro," and the first Philippic "In Antonium."

Sallust's Catiline. With Explanatory Notes and a Special Vocabulary. 12mo.

This work follows the "Cæsar," and is edited with the same care, giving notes, illustrations, special dictionary, and references to the author's "Grammar."

Preparatory Course of Latin Prose Authors. Large 12mo.

This work presents, in a single volume, a course of reading in the prose authors sufficiently extended to meet the requirements for admission to any American college. It contains four books of Cæsar's "Commentaries," the "Catiline" of Sallust, and eight of Cicero's orations—the four "In Catilinam," the "Pro Archia Poëta," "De Imperio Pompeii," "Pro Marcello," and "Pro Ligario." The editorial aids consist of notes, illustrations, special dictionary, analysis, and a map of Gaul.

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,

NEW YORK, BOSTON, CHICAGO, SAN FRANCISCO.

D. APPLETON & CO.'S
EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

LATIN.

Professor Harkness's Series of Latin Text-Books.

An Introductory Latin Book. Intended as an Elementary Drill Book on the Inflections and Principles of the Language. 12mo 162 pages.

This work gives a distinct outline of the whole grammar, with exercises in translation from each language into the other, suggestions to the learner, notes, and vocabularies, and prepares the way to both the reading and the writing of easy classic Latin.

A Latin Grammar. For Schools and Colleges. Edition of 1874. 12mo. 357 pages.

A Latin Grammar. For Schools and Colleges. Standard edition of 1881. 12mo. 460 pages.

This is a complete, philosophical, and attractive work. It presents a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the language, exhibiting not only the grammatical forms and constructions, but also those vital principles which underlie, control, and explain them.

The present edition is the result of a thorough and complete revision of that of 1874. To a large extent it is a new and independent work; yet the paradigms, rules of construction, and in general all parts intended for recitation, have been only slightly changed. The aim of the work in its present form is threefold: 1. To be a clear, simple, and convenient Elementary Latin Grammar, giving the essentials for that use in distinctive type and in the form best adapted to the end. 2. To be an adequate and trustworthy Grammar for the advanced student—a complete Grammar of the Latin language, for the use of critical students of every grade of scholarship. 3. To be a practical introduction to the broader fields of philology and modern linguistic research, with references to the latest and best authorities upon the numerous questions which arise in such study.

The Elements of Latin Grammar. For Schools. 12mo. 156 pages.

A New Latin Reader. With Exercises in Latin Composition, intended as a Companion to the Author's Latin Grammar. With References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabularies. 12mo. 227 pages.

The "New Reader" differs from the "Reader" in two respects. The first parts of the two books are wholly different. The new has in this part alternating exercises in translation both ways from one language into the other, with numbered references to the "Grammar" at every step. The second part is substantially the same in both books, except that nine of the Latin sections in the Old are removed, and their places in the New filled with English to be translated into Latin.

[SEE NEXT PAGE.]

EDUCATIONAL WORKS.—(Continued.)

A Latin Reader. With References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary. 12mo. 212 pages.

A Latin Reader. With Exercises in Latin Composition. 12mo. 306 pages.

This is the "Latin Reader" complete, with which is bound in Part First—forty-nine pages, notes appended—of the "Practical Introduction to Latin Composition."

A Practical Introduction to Latin Composition. For Schools and Colleges. Part I. Elementary Exercises, intended as a Companion to the Reader. Part II. Latin Syntax. Part III. Elements of Latin Style, with Special Reference to Idioms and Synonyms. 12mo. 306 pages.

A simple, progressive, and complete—that is to say, *practical*—text-book, and teaches the language synthetically. Starting with the beginner as soon as he has learned a few grammatical forms, it leads him step by step to a point where he is so far master of both the theory and the practice of the language that he no longer needs the aid of a special text-book, until he can read Cæsar, Sallust, and Cicero, with comparative ease. This work has three parts. The first is purely elementary, and is a companion to the "Reader." The second gives the student instruction and practice in composition, which should be continued until he is prepared for college. The third is intended for the earlier portion of a collegiate course of study, and aims to introduce the student to a practical acquaintance with the elements of style.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. With Notes, Dictionary, Life of Cæsar, Map of Gaul, Plans of Battles, etc. 12mo. 384 pages.

This work is prepared with great care, having full explanatory notes on matters of grammar and style, a complete dictionary, map of Gaul, plans of battles, and a life of Cæsar. The references to the "Grammar" enable the student to understand constructions not already perfectly familiar to him.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Explanatory Notes and a Special Dictionary. 12mo. 398 pages.

This book contains ten select orations, giving specimens of Roman eloquence in its various departments—forensic, senatorial, and judicial. The orations are the four "In Catilinam," the "Pro Archia Poëta," "De Imperio Pompeii," "Pro Marcello," "Pro Ligario," "Pro Rege Delotaro," and the first Philippic "In Antonium."

Sallust's Catiline. With Explanatory Notes and a Special Vocabulary. 12mo. 162 pages.

This work follows the "Cæsar," and is edited with the same care, giving notes, illustrations, special dictionary, and references to the author's "Grammar."

[SEE NEXT PAGE.]

EDUCATIONAL WORKS.—(Continued.)

Preparatory Course of Latin Prose Authors. Large 12mo.
639 pages.

This work presents, in a single volume, a course of reading in the prose authors sufficiently extended to meet the requirements for admission to any American college. It contains four books of Caesar's "Commentaries," the "Catiline" of Sallust, and eight of Cicero's orations—the four "In Catilinam," the "Pro Archia Poëta," "De Imperio Pompeii," "Pro Marcello," and "Pro Ligario." The editorial aids consist of notes, illustrations, special dictionary, analyses, and a map of Gaul. It is especially convenient as part of the shorter course marked out above, inasmuch as it, the "Grammar," and the "New Reader," only three books, provide all that is required in the course.

A Complete Latin Course for the First Year, comprising an Outline of Latin Grammar and Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, with Frequent Practice in Reading at Sight. 12mo.
350 pages. 1883.

This volume contains a series of simple exercises progressively arranged, and designed to lead the way directly to connected discourse, together with numerous exercises and passages intended for practice in *sight-reading* and *composition exercises*, accompanied by frequent suggestions to the learner; also a Grammatical Outline, with paradigms of declension and conjugation, and all needed rules of syntax and statements of grammatical principles, *given in the exact form and language in which they occur in "Harkness's Standard Latin Grammar."* It is designed to serve as a complete introductory book in Latin, no other grammar being required.

It is a thoroughly practical book, and brings out, more clearly than any other introductory Latin book now published, the latest and most approved theories and methods of Latin instruction. It will stand pre-eminent in the peculiarly practical nature of the drill which it will afford upon etymological distinctions and the perplexing idiomatic forms of Latin discourse, as well as the facility with which it will enable the pupil to take up and master the difficulties of Latin syntax. It is in every way worthy to take its place in the unrivaled Latin series of which it will be the introductory book.

The same work will be furnished, when desired, without the Grammatical Outline, under the following title:

Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, with Frequent Practice in Reading at Sight, intended as a Companion-Book to the author's Latin Grammar. 12mo.

Both editions contain numerous notes and suggestions, and an adequate Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary.

The Complete Text of Vergil. With Notes and the Vergilian Dictionary. By HENRY S. FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the University of Michigan. 12mo. Cloth.

The Aeneid of Vergil. With Notes and Dictionary. By HENRY S. FRIEZE. 12mo. Cloth.

[SEE NEXT PAGE.]

EDUCATIONAL WORKS.—(Continued.)

The Aeneid of Vergil. With Notes. By HENRY S. FRIEZE. 12mo. Cloth. 598 pages. Large type.

The Bucolics and Georgics, and the First Six Books of the Aeneid. With Notes and Dictionary. By HENRY S. FRIEZE. 12mo.

A Vergilian Dictionary. By HENRY S. FRIEZE. 12mo. 229 pages.

The text of Frieze's new editions of Vergil is the result of a careful comparison of the texts of the most eminent among the recent Vergilian critics, especially those of Wagner, Jahn, Forbiger, Radewig, Ribbeck, and Conington. The references in the Notes are to the grammars of Harkness, Madvig, Zumpt, Allen and Greenough, Bartholomew, and Gildersleeve.

The Dictionary contains all words found in the Bucolics, the Georgics, and the Aeneid, including all proper names, preserving all important varieties of orthography, and, therefore, convenient for use with any edition or text of Vergil. It aims to represent completely the Vergilian usage of words, and refers constantly to the text for the illustration of definitions given.

The Tenth and Twelfth Books of the Institutions of Quintilian. With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY S. FRIEZE. 12mo. 175 pages.

M. Tullii Ciceronis Laelius de Amicitia. With English Notes. By JOHN K. LORD, Associate Professor of Latin, Dartmouth College. 12mo. 111 pages.

The text adopted for this work is that of Baister and Kayser, the edition of 1860. It has been carefully compared with Holm's revision of Orelli's text, and with those of other editors. Any changes from the standard text have been noticed in the notes.

In preparing the notes, the aim has been to furnish explanations on points of grammar, history, biography, and ancient customs, and, particularly by translation and special remark, to indicate the different and the corresponding idioms of the Latin and the English, and thus, through idiomatic English, to assist to a better understanding of the structure of the Latin.

Selections from the Poems of Ovid. With Notes. By J. L. LINCOLN, LL. D., Professor of Latin in Brown University. 12mo. 238 pages.

This edition of Ovid was prepared at the request of many teachers of Latin who regard the poetry of Ovid more suitable for the use of beginners than that of Vergil, an opinion that governs the course pursued in the European schools generally. The text is very carefully annotated, and references made to Harkness's Standard Grammar.

Some selections from the "Amores," the "Fasti," and the "Tristia," have been added to those made from the "Metamorphoses," not only on account of the interesting themes of which they treat, but also for the sake of giving the student an opportunity of becoming acquainted with Latin elegiac verse, of which, in Latin poetry, Ovid is the acknowledged master.

With Notes and Vocabulary.

[SEE NEXT PAGE.]

EDUCATIONAL WORKS.—(Continued.)

Cornelius Nepos. Prepared expressly for the Use of Students Learning to Read at Sight. With Notes, Vocabulary, Index of Proper Names, and Exercises for Translation into Latin. Illustrated by numerous Cuts. By THOMAS B. LINDSAY, Ph. D., Assistant Professor of Latin in the Boston University. 12mo. 357 pages.

Among the characteristic features of this new edition of "Cornelius Nepos" are the following: The orthographical accuracy of the text, the results of the investigations of Fleckeisen, Brambach, and others, having been kept carefully in view. The notes have been prepared with special reference to the training of the student in *sight-reading*, and to assist him in grasping the main idea of the sentence. The English-Latin exercises make immediate use of the words and idioms of the text, thus fixing them firmly in the mind. The marking of the long vowels and the relation of derivatives to a common root are among the special features of the vocabulary. It is a valuable supplementary reading-book, where the curriculum does not admit of its introduction into the prescribed course.

"Cornelius Nepos" is one of the authors regularly read in the German Gymnasia. The clearness of his style and the interest of the subjects treated by him are especially adapted to engage the attention of the student, and make his study of Latin a pleasure rather than a task.

THE SAME, for Sight-Reading in Schools and Colleges, with English-Latin Exercises and Index of Proper Names. By THOMAS B. LINDSAY. 12mo.

This edition contains the Text, the English-Latin Exercises, and the Historical and Geographical Index, and is designed to meet the wants of students that have already reached a certain proficiency in the language, and desire in addition to the regular course to read a Latin author *at sight*.

Arnold's First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar. Revised and carefully corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 359 pages.

Arnold's Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition. Revised and carefully corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 356 pages.

Arnold's Cornelius Nepos. With Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, etc. 12mo. 350 pages.

Germania and Agricola of Caius Cornelius Tacitus. With Notes, for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College. 12mo. 193 pages.

[SEE NEXT PAGE.]

EDUCATIONAL WORKS.—(Continued.)

Tyler's Histories of Tacitus. With Notes, for Colleges. 12mo. 453 pages.

Lincoln's Horace. With English Notes, for the Use of Schools and Colleges. 12mo. 575 pages.

Lincoln's Livy. Selections from the First Five Books, together with the Twenty-first and Twenty-second Books entire; with a Plan of Rome, a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the Use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.

Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline. With Notes and a Vocabulary. By NOBLE BUTLER and MINARD STURGIS. 12mo. 397 pages.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes, for the Use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.

Cicero de Officiis. With English Notes, mostly translated from Zumpt and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 194 pages.

Beza's Latin New Testament. 12mo. 291 pages.

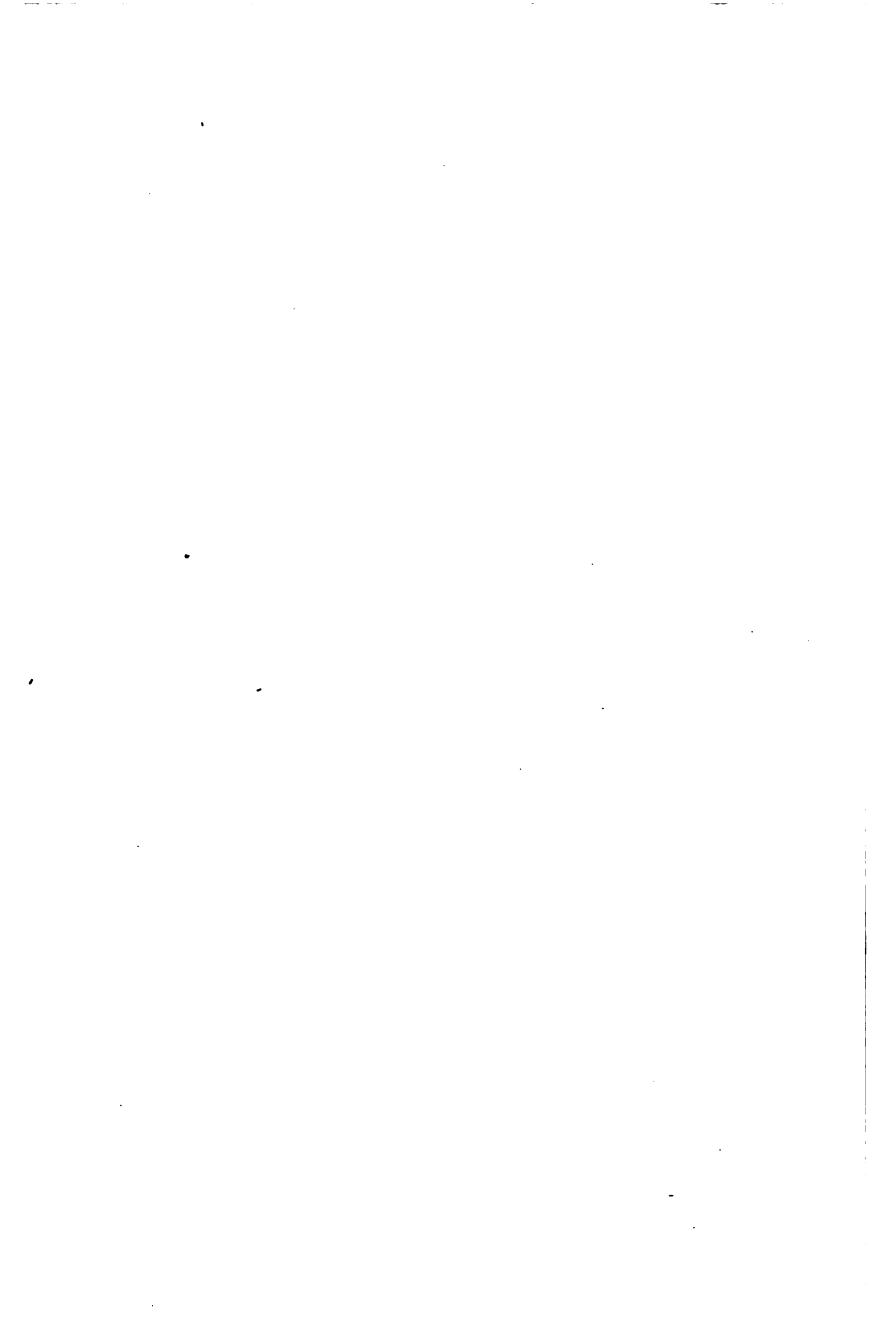
Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, a Map of Gaul, etc. By Rev. J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 408 pages.

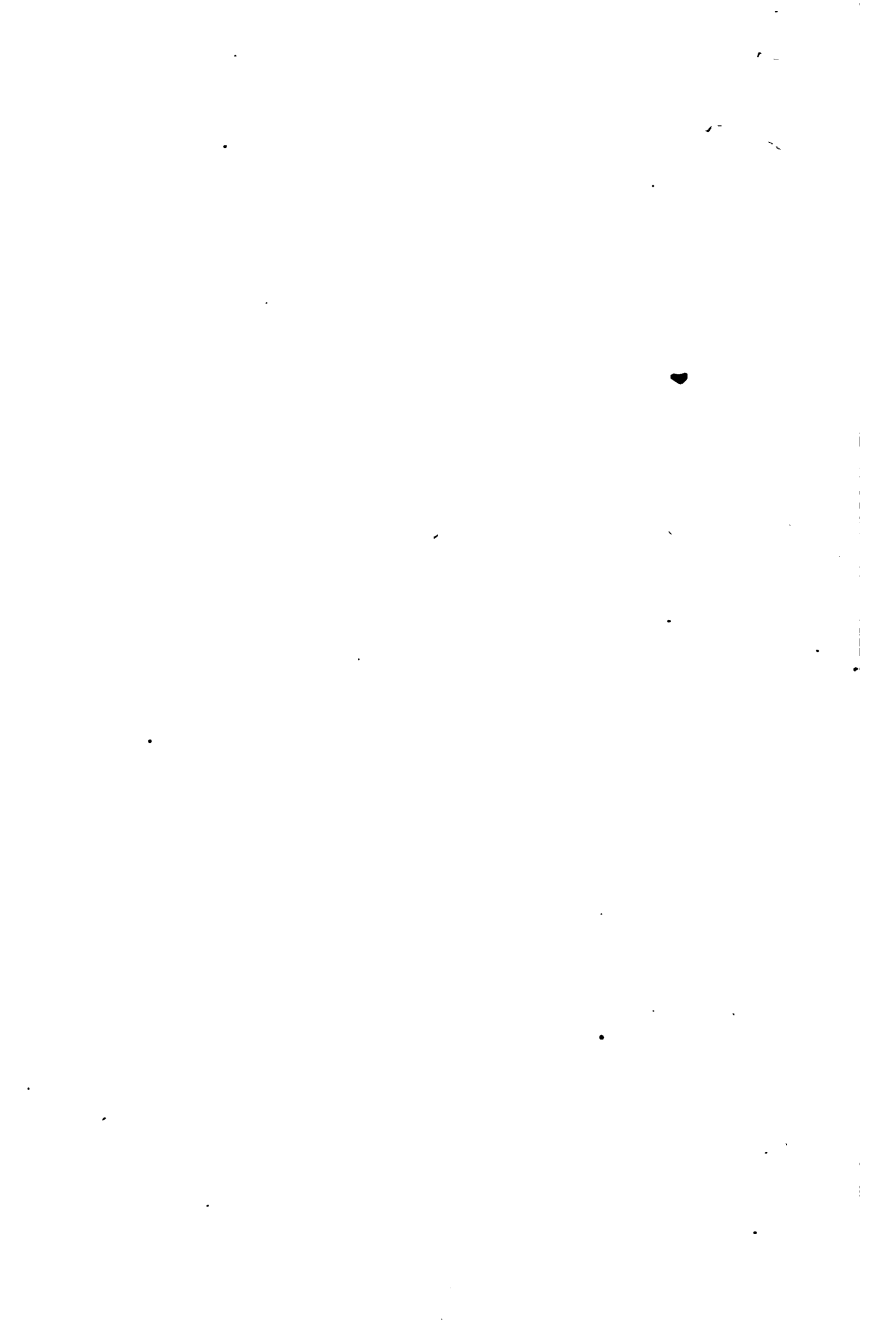
Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited, and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,

NEW YORK BOSTON CHICAGO SAN FRANCISCO.

15







STANDARD CLASSICAL TEXT-BOOKS.

- Arnold, T. K.** Greek Reading Book. By SPENCER. 12mo.
- Beise, James R.** Exercises in Greek Prose Composition. 12mo.
- — The First Three Books of Xenophon's Anabasis. With Notes and Vocabulary. 12mo.
- — Five Books of Xenophon's Anabasis. With Notes and Lexicon. 12mo.
- — Xenophon's Anabasis. With Notes, and Kiepert's Map. 12mo.
- Champlin, J. T.** Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar. 12mo.
- Coy, Edward G.** Mayor's Greek for Beginners.
- Crosby, Howard.** Œdipus Tyrannus of Sophocles. With Notes, etc. 12mo.
- Cyropædia.** See OWEN.
- Demos'hines.** See SNEAD.
- Greek Grammar.** See ARNOLD, CHAMPLIN, COY, HADLEY, HARKNESS, KENDRICK, KUHNER, SILBER, and WHITON.
- Greek Ollendorff.** See KENDRICK.
- Greek Reader.** See ARNOLD, HARKNESS, and OWEN.
- Greek Testament.** See HAHN.
- Hackett, H. B., and Tyler, W. S.** Plutarch on the Delay of the Deity in Punishing the Wicked. With Notes, etc. Revised edition. 12mo.
- Hadley, James.** Greek Grammar.
- — Elements of Greek Grammar.
- — Greek Verbs. Paper cover.
- Hahn, Augustus.** Novum Testamentum Græce. Notes by ROBINSON. 12mo.
- Harkness, Albert.** First Greek Book. With Reader, Notes, and Vocabulary. 12mo.
- Herodotus.** See JOHNSON, H. M.
- Homer.** See JOHNSON, H. C., and OWEN.
- Iliad.** See JOHNSON, H. C., and OWEN.
- Johnson, Henry C.** Homer's Iliad. First Three Books. Notes and References.
- Johnson, Herman M.** Herodoti Orientalis Antiquiora. Revised edition. 12mo.
- Kendrick, Asahel C.** Greek Ollendorff. 12mo.
- Kuhner, Raphael.** Greek Grammar. Translated by EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Revised edition. 8vo.
- Memorabilia of Xenophon.** See ROBBINS.
- Odyssey.** See OWEN.
- Œdipus Tyrannus.** See CROSBY, H.
- Ollendorff, Greek.** See KENDRICK.
- Owen, John L.** Acts of the Apostles, in Greek. With Lexicon. 12mo.
- — Anabasis of Xenophon. With Notes and References to Crosby's, Hadley's, and Kuhner's Grammars. 12mo.
- — Cyropædia of Xenophon. With Notes, etc. Eighth edition. 12mo.

1.5-0
6-
7.5-0

Leslie Learned

STANDARD CLASSICAL TEXT-BOOKS.

- Owen, John L.** Greek Reader. 12mo.
——— Homer's Iliad. With Notes. 12mo.
——— Homer's Odyssey With Notes. Tenth edition. 12mo.
——— Thucydides. With Notes, Map, etc. 12mo.
Plato. See TYLER.
Plutarch. See HACKETT and TYLER.
Robbins's Memorabilia of Xenophon. With Notes. Revised edition. 12mo.
Robinson, Edward. See HAHN.
Silber, William B. Progressive Lessons in Greek. With Notes and References to the Grammars of Sophocles, Hadley, and Crosby. Also, Vocabulary and Epitome of Greek Grammar, for Beginners. 12mo.
Smead, M. J. The Antigone of Sophocles. With Notes. 12mo.
——— The I, II, III Philippics of Demosthenes. With Historical Introductions, and Notes. New, enlarged edition. 12mo.
Sophocles. See CROSBY, H., and SMEAD.
Thucydides. See OWEN.
Tyler, W. S. Plato's Apology and Crito. With Notes. 12mo.
Tyler and Hackett. Plutarch on the Delay of the Deity in Punishing the Wicked. With Notes. 12mo.
Whiton, John M. First Lessons in Greek: the Beginner's Companion to Hadley's Grammar. 12mo.
Xenophon. See BOISK, OWEN, and ROBBINS.

SYRIAC.

- Uhlemann.** Syriac Grammar. Translated from the German by ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, a Chrestomathy, and brief Lexicon, prepared by the Translator. Second edition, with Corrections and Additions. 8vo.

HEBREW.

- Gesenius.** Hebrew Grammar. Edited by RODGER. Translated from the last (the seventeenth) German edition by Conant. With an Index. 8vo.

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,
NEW YORK, BOSTON, CHICAGO, AND SAN FRANCISCO.

